



Canadian Securities  
Administrators

Autorités canadiennes  
en valeurs mobilières

**Notice of Repeal and Replacement of  
National Instrument 45-106 *Prospectus And Registration Exemptions*  
and Related Forms and Companion Policy**

**and**

**Notice of Amendments to  
National Instrument 45-102 *Resale of Securities*  
and Related Form and Companion Policy**

**Introduction**

The Canadian Securities Administrators (the CSA or we) have approved the following (together, the New Materials):

- amended and restated National Instrument 45-106 *Prospectus and Registration Exemptions*, Form 45-106F1 *Report of Exempt Distribution*, Form 45-106F2 *Offering Memorandum for Non-Qualifying Issuers*, Form 45-106F3 *Offering Memorandum for Qualifying Issuers*, Form 45-106F4 *Risk Acknowledgement* and Form 45-106F5 *Risk Acknowledgement – Saskatchewan Close Personal Friends and Close Business Associates* (together, the 45-106 Instrument), which replace the versions currently in force,
- amended and restated Companion Policy 45-106CP *Prospectus and Registration Exemptions* (45-106CP), which replaces the version currently in force,
- amendments to National Instrument 45-102 *Resale of Securities* and Form 45-102F1 *Notice of Intention to Distribute Securities under Section 2.8 of NI 45-102 Resale of Securities* (together, the 45-102 Instrument), and
- amended and restated Companion Policy 45-102CP *Resale of Securities* (45-102CP).

Subject to Ministerial approval requirements, the 45-106 Instrument and the amendments to the 45-102 Instrument will come into force on September 28, 2009 in all CSA jurisdictions other than Ontario. In Ontario, subject to Ministerial approval requirements, the 45-106 Instrument and the amendments to the 45-102 Instrument will come into force on the later of: (a) September 28, 2009, and (b) the day on which sections 5 and 11, subsection 12(1) and section 13 of Schedule 26 of the *Budget Measures Act, 2009* are proclaimed in force.

The 45-106CP and the 45-102CP will come into force on the same date as the 45-106 Instrument and the amendments to the 45-102 Instrument.

## Contents of this Notice

This Notice consists of the following:

1. Substance and purpose of the New Materials
2. Summary of feedback received
3. Summary of changes to the 2008 Proposal
4. Consequential amendments
5. Staff notices
6. Amendments to local instruments
7. Background
8. Where to find more information

This Notice also contains the following appendices:

- Appendix A *List of Commenters on the 2008 Proposal*
- Appendix B *Summary of Written Comments on the 2008 Proposal*
- Appendix C *45-106 Instrument and 45-106CP*
- Appendix D *45-106 Instrument and 45-106CP, blacklined to show changes to the 2008 Proposal*
- Appendix E *45-102 Instrument and 45-102CP*
- Appendix F *45-102 Instrument and 45-102CP, blacklined to show changes to the 2008 Proposal*
- Appendix G *Amendment instruments amending the 45-102 Instrument*
- Appendix H *Consequential amendments to national instruments*
- Appendix I *Local notice* (where applicable)

### 1. Substance and purpose of the New Materials

#### *45-106 Instrument and 45-106CP*

The New Materials reflect substantive changes which are designed to improve the effectiveness of the 45-106 Instrument and 45-106CP. These changes:

- clarify certain provisions of the 45-106 Instrument and 45-106CP,
- reflect policy decisions that we have made in the course of granting exemptive relief,
- provide additional guidance to market participants on the applicability of the exemptions contained in the 45-106 Instrument, and
- harmonize exemptions previously found in local instruments.

In addition, the New Materials support the implementation of National Instrument 31-103 *Registration Requirements and Exemptions* (NI 31-103). The 45-106 Instrument has been restructured so that the prospectus exemptions are in Part 2 and the registration exemptions are in Part 3. The registration exemptions in Part 3 will no longer be available six months after the coming into force of NI 31-103. A subset of these registration exemptions is included in NI 31-103.

### ***45-102 Instrument and 45-102CP***

The amendments to the 45-102 Instrument and 45-102CP are designed to:

- clarify certain provisions of the 45-102 Instrument and the 45-102CP, and
- update the legending requirements where an electronic book-entry system is used or where the purchasers of securities do not receive a paper certificate from the issuer.

## **2. Summary of feedback received**

### ***2008 Proposal***

On February 29, 2008, we published the New Materials for a 90-day comment period (the 2008 Proposal). The comment period ended on May 29, 2008. During the comment period, we received 12 written submissions on the 2008 Proposal.

We thank everyone who provided comments. Copies of the comment letters are posted on the OSC website at [www.osc.gov.on.ca](http://www.osc.gov.on.ca). Copies are also available from any CSA member. You can find a list of the names of the commenters and a summary of the comments we received on the 2008 Proposal, together with our responses, in Appendices A and B of this Notice.

We considered all comments received and have made changes to the New Materials in response to the comments. However, as these changes are not material, we are not republishing the New Materials for a further comment period. You can find a description of the key changes we have made to the 2008 Proposal in section 3 of this Notice.

### ***Ontario 2009 Proposal***

On May 22, 2009, the Ontario Securities Commission (OSC) published amendments to the New Materials for a further 30-day comment period (the Ontario 2009 Proposal). The comment period ended on June 22, 2009. No written submissions were received during the comment period. For more information on the Ontario 2009 Proposal, see the OSC notice dated July 17, 2009 in Appendix I of this Notice (as published in Ontario).

## **3. Summary of changes to the 2008 Proposal**

Detailed blacklines showing changes made to the New Materials from the 2008 Proposal are in Appendices D and F of this Notice.

### ***Registration exemptions***

As noted above, we restructured the 45-106 Instrument so that the prospectus exemptions and registration exemptions are independent from one another. The prospectus exemptions are in Part 2 and the registration exemptions are in Part 3.

When we published the 45-106 Instrument for comment, it was anticipated that the registration exemptions in Part 3 would not be available six months after the coming into force of NI 31-103 in most CSA jurisdictions. Following that transition period, the registration exemptions in Part 3 would only be available where the person effecting the trade was located in British Columbia or Manitoba and not registered in any CSA jurisdiction.

After further review and consideration of the comments received, we decided to remove the availability of all registration exemptions in the 45-106 Instrument following the six-month transition period.

The British Columbia Securities Commission, the Alberta Securities Commission, the Manitoba Securities Commission, Government of the Northwest Territories - Office of the Superintendent of Securities, Government of Nunavut - Department of Justice, and Government of the Yukon Territory - Community Services have decided to provide the following dealer registration exemptions after the end of the transition period:

- accredited investor exemption,
- family, friends, and business associates exemption,
- minimum amount investment exemption, and
- offering memorandum exemption.

These dealer registration exemptions will be subject to new conditions setting out the circumstances under which they can be used. These exemptions will be set out in blanket orders to be issued by the applicable CSA member.

Saskatchewan is considering whether it will adopt this approach and will release a separate notice when it has made its decision.

As a result, after the transition period, the registration exemptions in the 45-106 Instrument will be no longer be available and all applicable registration exemptions will be located in NI 31-103, local instruments or local blanket orders.

See the CSA notice dated July 17, 2009 accompanying NI 31-103 for a further discussion regarding the registration exemptions that will be available following the implementation of NI 31-103.

#### ***Legending requirements***

We sought specific comment on the proposed amendments to the legending requirements set out in section 2.5 of the 45-102 Instrument. We received comments on the proposed legending requirements where an electronic book-entry system is used or where the purchasers of securities do not receive a paper certificate from the issuer.

After further review and consideration of these comments, we have clarified section 2.5 of the 45-102 Instrument. In order to be able to resell securities under that provision, the “purchaser” of a security (rather than, specifically, the “beneficial security holder”) must have received written notice of the legending restrictions. We have clarified in the 45-102CP that the reference to a “purchaser” of a security means the person who makes the investment decision about the acquisition of the security. In most cases, we think that the person making the investment decision will be the beneficial owner of the security. We think that the amendments to the legending requirements in the 45-102 Instrument will improve the efficiency of prospectus-exempt market transactions while still maintaining investor protection.

#### **4. Consequential amendments**

In conjunction with the New Materials, we are making consequential amendments to National Instrument 51-102 *Continuous Disclosure Obligations* (NI 51-102) and National Instrument 33-105 *Underwriting Conflicts* (NI 33-105). In particular, we have updated various section references in Appendix A of NI 33-

105 and a section reference to the 45-106 Instrument contained in NI 51-102. The consequential amendments are set out in Appendix H of this Notice.

CSA members in some jurisdictions are also publishing a separate local notice regarding consequential amendments to certain local rules. See the local notices in Appendix I of this Notice for a discussion of these amendments.

## **5. Staff notices**

We intend to withdraw the following staff notices when the New Materials come into force:

- CSA Staff Notice 45-302 *Frequently Asked Questions Regarding the Resale Rules*, and
- CSA Staff Notice 45-305 *Frequently Asked Questions Regarding National Instrument 45-106 Prospectus and Registration Exemptions*.

The relevant interpretive guidance in those notices has been incorporated into 45-106CP and 45-102CP.

We also intend to update CSA Staff Notice 45-304 *Notice of Local Exemptions Related to NI 45-106 Prospectus and Registration Exemptions*.

## **6. Amendments to local rules**

CSA members of some jurisdictions are publishing a separate local notice regarding amendments to certain local rules. These amendments include changes to local exemptions or the repeal of local exemptions that are no longer considered necessary or appropriate. See the local notices in Appendix I of this Notice for a discussion of these amendments.

## **7. Background**

### ***Anticipated costs and benefits***

The CSA believe that the New Materials will, when implemented, yield benefits and reduce costs to market participants for the reasons discussed below.

#### **(i) *Harmonized exemptions***

The 45-106 Instrument and NI 31-103 harmonize many of the prospectus and registration exemptions currently available across Canada. The New Materials codify exemptive relief previously granted by the CSA. They also harmonize in a national rule certain exemptions which were previously local in application. Market participants wishing to effect an exempt distribution will continue to look primarily to the 45-106 Instrument for prospectus and, until the implementation of NI 31-103, registration exemptions, which may simplify compliance with the applicable exemptions.

#### **(ii) *No increase in filing and disclosure requirements***

The New Materials do not introduce any significant new filing or disclosure requirements.

(iii) *Support implementation of NI 31-103*

The New Materials will facilitate the implementation of NI 31-103. NI 31-103 contemplates harmonized registration requirements across all CSA jurisdictions. See the CSA notice dated February 29, 2008 requesting comment on NI 31-103 for a discussion of the anticipated costs and benefits of NI 31-103.

***Alternatives considered***

No alternatives to the New Materials were considered.

***Reliance on unpublished studies, etc.***

In developing the New Materials, we did not rely upon any significant unpublished study, report or other written materials.

**8. Where to find more information**

The New Materials and related consequential amendments are available on websites of CSA members, including:

[www.lautorite.qc.ca](http://www.lautorite.qc.ca)  
[www.albertasecurities.com](http://www.albertasecurities.com)  
[www.bcsc.bc.ca](http://www.bcsc.bc.ca)  
[www.gov.ns.ca/nssc](http://www.gov.ns.ca/nssc)  
[www.nbsc-cvmnb.ca](http://www.nbsc-cvmnb.ca)  
[www.osc.gov.on.ca](http://www.osc.gov.on.ca)  
[www.sfsc.gov.sk.ca](http://www.sfsc.gov.sk.ca)

**Questions**

Please refer your questions to any of the following CSA staff:

Gordon Smith  
Senior Legal Counsel, Corporate Finance  
British Columbia Securities Commission  
(604) 899-6656  
[gsmith@bcsc.bc.ca](mailto:gsmith@bcsc.bc.ca)

Taryn Montgomery  
Legal Counsel  
Alberta Securities Commission  
(403) 297-4968  
[Taryn.Montgomery@asc.ca](mailto:Taryn.Montgomery@asc.ca)

Tracy Clark  
Legal Counsel  
Alberta Securities Commission  
(403) 355-4424  
[Tracy.Clark@asc.ca](mailto:Tracy.Clark@asc.ca)

Dean Murrison  
Deputy Director, Legal/Registration  
Securities Division  
Saskatchewan Financial Services Commission  
(306) 787-5879  
[Dean.Murrison@gov.sk.ca](mailto:Dean.Murrison@gov.sk.ca)

Chris Besko  
Legal Counsel - Deputy Director  
The Manitoba Securities Commission  
(204) 945-2561  
[cbesko@gov.mb.ca](mailto:cbesko@gov.mb.ca)

Jo-Anne Matear  
Assistant Manager, Corporate Finance Branch  
Ontario Securities Commission  
(416) 593-2323  
[jmatear@osc.gov.on.ca](mailto:jmatear@osc.gov.on.ca)

Jason Koskela  
Legal Counsel, Corporate Finance  
Ontario Securities Commission  
(416) 595-8922  
[jkoskela@osc.gov.on.ca](mailto:jkoskela@osc.gov.on.ca)

Robert F. Kohl (for NI 31-103)  
Senior Legal Counsel  
Registrant Regulation  
Ontario Securities Commission  
(416) 593-8233  
[rkohl@osc.gov.on.ca](mailto:rkohl@osc.gov.on.ca)

Darren McKall  
Senior Legal Counsel, Investment Funds  
Ontario Securities Commission  
(416) 593-8118  
[dmckall@osc.gov.on.ca](mailto:dmckall@osc.gov.on.ca)

Sylvie Lalonde (for NI 45-106)  
Manager, Policy Department  
Autorité des marchés financiers  
(514) 395-0337, poste 4461  
[sylvie.lalonde@lautorite.qc.ca](mailto:sylvie.lalonde@lautorite.qc.ca)

Rosetta Gagliardi (for NI 45-102)  
Senior Policy Advisor  
Autorité des marchés financiers  
(514) 395-0337 ext. 4462  
[rosetta.gagliardi@lautorite.qc.ca](mailto:rosetta.gagliardi@lautorite.qc.ca)

Shirley Lee  
Securities Analyst  
Nova Scotia Securities Commission  
(902) 424-5441  
[leesp@gov.ns.ca](mailto:leesp@gov.ns.ca)

Susan Powell  
Legal Counsel, Corporate Finance  
New Brunswick Securities Commission  
(506) 643-7697  
[susan.powell@nbsc-cvmnb.ca](mailto:susan.powell@nbsc-cvmnb.ca)

Steve Dowling  
Superintendent of Securities  
Prince Edward Island  
(902) 368-4552  
[sddowling@gov.pe.ca](mailto:sddowling@gov.pe.ca)

Don Boyles  
Program & Policy Development  
Securities Commission of Newfoundland and Labrador  
Government of Newfoundland & Labrador  
(709) 729-4501  
[dboyles@gov.nl.ca](mailto:dboyles@gov.nl.ca)

Louis Arki, Director, Legal Registries  
Department of Justice, Government of Nunavut  
(867) 975-6587  
[larki@gov.nu.ca](mailto:larki@gov.nu.ca)

Donn MacDougall  
Deputy Superintendent, Legal & Enforcement  
Office of the Superintendent of Securities  
Government of the Northwest Territories  
PO Box 1320  
Yellowknife, NT X1A 2L9  
Tel: (867) 920-8984  
Fax: (867) 873-0243  
E-mail: [donald\\_macdougall@gov.nt.ca](mailto:donald_macdougall@gov.nt.ca)

Frederik J. Pretorius  
Manager Corporate Affairs (C-6)  
Dept of Community Services  
Government of Yukon  
(867) 667-5225  
[Fred.Pretorius@gov.yk.ca](mailto:Fred.Pretorius@gov.yk.ca)

July 17, 2009

## Appendix A

**Proposed National Instrument 45-106 *Prospectus and Registration Exemptions* (NI 45-106)  
and  
Proposed National Instrument 45-102 *Resale of Securities* (NI 45-102)**

### List of Commenters

1.	Ogilvy Renault
2.	European Investment Bank
3.	Carevest Capital Inc.
4.	Canadian Life and Health Insurance Association Inc.
5.	ACPM/ACARR
6.	Fraser Milner Casgrain LLP
7.	Gowlings
8.	Borden Ladner Gervais
9.	Stikeman Elliott
10.	Morbank Financial Inc.
11.	Osler Hoskin Harcourt LLP
12.	Davies Ward Phillips & Vineberg LLP

## Appendix B

### Summary of Comments and CSA Responses

#### Proposed National Instrument 45-106 *Prospectus and Registration Exemptions* (NI 45-106) and Proposed National Instrument 45-102 *Resale of Securities* (NI 45-102)

#### Table of Contents

##### 1. General Comments

1. General support for the amendments to NI 45-106 as published
2. General concern regarding the amendments to NI 45-106 as published

##### 2. Specific Comments from Industry

1. Section 2.9 of OSC Rule 45-501 *Ontario Prospectus and Registration Exemptions* (OSC Rule 45-501) and Status of the capital accumulation plan (CAP) exemption
2. Accurate cross references to defined terms in other legislation
3. Exemptions for traditional life insurance contracts

##### 3. NI 45-106 Comments

1. General comments regarding the application of proposed National Instrument 31-103 *Registration Requirements* (NI 31-103) to NI 45-106
2. Section 1.1 - Definition of “accredited investor” in paragraph (q)
3. Section 1.1 - Definition of “accredited investor” in paragraph (t)
4. Section 1.1 - Addition of master trust to the definition of “accredited investor”
5. Section 1.1 - Definition of “approved credit rating”
6. Section 1.1 - Definition of “founder”
7. Section 2.4 - Private issuer: Addition of category of persons
8. Section 2.4 - Private issuer: Correction of cross-references
9. Sections 2.4 & 3.4 Private issuer: Addition of transactions
10. Section 2.7 - Founder, control person and family - Ontario: Addition of category of persons
11. Section 2.8 - Affiliates: Addition of affiliates of the issuer
12. Section 2.14 - Securities for debt: Addition of non-reporting issuers
13. Section 2.22 - Definition of “consultant”: Addition of category of persons

14. Section 2.32 - Distribution to lender by control person for collateral: Expansion of exemption
15. Section 2.34 - Specified debt: Addition of category of entities
16. Sections 2.36 & 3.36 - Mortgages: Exclusion of Alberta to trade syndicated mortgages
17. Subsection 6.1(2) - Report of exempt distribution: Inconsistencies with Form 45-106F1 (45-106F1) and request for policy reasons
18. Appendix A - Revisions to cross references

**4. Companion Policy 45-106CP (45-106CP)**

1. Subsection 4.2(3) - Business combination and reorganization - exchangeable shares: Clarification required

**5. Form 45-106F2 Comments**

1. Item 3.1 - Compensation and securities held: Addition of related party
2. Item 8 - Other Material Facts: Clarification required
3. Part B - Financial Statements - General: Audited financial statement requirement

**6. NI 45-102 Comments**

1. Subsections 2.5(2) & 2.5(3) - Restricted Period: Concern with the legend requirements
2. Subparagraph 2.5(2)(3)(i) - Restricted Period: Prescribed legend for non-reporting issuers
3. Subparagraph 2.5(2)5 & 2.5(2)6 - Restricted Period: Policy reason for requirements
4. Subsections 2.8(4) & 2.8(5) - Exemption for a Trade by a Control Person: Time frame for trades
5. Sections 2.10, 2.11 & 2.12 - Exemptions for Specific Transactions: Resale requirements
6. Section 2.14 - First Trades in Securities of a Non-Reporting Issuer Distributed Under a Prospectus: Test requirements

#	Theme	Comments	Responses
<b>1. <u>GENERAL COMMENTS</u></b>			
1.	General support for the amendments to NI 45-106 as published	Three commenters expressed general support for harmonizing the exemptions and improving the quality and transparency of securities distributed in the exempt markets.	We thank the commenters for their support.
2.	General concern for the amendments to NI 45-106 as published	Two commenters expressed concern that significant portions of securities regulation in Canada are not harmonized. A commenter stated that the amendments contain intricate legal drafting to accommodate the different philosophical views regarding registration reform adopted by certain jurisdictions, such as British Columbia and Manitoba.	We have harmonized our approach to the registration exemptions located in Part 3 of NI 45-106. For a discussion of any different philosophical views regarding registration reform, please refer to the responses in the summary of comments for National Instrument 31-103 – <i>Registration Requirements and Exemptions</i> (NI 31-103).
<b>2. <u>SPECIFIC COMMENTS FROM INDUSTRY</u></b>			
1.	Section 2.9 of OSC Rule 45-501 <i>Ontario Prospectus and Registration Exemptions</i> (OSC Rule 45-501) and Status of the capital accumulation plan (CAP) exemption	One commenter asked why section 2.9 of OSC Rule 45-501 is an Ontario only rule and not a national instrument.  Two commenters asked about the status of the CAP exemption, which was last published in October 2005 and was intended to become part of NI 45-106. Both commenters urged the CSA to finalize the CAP exemption and incorporate it into NI 45-106.	The proposed prospectus and registration CAP exemption was not incorporated into proposed NI 45-106 (nor was the corresponding registration CAP exemption incorporated into proposed NI 31-103). The CSA will proceed with the proposed CAP exemptions as a separate initiative.
2.	Accurate cross references to defined terms in other legislation	One commenter recommended that the CSA adopt procedures to ensure that the cross references to defined terms in other legislation remain up-to-date.	We regularly review and update cross references to defined terms in other legislation.

#	Theme	Comments	Responses
3.	Exemptions for traditional life insurance contracts	One commenter indicated that sections 2.39 and 3.39 provide exemptions for “variable insurance contracts”. The commenter advised, however, that deferred annuity individual variable insurance contracts with at least a 75 per cent guarantee and insurance company issued annuity contracts are excluded from the definition of “security” in various provincial securities legislation. The commenter strongly recommended that, going forward, the traditional exemptions for life insurance contracts continue to be set out in the definition of a “security”.	Amendments to the definition of “security” are beyond the scope of this project.
<b>3. <u>NI 45-106 COMMENTS</u></b>			
1.	General comments regarding the application of proposed NI 31-103 to NI 45-106	<p>Once commenter made the following statements regarding the application of proposed NI 31-103 to NI 45-106:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>i. NI 31-103 gives persons 6 months from the date when NI 31-103 comes into force to apply for the appropriate category of registration. In certain circumstances, the registration requirements under NI 31-103 will not apply to persons who apply within the 6-month period until their registration is either accepted or rejected. If NI 45-106 comes into force 6 months from the date when NI 31-103 comes into force, there may be a gap in the timeframe between the removal of the registration exemptions in NI 45-106 and the registration of certain persons under NI 31-103, which may leave them with no exemptions to rely upon until their registration is accepted or rejected.</li> <li>ii. Given that the restrictions on the availability of Part 3 of NI 45-106 will not take effect until 6 months from the date when NI 31-103 comes into force, section 6.6 should also take effect 6 months from the date when NI 31-103 comes into force because a person in British Columbia relying on a registration exemption would still be operating under the current framework of NI 45-106 until such time.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>i. We think that the 6 month transition period provides a sufficient amount of time for certain persons to apply for the appropriate category of registration.</li> <li>ii. We agree and have revised section 6.6 of NI 45-106 to address this comment. We have moved section 6.6 to NI 31-103. Please see NI 31-103.</li> </ul>

#	Theme	Comments	Responses
		<p>iii. The application of Part 3 is proposed to be restricted only to British Columbia and Manitoba after 6 months from the date when NI 31-103 comes into force, but it appears that section 3.03 will also continue to apply in New Brunswick. Query whether New Brunswick should be referred to in Part 1 - Introduction of Companion Policy 45-106CP.</p> <p>iv. Given the proposed registration trigger under NI 31-103, query whether the commentary in section 3.2 of Companion Policy 45-106CP (Soliciting purchasers – Newfoundland and Labrador and Ontario) should be retained. If it is retained, the wording should conform to the rules regarding the proposed registration trigger that will be contained in NI 31-103.</p>	<p>iii. The last publication for comment included a notwithstanding clause that dealt with this issue. The notwithstanding clause stated that despite the application of the registration exemptions, the “business trigger” exemption applied in B.C. and New Brunswick. The registration exemptions in Part 3 never were proposed to apply in New Brunswick.</p> <p>We have relocated section 3.03 to NI 31-103.</p> <p>iv. We do not think that it is necessary to revise section 3.2 of the Companion Policy at this time. The commentary will continue to be relevant during the transition period when the registration exemptions in NI 45-106 continue to be available in Ontario and Newfoundland and Labrador.</p>
2.	Section 1.1 - Definition of “accredited investor” in paragraph (q)	<p>One commenter stated that the CSA should review paragraph (q) in the definition of “accredited investor” because of the proposed registration trigger and other amendments to the registration requirements under the proposed NI 31-103. The commenter noted that this paragraph should contemplate persons exempt from registration under the securities legislation of a foreign jurisdiction.</p> <p>Two commenters requested that the Ontario Securities Commission (OSC) to remove the carve-out for Ontario in the definition of “accredited investor” in subparagraph (q)(ii). This subparagraph provides that an accredited investor is defined as a person acting on behalf of a fully-managed account managed by that person if that person “in Ontario, is purchasing a security that is not a security of an investment fund.”</p>	<p>We have reviewed paragraph (q) in the definition of “accredited investor”. This paragraph already contemplates persons exempt from registration under the securities legislation of a foreign jurisdiction because it includes the words “authorized to carry on business”.</p> <p>The OSC remains concerned with the potential indirect distribution of private hedge and pooled funds to retail investors under subparagraph (q)(ii) of the definition of “accredited investor” and, as a result, the OSC will maintain the Ontario carve-out for securities of investment funds.</p>

#	Theme	Comments	Responses
3.	Section 1.1 - Definition of “accredited investor” in paragraph (t)	<p>One commenter believes that paragraph (t) in the definition of “accredited investor” contains a drafting error. The commenter asked if the phrase immediately after “all of the owners of interests” reading “direct, indirect <u>or</u> beneficial” should read “direct, indirect <u>and</u> beneficial”.</p> <p>Another commenter expressed concern that the words “direct, indirect or beneficial” are unintentionally over-broad and may result in confusion or unintended results. The commenter believes that the exemption should allow any person, which itself qualifies as an accredited investor, to establish a wholly-owned subsidiary through which it may make an investment in reliance on this exemption. The wholly-owned subsidiary currently does not qualify under any other paragraph in the definition of “accredited investor”, or, as a result of the restriction in section 2.3(5), it cannot rely upon paragraph (m) of this definition. This commenter suggested that the paragraph be redrafted as follows: “<i>a person in which all of the equity owners, except the voting securities required by law to be owned by directors, are accredited investors</i>” because this wording is consistent with Rule 501(a)(8) of Regulation D under the United States <i>Securities Act</i> of 1933.</p>	<p>We do not agree that it is necessary to revise this paragraph and do not think that the words “direct, indirect or beneficial” are unintentionally overbroad. All of the owners contemplated in this exemption are required to be accredited investors regardless of their ownership interest.</p>
4.	Section 1.1 - Addition of master trust to the definition of “accredited investor”	<p>Two commenters believe that master trusts should be entitled to the same exemptive relief as the pension plans themselves. Both commenters urged the CSA to recognize that master trusts, which are vehicles established pursuant to income tax legislation to allow registered pension funds to manage their assets more efficiently, be added to the definition of “accredited investor”.</p>	<p>We do not think that any changes to the definition of “accredited investor” are needed at this time. We note that other paragraphs of the definition of “accredited investor”, or other prospectus and registration exemptions in NI 45-106, may apply to a master trust depending on the circumstances.</p>
5.	Section 1.1 - Definition of “approved credit rating”	<p>One commenter stated that the definition of “approved credit rating”, which refers to National Instrument 81-102 <i>Mutual Funds</i> (NI 81-102), has caused difficulties for the distribution of commercial paper because the definition of an “approved credit rating” in NI 81-102 requires, among other things, that (a) the rating assigned must be “at or above” certain ratings, and (b) the security must not have been assigned a rating by any “approved credit rating organization” that is not an “approved credit rating”. The commenter further stated that the requisite thresholds in NI 45-106 are not equivalent among the rating agencies</p>	<p>CSA Consultation Paper 11-405 <i>Securities Regulatory Proposals Stemming from the 2007-08 Credit Market Turmoil and its Effect on the ABCP Market in Canada</i> was published for comment on October 6, 2008. The comment period ended on February 16, 2009. As part of a separate project, we are considering the comments received for any possible amendments to the definition of “approved credit rating” or to certain</p>

#	Theme	Comments	Responses
		and correlation among ratings are imperfect; as a result, issuers have had to obtain exemptive relief in order to distribute commercial paper that has been assigned the requisite approved credit rating by at least one approved credit rating agency. The commenter urged the CSA to amend the definition to make the exemption available where a rating at or above the designated approved credit rating is issued by one of the approved credit rating agencies or any of their successors.	exemptions.
6.	Section 1.1 - Definition of “founder”	One commenter believes that the definition of “founder” is problematic in that at the time of incorporation, the founder is not actively involved in the issuer’s business because the issuer is not carrying on a business. The commenter recommended that the CSA change the definition as follows: “...founding, organizing or substantially reorganizing the business of the issuer <i>at the time of the trade</i> ”.	We do not agree that it is necessary to revise the definition of “founder”. We refer the commenter to section 2.4 of 45-106CP (Founder) which provides further guidance.
7.	Section 2.4 - Private issuer: Addition of category of persons	One commenter appreciated the addition of “an employee of the issuer or an affiliate of the issuer” to paragraph 2.4(2)(b). However, the commenter asked that the CSA expand this new category by adding “ <i>a director and officer of an affiliate of the issuer</i> ” to this paragraph.	We agree with the recommendation and have revised paragraph 2.4(2)(b) of NI 45-106 to address this comment.
8.	Section 2.4 - Private issuer: Correction of cross-references	One commenter indicated that paragraphs 2.4(2)(j) and 2.4(2)(k) should refer to paragraph (i) instead of paragraph (h).	We have revised the applicable paragraphs in subsection 2.4(2) of NI 45-106 to address this comment.
9.	Sections 2.4 & 3.4 Private issuer: Addition of transactions	One commenter suggested that the CSA expand the private issuer exemption by adding a paragraph to include not only going private transactions but also any type of transaction, including takeover bids or reorganizations, resulting in the securities of the issuer, other than non-convertible debt securities, being owned solely by the persons listed in subsections 2.4(2) or 3.4(2). The commenter also stated that the guidance in Companion Policy 45-106CP should be sufficiently broad so as not to preclude such an interpretation of this proposed amendment.	The word “transaction” in this proposed amendment is not limited to going private transactions. The text is sufficiently broad to capture the types of transactions contemplated in this comment.

#	Theme	Comments	Responses
10.	Section 2.7 - Founder, control person and family - Ontario: Addition of category of persons	Two commenters asked the CSA to expand subsection 2.7(c) by adding grandchildren.	We agree with the recommendation and have revised subsection 2.7(c) to address this comment.
11.	Section 2.8 - Affiliates: Addition of affiliates of the issuer	One commenter asked the CSA to expand the exemption in section 2.8 to facilitate transfers among affiliates by adding wording as follows: “The prospectus requirement does not apply to a distribution by an issuer of a security of its own issue <i>or of an affiliate of the issuer to another</i> affiliate of the issuer that is purchasing as principal.”	We do not propose to expand the scope of the exemption in section 2.8 to include securities of affiliates at this time.
12.	Section 2.14 - Securities for debt: Addition of non-reporting issuers	One commenter stated that the securities for debt exemption should not be restricted to reporting issuers and recommended that the CSA expand the exemption to include non-reporting issuers. The commenter added that non-reporting issuers must find another exemption for the purposes of making a distribution to creditors. Another exemption may not be available or may involve the filing of a report of exempt distribution and the payment of fees, which may place an undue financial burden on non-reporting issuers.	We do not propose to expand the securities for debt exemption to include non-reporting issuers. We have restricted this exemption to reporting issuers because we are able to review the use of this exemption in light of the financial statements that reporting issuers are required to file through SEDAR.
13.	Section 2.22 - Definition of “consultant”: Addition of category of persons	One commenter suggested that the CSA expand paragraph (e) of the definition of “consultant” by adding “ <i>an executive officer or director</i> of the consultant” in order to be consistent with the introductory wording of the definition of “consultant”.	We agree with the comment and have revised paragraph (e) of section 2.22 of NI 45-106 to address this comment.
14.	Section 2.32 - Distribution to lender by control person for collateral: Expansion of exemption	One commenter recommended that the CSA expand section 2.32 to allow for the distribution of securities from the holdings of a control person for a bona fide debt of the control person <i>or of the issuer</i> . This change would provide greater flexibility and is consistent with most personal property security legislation in Canada, which provides that a debtor includes a person who pledges collateral to secure a debt of another person.	We do not propose to expand the exemption in section 2.32 of NI 45-106. The intent and substance of personal property security legislation is significantly different from that of securities legislation.

#	Theme	Comments	Responses
15.	Section 2.34 - Specified debt: Addition of category of entities	One commenter acknowledged that section 2.34 allows certain permitted supranational agencies and foreign government guaranteed debt securities with approved credit ratings to benefit from the prospectus exemption. However, the commenter asked that the CSA expand the category of entities by adding foreign government- <i>owned</i> institutions.	We do not propose to expand section 2.34 of NI 45-106 to permit distributions of debt securities of, or guaranteed by, foreign government-owned institutions. We do not think that foreign government ownership of an institution is itself a sufficient factor warranting exempt treatment. We note that debt securities guaranteed by a foreign government with an approved credit rating may be distributed under this exemption.
16.	Sections 2.36 & 3.36 - Mortgages: Exclusion of Alberta to trade syndicated mortgages	One commenter asked why registered or licensed mortgage brokers/dealers in Alberta will no longer benefit from the prospectus and registration exemptions to trade in syndicated mortgages as stipulated in subsections 2.36(3) and 3.36(3).	Alberta Securities Commission (ASC) staff became aware that the use of the mortgages exemption had expanded beyond the scope of the original policy rationale underlying this exemption. As a result, ASC staff were concerned that the distribution of securities in connection with syndicated mortgages was, essentially, unregulated. Please note that mortgage brokers/dealers who deal in syndicated mortgages currently have, and will continue to have, access to a variety of other exemptions under which they may distribute debt obligations that are associated with syndicated mortgages (e.g. accredited investor, offering memorandum, minimum amount, etc
17.	Subsection 6.1(2) - Report of exempt distribution: Inconsistencies with Form 45-106F1 and request for policy reasons	One commenter believes that there are inconsistencies between subsection 6.1(2) and Form 45-106F1. Inconsistencies cited include: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• subsection 6.1(2) requires a report of exempt distribution to be filed where the distribution takes place;</li> <li>• instruction #1 in Form 45-106F1 states that if a distribution is made in more than one jurisdiction, the issuer or underwriter must complete a single report identifying all purchasers and file that report in each of the jurisdictions where the distribution is made; and</li> <li>• item 7 of Form 45-106F1 states the table must be completed for each</li> </ul>	We do not agree that the language in subsection 6.1(2) and Form 45-106F1 results in inconsistencies. A report of exempt distribution is not required to be filed in a Canadian jurisdiction if no distribution has taken place in that jurisdiction. Therefore, we have not revised either NI 45-106 or Form 45-106F1.

#	Theme	Comments	Responses
		<p>Canadian and each foreign jurisdiction where purchasers of securities reside.</p> <p>Two commenters considered the requirements of subsection 6.1(2) of NI 45-106 and Form 45-106F1 and questioned whether it is appropriate to require disclosure of purchasers outside of the local jurisdiction in which the Form 45-106F1 is filed. In particular:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• One commenter considered the example of a foreign issuer carrying out a private placement in various foreign jurisdictions, including Canada. By virtue of Instruction #1 and Item 7 of Form 45-106F1, the foreign issuer would be required to disclose information regarding each foreign purchaser to each applicable Canadian regulator in the jurisdictions where a distribution took place. The commenter asked the CSA to explain the policy reason for requiring disclosure about purchasers who do not have any connection to the exempt distribution that takes place in a Canadian jurisdiction.</li> <li>• One commenter expressed concern that, although Schedule 1 to Form 45-106F1 (which contains the list of purchasers) is not made public, freedom of information legislation in certain jurisdictions may require that such information be made available to the public if requested. As a result, submitting a common Form 45-106F1 report across jurisdictions may increase the likelihood of a purchaser's identity being divulged to the public. The commenter recommended that the CSA retain the permissive wording currently in Instruction #1 to 45-106F1 and not adopt the proposed wording.</li> </ul>	<p>We require information about distributions that occur in Canadian jurisdictions for compliance purposes regardless of where the purchasers are resident. To determine whether it needs to file a report, an issuer must determine if a distribution has occurred in the local jurisdiction; it may make this determination by referring to the securities legislation of the local jurisdiction. The issuer must also determine if the exemption it is using is one that requires a report be filed.</p> <p>We acknowledge the comment; however, it is important that the securities regulator or regulatory authority in each Canadian jurisdiction involved in an exempt distribution for which a Form 45-106F1 is required have information regarding related distributions in other Canadian jurisdictions.</p>

#	Theme	Comments	Responses
18.	Appendix A - Revisions to cross references	One commenter advised that in British Columbia the definition of “life insurance” is currently contained in the <i>Financial Institutions Act</i> (British Columbia) and not the <i>Insurance Act</i> (British Columbia). The same commenter advised that in Ontario the definition of “life insurance” is now made by way of Superintendent Order and is not contained in section 1 of the <i>Insurance Act</i> (Ontario).	We have revised Appendix A to address this comment.
<b>4. <u>COMPANION POLICY 45-106CP (45-106CP)</u></b>			
1.	Subsection 4.2(3) - Business combination and reorganization - exchangeable shares: Clarification required	One commenter recommended that the CSA change the last sentence of this subsection to read as follow: “Accordingly, additional exemptive relief is not warranted in circumstances where <i>the original transaction was completed in reliance on these exemptions.</i> ” The commenter believes that this change will prevent confusion as to whether the exemption is available for an exchange of exchangeable shares that occurs after the original transaction.	We agree with the recommendation and have revised subsection 4.2(3) of 45-106CP to address this comment.
<b>5. <u>FORM 45-106F2 COMMENTS</u></b>			
1.	Item 3.1 - Compensation and Securities Held: Addition of related party	One commenter disagrees with the addition of compensation paid by a related party to certain named persons in the table of Item 3.1. The commenter stated that such disclosure may not be relevant information needed by a potential investor to make an informed investment decision unless the issuer is indirectly paying the compensation. The commenter further stated that the current wording suggests the issuer will now have to disclose compensation paid by a grandparent to certain named persons in an unrelated family venture, or by a company controlled by a director of the issuer that is unrelated to the issuer and its business. The commenter recommended that the CSA limit the wording by requiring disclosure of compensation paid directly or indirectly by the issuer or by a related party if the issuer receives a direct benefit from such compensation.	We have added guidance in the instructions to the form to address this comment.

#	Theme	Comments	Responses
2.	Item 8 - Other Material Facts: Clarification required	<p>One commenter stated that the disclosure required by the other items in Form 45-106F2 is comprehensive and captures all that should be necessary to disclose in an offering memorandum, and that any information that would be stated in the new Item 8 would already be disclosed under one of the other items. The commenter added that Item 14 requires an issuer to include a certificate stating: “This offering memorandum does not contain a misrepresentation.” The commenter asked the CSA to clarify what additional information is required by Item 8 and if it is a mandatory disclosure item.</p>	<p>We have addressed this comment by eliminating Item 8 from Form 45-106F2. We have, however, added guidance in the instructions indicating that particulars of any material facts, which have not been disclosed under any of the Item numbers and for which failure to disclose would constitute a misrepresentation in the offering memorandum must be included.</p>
3.	Part B - Financial Statements - General: Audited financial statement requirement	<p>One commenter disagrees with the CSA’s proposed amendment to add an audit requirement as now stipulated in Part B.9 for those issuers that have not completed one financial year, or have a financial year end less than 120 days from the date of the offering memorandum as described in Part B.3. Reasons cited include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If an issuer has not completed one financial year, the financial statements included in the offering memorandum should be unaudited interim financial statements. National Instrument 51-102 <i>Continuous Disclosure Obligations</i> (NI 51-102) allows reporting issuers to file unaudited interim financial statements on Sedar. The same requirement should apply to non-qualifying issuers.</li> <li>• The new audit requirement will only apply to non-qualifying issuers as this amendment has not been made to Form 45-106F3 <i>Offering Memorandum for Qualifying Issuers</i>. Non-qualifying and qualifying issuers should be subject to the same financial statement requirements and the proposed amendment is unfairly prejudicial to non-qualifying issuers.</li> <li>• Audited interim financial statements will greatly increase the cost of preparing an offering memorandum for non-qualifying issuers and will</li> </ul>	<p>We acknowledge the comment, but do not agree. An issuer has to file audited financial statements in conjunction with its going public transaction, even if it has not completed one financial year. When the issuer becomes a reporting issuer, it then becomes subject to continuous disclosure obligations under NI 51-102. Although NI 51-102 allows this issuer to file unaudited interim financial statements, NI 51-102 requires it to file audited annual financial statements.</p> <p>Similar to the above response, an issuer is required to file audited financial statements to become a qualifying issuer and is subsequently required to file audited financial statements on a yearly basis.</p> <p>We acknowledge that there are costs associated with conducting an audit. However, an issuer that has</p>

#	Theme	Comments	Responses
		<p>limit their ability to access the market in a timely manner because of the increased cost and time required to involve an auditor.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Many issuers using this Form are single purpose entities, such as limited partnerships, incorporated or organized immediately prior to the distribution and have no operational history or assets at the distribution date. The financial statements included in the offering memorandum for those issuers are nil financial statements and do not convey any material information to a prospective purchaser. The commenter requested the CSA to exempt such nil financial statements from the audit requirement.</li> <li>The CSA Notice stated that the changes to the financial statement requirements were clarifying changes to make the requirements more consistent with NI 51-102. The commenter stated that the new audit requirement is more than just a “clarifying change”.</li> </ul>	<p>completed a financial year is currently required to provide audited financial statements in an offering memorandum. Therefore, issuers that have not completed a financial year should be treated the same as those that have completed a financial year. We think that this is the most equitable treatment.</p> <p>We maintain that it would be relatively inexpensive for a single purpose entity with no operation history or assets to obtain an audit.</p> <p>We think that the changes to the financial statement requirements are more consistent with NI 51-102. As stated, an issuer that carries out a transaction to become a reporting issuer must file audited financial statements and is subsequently required to produce audited annual financial statements.</p>
<b>6. <u>NI-45-102 COMMENTS</u></b>			
1.	Subsections 2.5(2) & 2.5(3) - Restricted Period: Concern with the legend requirements	<p>One commenter expressed concern with the CSA’s approach to legending requirements which is to make them a condition of resale rather than a condition of the exempt distribution. The commenter believes that an issuer has no incentive to ensure compliance with the legend requirements or the resale restrictions other than in response to pressure from prospective investors; as a result, the investor will bear the risk of the issuer’s failure to incorporate a legend.</p> <p>Two commenters recommended eliminating the legend requirement because it is difficult to comply with practically and operationally. Both commenters</p>	<p>We acknowledge the comment but we do not propose to change the model for legending requirements. A legend may not be appropriate when securities sold under a prospectus exemption are never intended to leave the closed system.</p> <p>We continue to maintain that a legend is the most practical manner for providing certainty as to the</p>

#	Theme	Comments	Responses
		<p>noted that it may be difficult or impossible for issuers to deliver written notification of resale restrictions to beneficial purchasers, such as in circumstances where securities are dematerialized, uncertificated or in global form only.</p> <p>Specific concerns cited by the commenters include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• how an issuer would deliver notice to a beneficial owner where an investment manager is purchasing the securities for a fully managed account since in these circumstances the beneficial owner will never see a disclosure document or trade confirmation;</li> <li>• if the beneficial owner does not receive notice from the issuer, then the beneficial owner’s securities will effectively be subject to a permanent hold; and</li> <li>• that the proposed notification requirements will unduly hamper the efficient transfer, trading and settlement of securities and interests in securities through electronic settlement facilities.</li> </ul>	<p>applicable hold periods and of providing more effective regulation of the exempt market. We have provided issuers with alternative methods for satisfying the legending requirements. For example, providing written notice of the legend restriction notation to the purchaser in a subscription agreement or offering memorandum, or including the legend restriction notation in an ownership statement issued under a direct registration system or other electronic book-entry system delivered directly to the purchaser are alternative methods of satisfying the written notice requirement. Please refer to section 1.6 of Companion Policy 45-102CP (45-102CP).</p> <p>We agree with the comment and have clarified that the manager of a fully managed account may be substituted for the beneficial owner (which now reads as purchaser) in Item 2.5(2)3.1.</p> <p>The purchaser may request written notice from the issuer. The issuer may also provide written notice of the legend restriction or place a legend on a securities certificate subsequent to the sale of the securities. The issuer must do so before the purchaser can sell his securities.</p> <p>We do not think that the written notification requirement will unduly hamper the efficient transfer, trading and settlement of securities because the notice requirement is a separate process from those transactions conducted through the electronic settlement facilities.</p>

#	Theme	Comments	Responses
		<p>These commenters proposed that changing the requirement to deliver the notice to the “purchaser” rather than the “beneficial owner” as a way to address delivery concerns. Both commenters supported approaches where the issuer could provide notice of applicable resale restrictions to “purchasers” through a subscription agreement, offering documentation or other disclosure.</p> <p>One commenter stated that trading of securities before the expiry of the restricted period would be more appropriately addressed through the facilities of the electronic system where transfer and settlement takes place, as opposed to the proposed paper-based notification model in NI 45-102. The commenter cites technological options such as separate CUSIP number identification or specific designations or markers used by intermediaries in other jurisdictions.</p> <p>Two commenters proposed that NI 45-102 be revised to clearly permit removal of a legend from a certificate, or the exchange of a legended certificate for a replacement certificate without a legend, upon expiry of the restricted period referred to in the legend.</p> <p>One commenter stated that the exemption from legending / notification requirements for trades of underlying securities in subsection 2.5(3) is vague does not adequately account for the various ways that securities may be issued</p>	<p>We agree with the comment and have changed “beneficial owner” to “purchaser”. We have also provided guidance as to what we mean by purchaser in 45-102CP. Specifically, we think that the purchaser is the person who makes the investment decision about the acquisition of a security. We have clarified that the notice requirement may be satisfied in a variety of ways. Please see section 1.6 of 45-102CP.</p> <p>As indicated in section 1.6 of 45-102CP, we encourage issuers to assist purchasers of restricted securities with compliance with the resale restrictions in Item 2 of subsection 2.5(2). This may include assigning a separate CUSIP or ISIN number to the security for the duration of the restricted period in the direct registration or electronic book-entry system in which that security is entered. We do not propose to mandate the assignment of a separate CUSIP or ISIN number to restricted securities because not all direct registration or book-entry systems are able to accommodate this request.</p> <p>We acknowledge the comment and added guidance in section 1.7 of 45-102CP. NI 45-102 does not preclude an issuer or its transfer agent from removing a legend after the expiry of the restricted period referred to in the legend, after the requirements in subsection 2.5(2)(3) are satisfied</p> <p>We have clarified subsection 2.5(2)(3). Please see subsection 2.5(2)(3).</p>

#	Theme	Comments	Responses
		<p>in Canada (which may be dematerialized, uncertificated or certificated). The commenter proposed that the exemption from the legending / notification requirements in Items 3 and 3.1 of subsection 2.5(3) apply to a trade of an underlying security that is issued on a date at least four months after the distribution date, regardless of the date of issuance of a security certificate or delivery of written notification in respect of the underlying security.</p>	
2.	<p>Subparagraph 2.5(2)3(ii) - Restricted Period: Prescribed legend for non-reporting issuers</p>	<p>One commenter submitted that the prescribed legend for non-reporting issuers in subsection 2.5(2) is not an accurate statement of the restricted period that will apply in most cases and asked the CSA to review this subsection. The commenter cited as an example that if a private company files a prospectus in one of the jurisdictions listed in Appendix B of NI 45-102, and the shareholder of the securities has held the securities for at least 4 months and a day prior to the filing of the prospectus, the shareholder's securities will be freely tradeable immediately following the filing of the prospectus by virtue of section 2.7 of NI 45-102. Therefore, in this circumstance the statement in the legend that there will be an additional four month restricted period is incorrect.</p>	<p>We reviewed this subsection and we disagree with the commenter's interpretation. Section 2.7 provides an exemption from Item 1 of subsection 2.5(2) if the issuer becomes a reporting issuer after the distribution date by filing a prospectus in a jurisdiction listed in Appendix B and is a reporting issuer in a jurisdiction of Canada at the time of the trade. Therefore, when an issuer satisfies the requirements in section 2.7, the requirement to have been a reporting issuer in a jurisdiction of Canada for the four months immediately preceding the trade does not apply. The prescribed language for the legend in subparagraph 2.5(2)3(ii) addresses this situation in that the opening words state: "<i>Unless permitted under securities legislation...</i>".</p>
3.	<p>Paragraphs 2.5(2)5 &amp; 2.5(2)6 - Restricted Period: Policy reason for requirements</p>	<p>One commenter questioned whether there remains a policy reason to retain the requirements in paragraphs 2.5(2)5 and 2.5(2)6. The commenter cited as an example that if a shareholder acquires 6% of an issuer's shares in the market and a further 2% by way of a private placement, the effect of these paragraphs is that the shareholder will be subject to different resale rules for its entire 8% position. The shareholder may only sell up to 6% in a block trade involving an extraordinary commission, and would be required to rely upon a different method to dispose of the remaining 2%.</p>	<p>We do not propose to remove conditions 5 and 6 from subsection 2.5(2). We continue to think that these conditions are appropriate. Please see section 1.8 of 45-102CP.</p>

#	Theme	Comments	Responses
4.	Subsections 2.8(4) & 2.8(5) - Exemption for a Trade by Control Person: Time frame for trades	One commenter stated that, given the effect of the proposed amendments to section 2.8, the requirement that a control person must wait seven days from filing of a Form 45-102F1 before effecting a trade is unduly restrictive. The commenter proposed a wait period of two days instead.	We continue to think that a seven-day waiting period for trades by a control person is necessary to give the market sufficient time to absorb the information.
5.	Sections 2.10, 2.11 & 2.12 - Exemptions for Specific Transactions: Resale requirements	One commenter noted that, in certain circumstances, NI 45-102 prescribes a resale requirement that the issuer is “a reporting issuer in any jurisdiction of Canada”, whereas in other instances (such as under section 2.10, 2.11 and 2.12) the resale requirement is that the issuer is a “reporting issuer”. The commenter questioned the policy rationale for this discrepancy and recommended that the applicable resale conditions in sections s. 2.10, 2.11 and 2.12 be amended to add the words “in a jurisdiction of Canada” after the references to “reporting issuer”.	We do not propose to broaden the provisions as requested at this time. We will continue to review discretionary relief applications on a case-by-case basis where these exemptions are not available.
6.	Section 2.14 - First Trades in Securities of a Non-Reporting Issuer Distributed Under a Prospectus Exemption: Test requirements	One commenter identified difficulties with the application of the resale exemption in subsection 2.14(1) given that foreign issuers and the Canadian purchasers of their securities in a private placement often do not know with certainty whether the percentage shareholdings and ownership tests that subsection are satisfied on the distribution date after giving effect to the completion of the distribution. The commenter asked the CSA to consider adding a new provision to NI 45-102 to facilitate resales by Canadian shareholders of non-Canadian non-reporting issuers outside of Canada. The commenter proposed that Canadian purchasers of securities of a foreign issuer with no connection to Canada, other than private placement sales to Canadian investors, should be allowed to resell the securities outside of Canada as long as there is “no substantial trading market” for them in Canada.	We believe that the percentage shareholdings and ownership tests in subsection 2.14(1) provide the necessary information for determining if a market for the securities exists in Canada. We think that section 1.15 of 45-102CP provides sufficient guidance to issuers for determining whether these tests are met.

## Appendix C-1

### National Instrument 45-106 *Prospectus and Registration Exemptions*

*Text boxes in this Instrument located above sections 2.1 to 2.5, 2.7 to 2.21, 2.24, 2.26, 2.27, and 2.30 to 2.43 refer to National Instrument 45-102 Resale of Securities. These text boxes do not form part of this Instrument.*

*Text boxes in this Instrument located below sections 2.34, 3.34, 2.36, 3.36, 2.37, 3.37, 2.41 and 3.41 refer to the Securities Act (Ontario). These text boxes do not form part of this Instrument.*

## Table of Contents

### **PART 1: DEFINITIONS AND INTERPRETATION**

- 1.1 Definitions
- 1.2 Interpretation of indirect interest
- 1.3 Affiliate
- 1.4 Control
- 1.5 Registration requirement
- 1.6 Definition of distribution - Manitoba
- 1.7 Definition of trade - Québec

### **PART 2: PROSPECTUS EXEMPTIONS**

#### **Division 1: Capital Raising Exemptions**

- 2.1 Rights offering
- 2.2 Reinvestment plan
- 2.3 Accredited investor
- 2.4 Private issuer
- 2.5 Family, friends and business associates
- 2.6 Family, friends and business associates - Saskatchewan
- 2.7 Founder, control person and family - Ontario
- 2.8 Affiliates
- 2.9 Offering memorandum
- 2.10 Minimum amount investment

## **Division 2: Transaction Exemptions**

- 2.11 Business combination and reorganization
- 2.12 Asset acquisition
- 2.13 Petroleum, natural gas and mining properties
- 2.14 Securities for debt
- 2.15 Issuer acquisition or redemption
- 2.16 Take-over bid and issuer bid
- 2.17 Offer to acquire to security holder outside local jurisdiction

## **Division 3: Investment Fund Exemptions**

- 2.18 Investment fund reinvestment
- 2.19 Additional investment in investment funds
- 2.20 Private investment club
- 2.21 Private investment fund - loan and trust pools

## **Division 4: Employee, Executive Officer, Director and Consultant Exemptions**

- 2.22 Definitions
- 2.23 Interpretation
- 2.24 Employee, executive officer, director and consultant
- 2.25 Unlisted reporting issuer exception
- 2.26 Distributions among current or former employees, executive officers, directors, or consultants of non-reporting issuer
- 2.27 Permitted transferees
- 2.28 Limitations re: permitted transferees
- 2.29 Issuer bid

## **Division 5: Miscellaneous Exemptions**

- 2.30 Isolated distribution by issuer
- 2.31 Dividends and distributions
- 2.32 Distribution to lender by control person for collateral
- 2.33 Acting as underwriter
- 2.34 Specified debt
- 2.35 Short-term debt
- 2.36 Mortgages
- 2.37 Personal property security legislation
- 2.38 Not for profit issuer
- 2.39 Variable insurance contract
- 2.40 RRSP/RRIF/TFSA
- 2.41 Schedule III banks and cooperative associations - evidence of deposit
- 2.42 Conversion, exchange, or exercise
- 2.43 Self-directed registered educational savings plans

## **PART 3: REGISTRATION EXEMPTIONS**

- 3.0 Removal of exemptions - market intermediaries

### **Division 1: Capital Raising Exemptions**

- 3.1 Rights offering
- 3.2 Reinvestment plan
- 3.3 Accredited investor
- 3.4 Private issuer
- 3.5 Family, friends and business associates
- 3.6 Family, friends and business associates - Saskatchewan
- 3.7 Founder, control person and family - Ontario
- 3.8 Affiliates
- 3.9 Offering memorandum
- 3.10 Minimum amount investment

#### **Division 2: Transaction Exemptions**

- 3.11 Business combination and reorganization
- 3.12 Asset acquisition
- 3.13 Petroleum, natural gas and mining properties
- 3.14 Securities for debt
- 3.15 Issuer acquisition or redemption
- 3.16 Take-over bid and issuer bid
- 3.17 Offer to acquire to security holder outside local jurisdiction

#### **Division 3: Investment Fund Exemptions**

- 3.18 Investment fund reinvestment
- 3.19 Additional investment in investment funds
- 3.20 Private investment club
- 3.21 Private investment fund - loan and trust pools

#### **Division 4: Employee, Executive Officer, Director and Consultant Exemptions**

- 3.22 Definitions
- 3.23 Interpretation
- 3.24 Employee, executive officer, director and consultant
- 3.25 Unlisted reporting issuer exception
- 3.26 Trades among current or former employees, executive officers, directors, or consultants of non-reporting issuer
- 3.27 Permitted transferees
- 3.28 Resale – non-reporting issuer

#### **Division 5: Miscellaneous Exemptions**

- 3.29 Isolated trade
- 3.30 Isolated trade by issuer
- 3.31 Dividends and distributions
- 3.32 Trade to lender by control person for collateral
- 3.33 Acting as underwriter
- 3.34 Specified debt
- 3.35 Short-term debt
- 3.36 Mortgages
- 3.37 Personal property security legislation

- 3.38 Not for profit issuer
- 3.39 Variable insurance contract
- 3.40 RRSP/RRIF/TFSA
- 3.41 Schedule III banks and cooperative associations - evidence of deposit
- 3.42 Conversion, exchange, or exercise
- 3.43 Self-directed registered educational savings plans
- 3.44 Registered dealer
- 3.45 Exchange contract
- 3.46 Estates, bankruptcies, and liquidations
- 3.47 Employees of registered dealer
- 3.48 Small security holder selling and purchase arrangements
- 3.49 Adviser
- 3.50 Investment dealer acting as portfolio manager

#### **PART 4: CONTROL BLOCK DISTRIBUTIONS**

- 4.1 Control block distributions
- 4.2 Distributions by a control person after a take-over bid

#### **PART 5: OFFERINGS BY TSX VENTURE EXCHANGE OFFERING DOCUMENT**

- 5.1 Application and interpretation
- 5.2 TSX Venture Exchange offering
- 5.3 Underwriter obligations

#### **PART 6: REPORTING REQUIREMENTS**

- 6.1 Report of exempt distribution
- 6.2 When report not required
- 6.3 Required form of report of exempt distribution
- 6.4 Required form of offering memorandum
- 6.5 Required form of risk acknowledgement

#### **PART 7: EXEMPTION**

- 7.1 Exemption

#### **PART 8: TRANSITIONAL, COMING INTO FORCE**

- 8.1 Additional investment – investment funds – exemption from prospectus requirement
  - 8.1.1 Additional investment – investment funds – exemption from registration requirement
- 8.2 Definition of “accredited investor” – investment fund
- 8.3 Transition – Closely-held issuer – exemption from prospectus requirement
  - 8.3.1 Transition – Closely-held issuer – exemption from registration requirement
- 8.4 Transition – Reinvestment plan
- 8.5 Application of Part 3 of this instrument
- 8.6 Repeal of former instrument
- 8.7 Effective date

Appendix A - Variable Insurance Contract Exemption

## Appendix B - Control Block Distribution

**National Instrument 45-106**  
***Prospectus and Registration Exemptions***

**PART 1: DEFINITIONS AND INTERPRETATION**

**Definitions**

**1.1** In this Instrument

**“accredited investor”** means

- (a) a Canadian financial institution, or a Schedule III bank,
- (b) the Business Development Bank of Canada incorporated under the *Business Development Bank of Canada Act* (Canada),
- (c) a subsidiary of any person referred to in paragraphs (a) or (b), if the person owns all of the voting securities of the subsidiary, except the voting securities required by law to be owned by directors of that subsidiary,
- (d) a person registered under the securities legislation of a jurisdiction of Canada as an adviser or dealer, other than a person registered solely as a limited market dealer under one or both of the *Securities Act* (Ontario) or the *Securities Act* (Newfoundland and Labrador),
- (e) an individual registered or formerly registered under the securities legislation of a jurisdiction of Canada as a representative of a person referred to in paragraph (d),
- (f) the Government of Canada or a jurisdiction of Canada, or any crown corporation, agency or wholly owned entity of the Government of Canada or a jurisdiction of Canada,
- (g) a municipality, public board or commission in Canada and a metropolitan community, school board, the Comité de gestion de la taxe scolaire de l'île de Montréal or an intermunicipal management board in Québec,
- (h) any national, federal, state, provincial, territorial or municipal government of or in any foreign jurisdiction, or any agency of that government,
- (i) a pension fund that is regulated by the Office of the Superintendent of Financial Institutions (Canada), a pension commission or similar regulatory authority of a jurisdiction of Canada,
- (j) an individual who, either alone or with a spouse, beneficially owns financial assets having an aggregate realizable value that before taxes, but net of any related liabilities, exceeds \$1 000 000,

- (k) an individual whose net income before taxes exceeded \$200 000 in each of the 2 most recent calendar years or whose net income before taxes combined with that of a spouse exceeded \$300 000 in each of the 2 most recent calendar years and who, in either case, reasonably expects to exceed that net income level in the current calendar year,
- (l) an individual who, either alone or with a spouse, has net assets of at least \$5 000 000,
- (m) a person, other than an individual or investment fund, that has net assets of at least \$5 000 000 as shown on its most recently prepared financial statements,
- (n) an investment fund that distributes or has distributed its securities only to
  - (i) a person that is or was an accredited investor at the time of the distribution,
  - (ii) a person that acquires or acquired securities in the circumstances referred to in sections 2.10 [*Minimum amount investment*], or 2.19 [*Additional investment in investment funds*], or
  - (iii) a person described in paragraph (i) or (ii) that acquires or acquired securities under section 2.18 [*Investment fund reinvestment*],
- (o) an investment fund that distributes or has distributed securities under a prospectus in a jurisdiction of Canada for which the regulator or, in Québec, the securities regulatory authority, has issued a receipt,
- (p) a trust company or trust corporation registered or authorized to carry on business under the *Trust and Loan Companies Act* (Canada) or under comparable legislation in a jurisdiction of Canada or a foreign jurisdiction, acting on behalf of a fully managed account managed by the trust company or trust corporation, as the case may be,
- (q) a person acting on behalf of a fully managed account managed by that person, if that person
  - (i) is registered or authorized to carry on business as an adviser or the equivalent under the securities legislation of a jurisdiction of Canada or a foreign jurisdiction, and
  - (ii) in Ontario, is purchasing a security that is not a security of an investment fund,

- (r) a registered charity under the *Income Tax Act* (Canada) that, in regard to the trade, has obtained advice from an eligibility adviser or an adviser registered under the securities legislation of the jurisdiction of the registered charity to give advice on the securities being traded,
- (s) an entity organized in a foreign jurisdiction that is analogous to any of the entities referred to in paragraphs (a) to (d) or paragraph (i) in form and function,
- (t) a person in respect of which all of the owners of interests, direct, indirect or beneficial, except the voting securities required by law to be owned by directors, are persons that are accredited investors,
- (u) an investment fund that is advised by a person registered as an adviser or a person that is exempt from registration as an adviser, or
- (v) a person that is recognized or designated by the securities regulatory authority or, except in Ontario and Québec, the regulator as an accredited investor;  
(*investisseur qualifié*)

**“AIF”** means

- (a) an AIF as defined in National Instrument 51-102 *Continuous Disclosure Obligations* ,
- (b) a prospectus filed in a jurisdiction, other than a prospectus filed under a CPC instrument, if the issuer has not filed or been required to file an AIF or annual financial statements under National Instrument 51-102 *Continuous Disclosure Obligations*, or
- (c) a QT circular if the issuer has not filed or been required to file annual financial statements under National Instrument 51-102 *Continuous Disclosure Obligations* subsequent to filing a QT circular; (*notice annuelle* )

**“approved credit rating”** has the same meaning as in National Instrument 81-102 *Mutual Funds*; (*note approuvée*)

**“approved credit rating organization”** has the same meaning as in National Instrument 81-102 *Mutual Funds*; (*agence de notation agréée*)

**“bank”** means a bank named in Schedule I or II of the *Bank Act* (Canada); (*banque*)

**“Canadian financial institution”** means

- (a) an association governed by the *Cooperative Credit Associations Act* (Canada) or a central cooperative credit society for which an order has been made under section 473(1) of that Act, or
- (b) a bank, loan corporation, trust company, trust corporation, insurance company, treasury branch, credit union, caisse populaire, financial services cooperative, or league that, in each case, is authorized by an enactment of Canada or a jurisdiction of Canada to carry on business in Canada or a jurisdiction of Canada; (*institution financière canadienne*)

**“CPC instrument”** means a rule, regulation or policy of the TSX Venture Exchange Inc. that applies only to capital pool companies, and, in Quebec, includes Policy Statement 41-601Q, Capital Pool Companies; (*texte relatif aux sociétés de capital de demurrage*)

**“debt security”** means any bond, debenture, note or similar instrument representing indebtedness, whether secured or unsecured; (*titre de créance*)

**“director”** means

- (a) a member of the board of directors of a company or an individual who performs similar functions for a company, and
- (b) with respect to a person that is not a company, an individual who performs functions similar to those of a director of a company; (*administrateur*)

**“eligibility adviser”** means

- (a) a person that is registered as an investment dealer and authorized to give advice with respect to the type of security being distributed, and
- (b) in Saskatchewan or Manitoba, also means a lawyer who is a practicing member in good standing with a law society of a jurisdiction of Canada or a public accountant who is a member in good standing of an institute or association of chartered accountants, certified general accountants or certified management accountants in a jurisdiction of Canada provided that the lawyer or public accountant must not
  - (i) have a professional, business or personal relationship with the issuer, or any of its directors, executive officers, founders, or control persons, and
  - (ii) have acted for or been retained personally or otherwise as an employee, executive officer, director, associate or partner of a person that has acted for or been retained by the issuer or any of its directors, executive officers, founders or control persons within the previous 12 months; (*conseiller en matière d’admissibilité*)

**“eligible investor”** means

- (a) a person whose
  - (i) net assets, alone or with a spouse, in the case of an individual, exceed \$400 000,
  - (ii) net income before taxes exceeded \$75 000 in each of the 2 most recent calendar years and who reasonably expects to exceed that income level in the current calendar year, or
  - (iii) net income before taxes, alone or with a spouse, in the case of an individual, exceeded \$125 000 in each of the 2 most recent calendar years and who reasonably expects to exceed that income level in the current calendar year,
- (b) a person of which a majority of the voting securities are beneficially owned by eligible investors or a majority of the directors are eligible investors,
- (c) a general partnership of which all of the partners are eligible investors,
- (d) a limited partnership of which the majority of the general partners are eligible investors,
- (e) a trust or estate in which all of the beneficiaries or a majority of the trustees or executors are eligible investors,
- (f) an accredited investor,
- (g) a person described in section 2.5 [*Family, friends and business associates*], or
- (h) a person that has obtained advice regarding the suitability of the investment and, if the person is resident in a jurisdiction of Canada, that advice has been obtained from an eligibility adviser; (*investisseur admissible*)

**“executive officer”** means, for an issuer, an individual who is

- (a) a chair, vice-chair or president,
- (b) a vice-president in charge of a principal business unit, division or function including sales, finance or production, or
- (c) performing a policy-making function in respect of the issuer; (*membre de la haute direction*)

**“financial assets”** means

- (a) cash,
- (b) securities, or
- (c) a contract of insurance, a deposit or an evidence of a deposit that is not a security for the purposes of securities legislation; (*actifs financiers*)

**“founder”** means, in respect of an issuer, a person who,

- (a) acting alone, in conjunction, or in concert with one or more persons, directly or indirectly, takes the initiative in founding, organizing or substantially reorganizing the business of the issuer, and
- (b) at the time of the distribution or trade is actively involved in the business of the issuer; (*fondeur*)

**“fully managed account”** means an account of a client for which a person makes the investment decisions if that person has full discretion to trade in securities for the account without requiring the client’s express consent to a transaction; (*compte géré sous mandat discrétionnaire*)

**“investment fund”** has the same meaning as in National Instrument 81-106 *Investment Fund Continuous Disclosure*; (*fonds d’investissement à capital fixe*)

**“marketplace”** has the same meaning as in National Instrument 21-101 *Marketplace Operation*; (*marché*)

**“MD&A”** has the same meaning as in National Instrument 51-102 *Continuous Disclosure Obligations*; (*rapport de gestion*)

**“non-redeemable investment fund”** has the same meaning as in National Instrument 81-106 *Investment Fund Continuous Disclosure*; (*fonds d’investissement à capital fixe*)

**“person”** includes

- (a) an individual,
- (b) a corporation,
- (c) a partnership, trust, fund and an association, syndicate, organization or other organized group of persons, whether incorporated or not, and
- (d) an individual or other person in that person’s capacity as a trustee, executor, administrator or personal or other legal representative; (« *personne* »)

**“QT circular”** means an information circular or filing statement in respect of a qualifying transaction for a capital pool company filed under a CPC instrument; (*circulaire relative à une opération admissible*)

**“qualifying issuer”** means a reporting issuer in a jurisdiction of Canada that

- (a) is a SEDAR filer,
- (b) has filed all documents required to be filed under the securities legislation of that jurisdiction, and
- (c) if not required to file an AIF, has filed in the jurisdiction,
  - (i) an AIF for its most recently completed financial year for which annual statements are required to be filed, and
  - (ii) copies of all material incorporated by reference in the AIF not previously filed; (*émetteur admissible*)

**“related liabilities”** means

- (a) liabilities incurred or assumed for the purpose of financing the acquisition or ownership of financial assets, or
- (b) liabilities that are secured by financial assets; (*dettes correspondantes*)

**“RRIF”** means a registered retirement income fund as defined in the *Income Tax Act* (Canada);

**“RRSP”** means a registered retirement savings plan as defined in the *Income Tax Act* (Canada); (*REER*)

**“Schedule III bank”** means an authorized foreign bank named in Schedule III of the *Bank Act* (Canada); (*banque de l’annexe III*)

**“SEDAR filer”** means an issuer that is an electronic filer under National Instrument 13-101 *System for Electronic Document Analysis and Retrieval (SEDAR)*; (*déposant SEDAR*)

**“self-directed RESP”** means an educational savings plan registered under the *Income Tax Act* (Canada)

- (a) that is structured so that a contribution by a subscriber to the plan is deposited directly into an account in the name of the subscriber, and
- (b) under which the subscriber maintains control and direction over the plan to direct how the assets of the plan are to be held, invested or reinvested subject to compliance with the *Income Tax Act* (Canada). (*REEE autogéré*)

“**spouse**” means, an individual who,

- (a) is married to another individual and is not living separate and apart within the meaning of the *Divorce Act* (Canada), from the other individual,
- (b) is living with another individual in a marriage-like relationship, including a marriage-like relationship between individuals of the same gender, or
- (c) in Alberta, is an individual referred to in paragraph (a) or (b), or is an adult interdependent partner within the meaning of the *Adult Interdependent Relationships Act* (Alberta); (*conjoint*)

“**subsidiary**” means an issuer that is controlled directly or indirectly by another issuer and includes a subsidiary of that subsidiary; (*filiale*)

“**TFSA**” means a tax-free savings account as described in the *Income Tax Act* (Canada). (*CELI*)

### **Interpretation of indirect interest**

**1.2** For the purposes of paragraph 1.1(t), in British Columbia, an indirect interest means an economic interest in the person referred to in that paragraph.

### **Affiliate**

**1.3** For the purpose of this Instrument, an issuer is an affiliate of another issuer if

- (a) one of them is the subsidiary of the other, or
- (b) each of them is controlled by the same person.

### **Control**

**1.4** Except in Part 2, Division 4, for the purpose of this Instrument, a person (first person) is considered to control another person (second person) if

- (a) the first person beneficially owns or directly or indirectly exercises control or direction over securities of the second person carrying votes which, if exercised, would entitle the first person to elect a majority of the directors of the second person, unless that first person holds the voting securities only to secure an obligation,
- (b) the second person is a partnership, other than a limited partnership, and the first person holds more than 50% of the interests of the partnership, or

- (c) the second person is a limited partnership and the general partner of the limited partnership is the first person.

### **Registration requirement**

**1.5 (1)** An exemption in this Instrument from the dealer registration requirement, or from the prospectus requirement, that refers to a registered dealer is only available for a trade in a security if the dealer is registered in a category that permits the trade described in the exemption.

**(2)** In this Instrument, an exemption from the dealer registration requirement is an exemption from the underwriter registration requirement.

### **Definition of distribution - Manitoba**

**1.6** For the purpose of this Instrument, in Manitoba, “**distribution**” means a primary distribution to the public.

### **Definition of trade – Québec**

**1.7** For the purpose of this Instrument, in Québec, "trade" refers to any of the following activities:

- (a) the activities described in the definition of "dealer" in section 5 of the Securities Act (R.S.Q., c. V-1.1), including the following activities:
  - (i) the sale or disposition of a security by onerous title, whether the terms of payment be on margin, installment or otherwise, but does not include a transfer or the giving in guarantee of securities in connection with a debt or the purchase of a security, except as provided in paragraph (b);
  - (ii) participation as a trader in any transaction in a security through the facilities of an exchange or a quotation and trade reporting system;
  - (iii) the receipt by a registrant of an order to buy or sell a security;
- (b) a transfer or the giving in guarantee of securities of an issuer from the holdings of a control person in connection with a debt.

## PART 2: PROSPECTUS EXEMPTIONS

### Division 1: Capital Raising Exemptions

#### Rights offering

**Refer to Appendix E of National Instrument 45-102 *Resale of Securities*. First trades are subject to a seasoning period on resale.**

**2.1** The prospectus requirement does not apply to a distribution by an issuer of a right granted by the issuer to purchase a security of its own issue to a security holder of the issuer if

- (a) the issuer has given the regulator or, in Québec, the securities regulatory authority, prior written notice stating the date, amount, nature and conditions of the distribution, including the approximate net proceeds to be derived by the issuer on the basis of the additional securities being fully taken up,
- (b) the regulator or, in Québec, the securities regulatory authority, has not objected in writing to the distribution within 10 days of receipt of the notice referred to in paragraph (a) or, if the regulator or securities regulatory authority objects to the distribution, the issuer has delivered to the regulator or securities regulatory authority information relating to the securities that is satisfactory to and accepted by the regulator or securities regulatory authority, and
- (c) the issuer has complied with the applicable requirements of National Instrument 45-101 *Rights Offerings*.

#### Reinvestment plan

**Refer to Appendix E of National Instrument 45-102 *Resale of Securities*. First trades are subject to a seasoning period on resale.**

**2.2 (1)** Subject to subsections (3), (4) and (5), the prospectus requirement does not apply to the following distributions by an issuer, or by a trustee, custodian or administrator acting for or on behalf of the issuer, to a security holder of the issuer if the distributions are permitted by a plan of the issuer:

- (a) a distribution of a security of the issuer's own issue if a dividend or distribution out of earnings, surplus, capital or other sources payable in respect of the issuer's securities is applied to the purchase of the security, and
- (b) subject to subsection (2), a distribution of a security of the issuer's own issue if the security holder makes an optional cash payment to purchase the security of the issuer that trades on a marketplace.

(2) Subsection (1) does not apply unless the aggregate number of securities issued under the optional cash payment referred to in subsection (1)(b) does not exceed, in the financial year of the issuer during which the distribution takes place, 2% of the issued and outstanding securities of the class to which the plan relates as at the beginning of the financial year.

(3) A plan that permits a distribution described in subsection (1)(a) or (b) must be available to every security holder in Canada to which the dividend or distribution out of earnings, surplus, capital or other sources is available.

(4) Subsection (1) does not apply to a distribution of a security of an investment fund.

(5) Subject to section 8.3.1, if the security distributed under a plan described in subsection (1) is of a different class or series than the class or series of the security to which the dividend or distribution is attributable, the issuer or the trustee, custodian or administrator must have provided to each participant that is eligible to receive a security under the plan either a description of the material attributes and characteristics of the security distributed under the plan or notice of a source from which the participant can obtain the information without charge.

#### **Accredited investor**

**Refer to Appendix D of National Instrument 45-102 *Resale of Securities*. First trades are subject to a restricted period on resale.**

**2.3 (1)** The prospectus requirement does not apply to a distribution of a security if the purchaser purchases the security as principal and is an accredited investor.

(2) Subject to subsection (3), for the purpose of this section, a trust company or trust corporation described in paragraph (p) of the definition of “accredited investor” in section 1.1 [*Definitions*] is deemed to be purchasing as principal.

(3) Subsection (2) does not apply to a trust company or trust corporation registered under the laws of Prince Edward Island that is not registered or authorized under the *Trust and Loan Companies Act* (Canada) or under comparable legislation in another jurisdiction of Canada.

(4) For the purpose of this section, a person described in paragraph (q) of the definition of “accredited investor” in section 1.1 [*Definitions*] is deemed to be purchasing as principal.

(5) This section does not apply to a distribution of a security to a person if the person was created, or is used, solely to purchase or hold securities as an accredited investor described in paragraph (m) of the definition of “accredited investor” in section 1.1 [*Definitions*].

#### **Private issuer**

**Refer to Appendix E of National Instrument 45-102 *Resale of Securities*. First trades are subject to a seasoning period on resale.**

**2.4 (1)** In this section,

“**private issuer**” means an issuer

- (a) that is not a reporting issuer or an investment fund,
- (b) the securities of which, other than non-convertible debt securities,
  - (i) are subject to restrictions on transfer that are contained in the issuer’s constating documents or security holders’ agreements, and
  - (ii) are beneficially owned by not more than 50 persons, not including employees and former employees of the issuer or its affiliates, provided that each person is counted as one beneficial owner unless the person is created or used solely to purchase or hold securities of the issuer in which case each beneficial owner or each beneficiary of the person, as the case may be, must be counted as a separate beneficial owner, and
- (c) that
  - (i) has distributed its securities only to persons described in subsection (2), or
  - (ii) has completed a transaction and immediately following the completion of the transaction, its securities were beneficially owned only by persons described in subsection (2) and since the completion of the transaction has distributed its securities only to persons described in subsection (2).

**(2)** The prospectus requirement does not apply to a distribution of a security of a private issuer to a person who purchases the security as principal and is

- (a) a director, officer, employee, founder or control person of the issuer,
- (b) a director, officer or employee of an affiliate of the issuer,
- (c) a spouse, parent, grandparent, brother, sister, child or grandchild of a director, executive officer, founder or control person of the issuer,
- (d) a parent, grandparent, brother, sister, child or grandchild of the spouse of a director, executive officer, founder or control person of the issuer,
- (e) a close personal friend of a director, executive officer, founder or control person of the issuer,
- (f) a close business associate of a director, executive officer, founder or control person of the issuer,

- (g) a spouse, parent, grandparent, brother, sister, child or grandchild of the selling security holder or of the selling security holder's spouse,
- (h) a security holder of the issuer,
- (i) an accredited investor,
- (j) a person of which a majority of the voting securities are beneficially owned by, or a majority of the directors are, persons described in paragraphs (a) to (i),
- (k) a trust or estate of which all of the beneficiaries or a majority of the trustees or executors are persons described in paragraphs (a) to (i), or
- (l) a person that is not the public.

(3) Except for a distribution to an accredited investor, no commission or finder's fee may be paid to any director, officer, founder or control person of an issuer in connection with a distribution under subsection (2).

#### **Family, friends and business associates**

**Refer to Appendix D of National Instrument 45-102 *Resale of Securities*. First trades are subject to a restricted period on resale.**

**2.5 (1)** Except in Ontario and subject to section 2.6 [*Family, friends and business associates -- Saskatchewan*], the prospectus requirement does not apply to a distribution of a security to a person who purchases the security as principal and is

- (a) a director, executive officer or control person of the issuer, or of an affiliate of the issuer,
- (b) a spouse, parent, grandparent, brother, sister, child or grandchild of a director, executive officer or control person of the issuer, or of an affiliate of the issuer,
- (c) a parent, grandparent, brother, sister, child or grandchild of the spouse of a director, executive officer or control person of the issuer or of an affiliate of the issuer,
- (d) a close personal friend of a director, executive officer or control person of the issuer, or of an affiliate of the issuer,
- (e) a close business associate of a director, executive officer or control person of the issuer, or of an affiliate of the issuer,

- (f) a founder of the issuer or a spouse, parent, grandparent, brother, sister, child, grandchild, close personal friend or close business associate of a founder of the issuer,
- (g) a parent, grandparent, brother, sister, child or grandchild of a spouse of a founder of the issuer,
- (h) a person of which a majority of the voting securities are beneficially owned by, or a majority of the directors are, persons described in paragraphs (a) to (g), or
- (i) a trust or estate of which all of the beneficiaries or a majority of the trustees or executors are persons described in paragraphs (a) to (g).

(2) No commission or finder's fee may be paid to any director, officer, founder, or control person of an issuer or an affiliate of the issuer in connection with a distribution under subsection (1).

### **Family, friends and business associates - Saskatchewan**

**2.6 (1)** In Saskatchewan, section 2.5 [*Family, friends and business associates*] does not apply unless the person making the distribution obtains a signed risk acknowledgement from the purchaser in the required form for a distribution to

- (a) a person described in section 2.5(1) (d) or (e) [*Family, friends and business associates*],
- (b) a close personal friend or close business associate of a founder of the issuer, or
- (c) a person described in section 2.5(1)(h) or (i) [*Family, friends and business associates*] if the distribution is based in whole or in part on a close personal friendship or close business association.

(2) The person making the distribution must retain the required form referred to in subsection (1) for 8 years after the distribution.

### **Founder, control person and family - Ontario**

**Refer to Appendix D of National Instrument 45-102 *Resale of Securities*. First trades are subject to a restricted period on resale.**

**2.7** In Ontario, the prospectus requirement does not apply to a distribution to a person who purchases the security as principal and is

- (a) a founder of the issuer,
- (b) an affiliate of a founder of the issuer,

- (c) a spouse, parent, brother, sister, grandparent, grandchild or child of an executive officer, director or founder of the issuer, or
- (d) a person that is a control person of the issuer.

### **Affiliates**

**Refer to Appendix D of National Instrument 45-102 *Resale of Securities*. First trades are subject to a restricted period on resale.**

**2.8** The prospectus requirement does not apply to a distribution by an issuer of a security of its own issue to an affiliate of the issuer that is purchasing as principal.

### **Offering memorandum**

**Refer to Appendix D of National Instrument 45-102 *Resale of Securities*. First trades are subject to a restricted period on resale.**

**2.9 (1)** In British Columbia, New Brunswick, Nova Scotia and Newfoundland and Labrador, the prospectus requirement does not apply to a distribution by an issuer of a security of its own issue to a purchaser if

- (a) the purchaser purchases the security as principal, and
- (b) at the same time or before the purchaser signs the agreement to purchase the security, the issuer
  - (i) delivers an offering memorandum to the purchaser in compliance with subsections (5) to (13), and
  - (ii) obtains a signed risk acknowledgement from the purchaser in compliance with subsection (15).

**(2)** In Alberta, Manitoba, Northwest Territories, Nunavut, Prince Edward Island, Québec, Saskatchewan and Yukon, the prospectus requirement does not apply to a distribution by an issuer of a security of its own issue to a purchaser if

- (a) the purchaser purchases the security as principal,
- (b) the purchaser is an eligible investor or the acquisition cost to the purchaser does not exceed \$10 000,
- (c) at the same time or before the purchaser signs the agreement to purchase the security, the issuer

- (i) delivers an offering memorandum to the purchaser in compliance with subsections (5) to (13), and
  - (ii) obtains a signed risk acknowledgement from the purchaser in compliance with subsection (15), and
- (d) if the issuer is an investment fund, the investment fund is
- (i) a non-redeemable investment fund, or
  - (ii) a mutual fund that is a reporting issuer.

**(3)** In Alberta, Manitoba, Northwest Territories, Nunavut, Prince Edward Island, Québec, Saskatchewan and Yukon, this section does not apply to a distribution of a security to a person described in paragraph (a) of the definition of "eligible investor" in section 1.1 [Definitions] if that person was created, or is used, solely to purchase or hold securities in reliance on the exemption from the prospectus requirement set out in subsection (2).

**(4)** No commission or finder's fee may be paid to any person, other than a registered dealer, in connection with a distribution to a purchaser in the Northwest Territories, Nunavut, Saskatchewan and Yukon under subsection (2).

**(5)** An offering memorandum delivered under this section must be in the required form.

**(6)** If the securities legislation where the purchaser is resident does not provide a comparable right, an offering memorandum delivered under this section must provide the purchaser with a contractual right to cancel the agreement to purchase the security by delivering a notice to the issuer not later than midnight on the 2<sup>nd</sup> business day after the purchaser signs the agreement to purchase the security.

**(7)** If the securities legislation where the purchaser is resident does not provide statutory rights of action in the event of a misrepresentation in an offering memorandum delivered under this section, the offering memorandum must contain a contractual right of action against the issuer for rescission or damages that

- (a) is available to the purchaser if the offering memorandum, or any information or documents incorporated or deemed to be incorporated by reference into the offering memorandum, contains a misrepresentation, without regard to whether the purchaser relied on the misrepresentation,
- (b) is enforceable by the purchaser delivering a notice to the issuer
  - (i) in the case of an action for rescission, within 180 days after the purchaser signs the agreement to purchase the security, or
  - (ii) in the case of an action for damages, before the earlier of

- A) 180 days after the purchaser first has knowledge of the facts giving rise to the cause of action, or
  - B) 3 years after the date the purchaser signs the agreement to purchase the security,
- (c) is subject to the defence that the purchaser had knowledge of the misrepresentation,
- (d) in the case of an action for damages, provides that the amount recoverable
- (i) must not exceed the price at which the security was offered, and
  - (ii) does not include all or any part of the damages that the issuer proves does not represent the depreciation in value of the security resulting from the misrepresentation, and
- (e) is in addition to, and does not detract from, any other right of the purchaser.

**(8)** An offering memorandum delivered under this section must contain a certificate that states the following:

“This offering memorandum does not contain a misrepresentation.”

**(9)** If the issuer is a company, a certificate under subsection (8) must be signed

- (a) by the issuer’s chief executive officer and chief financial officer or, if the issuer does not have a chief executive officer or chief financial officer, an individual acting in that capacity,
- (b) on behalf of the directors of the issuer, by
  - (i) any 2 directors who are authorized to sign, other than the persons referred to in paragraph (a), or
  - (ii) all the directors of the issuer, and
- (c) by each promoter of the issuer.

**(10)** If the issuer is a trust, a certificate under subsection (8) must be signed by

- (a) the individuals who perform functions for the issuer similar to those performed by the chief executive officer and the chief financial officer of a company, and
- (b) each trustee and the manager of the issuer.

**(10.1)** If a trustee or the manager that is signing the certificate of the issuer is

- (a) an individual, the individual must sign the certificate,
- (b) a company, the certificate must be signed
  - (i) by the chief executive officer and the chief financial officer of the trustee or the manager, and
  - (ii) on behalf of the board of directors of the trustee or the manager, by
    - (A) any two directors of the trustee or the manager, other than the persons referred to in subparagraph (i), or
    - (B) all of the directors of the trustee or the manager,
- (c) a limited partnership, the certificate must be signed by each general partner of the limited partnership as described in subsection (11.1) in relation to an issuer that is a limited partnership, or
- (d) not referred to in paragraphs (a), (b) or (c), the certificate may be signed by any person or company with authority to act on behalf of the trustee or the manager.

**(10.2)** Despite subsections (10) and (10.1), if the issuer is an investment fund and the declaration of trust, trust indenture or trust agreement establishing the investment fund delegates the authority to do so, or otherwise authorizes an individual or company to do so, the certificate may be signed by the individual or company to whom the authority is delegated or that is authorized to sign the certificate.

**(10.3)** Despite subsections (10) and (10.1), if the trustees of an issuer, other than an investment fund, do not perform functions for the issuer similar to those performed by the directors of a company, the trustees are not required to sign the certificate of the issuer if at least two individuals who perform functions for the issuer similar to those performed by the directors of a company sign the certificate.

**(11)** If the issuer is a limited partnership, a certificate under subsection (8) must be signed by

- (a) each individual who performs a function for the issuer similar to any of those performed by the chief executive officer or the chief financial officer of a company, and
- (b) each general partner of the issuer.

**(11.1)** If a general partner of the issuer is

- (a) an individual, the individual must sign the certificate,
- (b) a company, the certificate must be signed
  - (i) by the chief executive officer and the chief financial officer of the general partner, and
  - (ii) on behalf of the board of directors of the general partner, by
    - (A) any two directors of the general partner, other than the persons referred to in subparagraph (i), or
    - (B) all of the directors of the general partner,
- (c) a limited partnership, the certificate must be signed by each general partner of the limited partnership and, for greater certainty, this subsection applies to each general partner required to sign,
- (d) a trust, the certificate must be signed by the trustees of the general partner as described in subsection 10 in relation to an issuer that is a trust, or
- (e) not referred to in paragraphs (a) to (d), the certificate may be signed by any person or company with authority to act on behalf of the general partner.

**(12)** If an issuer is not a company, trust or limited partnership, a certificate under subsection (8) must be signed by the persons that, in relation to the issuer, are in a similar position or perform a similar function to any of the persons referred to in subsections (9), (10), (10.1), (10.2), (10.3), (11) and (11.1).

**(13)** A certificate under subsection (8) must be true

- (a) at the date the certificate is signed, and
- (b) at the date the offering memorandum is delivered to the purchaser.

**(14)** If a certificate under subsection (8) ceases to be true after it is delivered to the purchaser, the issuer cannot accept an agreement to purchase the security from the purchaser unless

- (a) the purchaser receives an update of the offering memorandum,
- (b) the update of the offering memorandum contains a newly dated certificate signed in compliance with subsection (9), (10), (10.1), (10.2), (10.3), (11) or (11.1) and
- (c) the purchaser re-signs the agreement to purchase the security.

(15) A risk acknowledgement under subsection (1) or (2) must be in the required form and an issuer relying on subsection (1) or (2) must retain the signed risk acknowledgment for 8 years after the distribution.

(16) The issuer must

- (a) hold in trust all consideration received from the purchaser in connection with a distribution of a security under subsection (1) or (2) until midnight on the 2<sup>nd</sup> business day after the purchaser signs the agreement to purchase the security, and
- (b) return all consideration to the purchaser promptly if the purchaser exercises the right to cancel the agreement to purchase the security described under subsection (6).

(17) The issuer must file a copy of an offering memorandum delivered under this section and any update of a previously filed offering memorandum with the securities regulatory authority on or before the 10<sup>th</sup> day after the distribution under the offering memorandum or update of the offering memorandum.

(18) If a qualifying issuer uses a form of offering memorandum that allows the qualifying issuer to incorporate previously filed information into the offering memorandum by reference, the qualifying issuer is exempt from the requirement under National Instrument 43-101 *Standards of Disclosure for Mineral Projects* to file a technical report to support scientific or technical information about the qualifying issuer's mineral project in the offering memorandum or incorporated by reference into the offering memorandum if the information about the mineral project is contained in a previously filed technical report under National Instrument 43-101 *Standards of Disclosure for Mineral Projects*.

### **Minimum amount investment**

<p><b>Refer to Appendix D of National Instrument 45-102 <i>Resale of Securities</i>. First trades are subject to a restricted period on resale.</b></p>
---

**2.10 (1)** The prospectus requirement does not apply to a distribution of a security to a person if

- (a) that person purchases as principal,
- (b) the security has an acquisition cost to the purchaser of not less than \$150 000 paid in cash at the time of the distribution, and
- (c) the distribution is of a security of a single issuer.

(2) Subsection (1) does not apply to a distribution of a security to a person if the person was created, or is used, solely to purchase or hold securities in reliance on this exemption from the prospectus requirement set out in subsection (1).

## Division 2: Transaction Exemptions

### Business combination and reorganization

**Refer to Appendix E of National Instrument 45-102 *Resale of Securities*. First trades are subject to a seasoning period on resale.**

**2.11** The prospectus requirement does not apply to a distribution of a security in connection with

- (a) an amalgamation, merger, reorganization or arrangement that is under a statutory procedure,
- (b) an amalgamation, merger, reorganization or arrangement that
  - (i) is described in an information circular made pursuant to National Instrument 51-102 *Continuous Disclosure Obligations* or in a similar disclosure record and the information circular or similar disclosure record is delivered to each security holder whose approval of the amalgamation, merger, reorganization or arrangement is required before it can proceed, and
  - (ii) is approved by the security holders referred to in subparagraph (i), or
- (c) a dissolution or winding-up of the issuer.

### Asset acquisition

**Refer to Appendix D of National Instrument 45-102 *Resale of Securities*. First trades are subject to a restricted period on resale.**

**2.12** The prospectus requirement does not apply to a distribution by an issuer of a security of its own issue to a person as consideration for the acquisition, directly or indirectly, of the assets of the person, if those assets have a fair value of not less than \$150 000.

### Petroleum, natural gas and mining properties

**Refer to Appendix D of National Instrument 45-102 *Resale of Securities*. First trades are subject to a restricted period on resale.**

**2.13** The prospectus requirement does not apply to a distribution by an issuer of a security of its own issue as consideration for the acquisition, directly or indirectly, of petroleum, natural gas or mining properties or any interest in them.

## Securities for debt

**Refer to Appendix D of National Instrument 45-102 *Resale of Securities*. First trades are subject to a restricted period on resale.**

**2.14** The prospectus requirement does not apply to a distribution by a reporting issuer of a security of its own issue to a creditor to settle a bona fide debt of that reporting issuer.

## Issuer acquisition or redemption

**This provision is not cited in any Appendix of National Instrument 45-102 *Resale of Securities*.**

**2.15** The prospectus requirement does not apply to a distribution of a security to the issuer of the security.

## Take-over bid and issuer bid

**Refer to section 2.11 or Appendix E of National Instrument 45-102 *Resale of Securities*. First trades are subject to a seasoning period on resale unless the requirements of section 2.11 of National Instrument 45-102 are met.**

**2.16** The prospectus requirement does not apply to a distribution of a security in connection with a take-over bid in a jurisdiction of Canada or an issuer bid in a jurisdiction of Canada.

## Offer to acquire to security holder outside local jurisdiction

**Refer to Appendix E of National Instrument 45-102 *Resale of Securities*. First trades are subject to a seasoning period on resale.**

**2.17** The prospectus requirement does not apply to a distribution by a security holder outside the local jurisdiction to a person in the local jurisdiction if the distribution would have been in connection with a take-over bid or issuer bid made by that person were it not for the fact that the security holder is outside of the local jurisdiction.

## Division 3: Investment Fund Exemptions

### Investment fund reinvestment

**Refer to Appendix E of National Instrument 45-102 *Resale of Securities*. First trades are subject to a seasoning period on resale.**

**2.18 (1)** Subject to subsections (3), (4), (5) and (6), the prospectus requirement does not apply to the following distributions by an investment fund, and the investment fund manager of the fund, to a security holder of the investment fund if the distributions are permitted by a plan of the investment fund:

- (a) a distribution of a security of the investment fund's own issue if a dividend or distribution out of earnings, surplus, capital or other sources payable in respect of the investment fund's securities is applied to the purchase of the security that is of the same class or series as the securities to which the dividend or distribution out of earnings, surplus, capital or other sources is attributable, and
- (b) subject to subsection (2), a distribution of a security of the investment fund's own issue if the security holder makes an optional cash payment to purchase the security of the investment fund that is of the same class or series of securities described in paragraph (a) that trade on a marketplace.

(2) The aggregate number of securities issued under the optional cash payment referred to in subsection (1) (b) must not exceed, in any financial year of the investment fund during which the distribution takes place, 2% of the issued and outstanding securities of the class to which the plan relates as at the beginning of the financial year.

(3) A plan that permits the distributions described in subsection (1) must be available to every security holder in Canada to which the dividend or distribution out of earnings, surplus, capital or other sources is available.

(4) A person must not charge a fee for a distribution described in subsection (1).

(5) An investment fund that is a reporting issuer and in continuous distribution must set out in its current prospectus:

- (a) details of any deferred or contingent sales charge or redemption fee that is payable at the time of the redemption of the security,
- (b) any right that the security holder has to make an election to receive cash instead of securities on the payment of a dividend or making of a distribution by the investment fund, and
- (c) instructions on how the right referred to in paragraph (b) can be exercised.

(6) An investment fund that is a reporting issuer and is not in continuous distribution must provide the information required by subsection (5) in its prospectus, annual information form or a material change report.

#### **Additional investment in investment funds**

**Refer to Appendix D of National Instrument 45-102 *Resale of Securities*. First trades are subject to a restricted period on resale.**

**2.19** The prospectus requirement does not apply to a distribution by an investment fund, or the investment fund manager of the fund, of a security of the investment fund's own issue to a security holder of the investment fund if

- (a) the security holder initially acquired securities of the investment fund as principal for an acquisition cost of not less than \$150 000 paid in cash at the time of the distribution,
- (b) the distribution is of a security of the same class or series as the securities initially acquired, as described in paragraph (a), and
- (c) the security holder, as at the date of the distribution, holds securities of the investment fund that have
  - (i) an acquisition cost of not less than \$150 000, or
  - (ii) a net asset value of not less than \$150 000.

**Private investment club**

**Refer to Appendix E of National Instrument 45-102 *Resale of Securities*. First trades are subject to a seasoning period on resale.**

**2.20** The prospectus requirement does not apply to a distribution of a security of an investment fund if the investment fund

- (a) has no more than 50 beneficial security holders,
- (b) does not seek and has never sought to borrow money from the public,
- (c) does not and has never distributed its securities to the public,
- (d) does not pay or give any remuneration for investment management or administration advice in respect of trades in securities, except normal brokerage fees, and
- (e) for the purpose of financing the operations of the investment fund, requires security holders to make contributions in proportion to the value of the securities held by them.

**Private investment fund - loan and trust pools**

**Refer to Appendix E of National Instrument 45-102 *Resale of Securities*. First trades are subject to a seasoning period on resale.**

**2.21 (1)** Subject to subsection (2), the prospectus requirement does not apply to a distribution of a security of an investment fund if the investment fund

- (a) is administered by a trust company or trust corporation that is registered or authorized by an enactment of Canada or a jurisdiction of Canada to carry on business in Canada or a jurisdiction of Canada,
- (b) has no promoter or investment fund manager other than the trust company or trust corporation referred to in paragraph (a), and
- (c) co-mingles the money of different estates and trusts for the purpose of facilitating investment.

(2) A trust company or trust corporation registered under the laws of Prince Edward Island that is not registered under the *Trust and Loan Companies Act* (Canada) or under comparable legislation in another jurisdiction of Canada is not a trust company or trust corporation for the purpose of subparagraph (1)(a).

#### **Division 4: Employee, Executive Officer, Director and Consultant Exemptions**

##### **Definitions**

**2.22** In this Division and in Division 4 of Part 3 of this Instrument

“**associate**”, when used to indicate a relationship with a person, means

- (a) an issuer of which the person beneficially owns or controls, directly or indirectly, voting securities entitling the person to more than 10% of the voting rights attached to outstanding voting securities of the issuer,
- (b) any partner of the person,
- (c) any trust or estate in which the person has a substantial beneficial interest or in respect of which the person serves as trustee or executor or in a similar capacity, or
- (d) in the case of an individual, a relative of that individual, including
  - (i) a spouse of that individual, or
  - (ii) a relative of that individual’s spouse

if the relative has the same home as that individual; (*liens*)

**“associated consultant”** means, for an issuer, a consultant of the issuer or of a related entity of the issuer if

- (a) the consultant is an associate of the issuer or of a related entity of the issuer, or
- (b) the issuer or a related entity of the issuer is an associate of the consultant;  
(*consultant lié*)

**“compensation”** means an issuance of securities in exchange for services provided or to be provided and includes an issuance of securities for the purpose of providing an incentive;  
(*rémunération*)

**“consultant”** means, for an issuer, a person, other than an employee, executive officer, or director of the issuer or of a related entity of the issuer, that

- (a) is engaged to provide services to the issuer or a related entity of the issuer, other than services provided in relation to a distribution,
- (b) provides the services under a written contract with the issuer or a related entity of the issuer, and
- (c) spends or will spend a significant amount of time and attention on the affairs and business of the issuer or a related entity of the issuer

and includes

- (d) for an individual consultant, a corporation of which the individual consultant is an employee or shareholder, and a partnership of which the individual consultant is an employee or partner, and
- (e) for a consultant that is not an individual, an employee, executive officer, or director of the consultant, provided that the individual employee, executive officer, or director spends or will spend a significant amount of time and attention on the affairs and business of the issuer or a related entity of the issuer.  
(*consultant*)

**“holding entity”** means a person that is controlled by an individual; (*entité de portefeuille*)

**“investor relations activities”** means activities or communications, by or on behalf of an issuer or a security holder of the issuer, that promote or could reasonably be expected to promote the purchase or sale of securities of the issuer, but does not include

- (a) the dissemination of information or preparation of records in the ordinary course of the business of the issuer
  - (i) to promote the sale of products or services of the issuer, or

- (ii) to raise public awareness of the issuer

that cannot reasonably be considered to promote the purchase or sale of securities of the issuer,

- (b) activities or communications necessary to comply with the requirements of
  - (i) securities legislation of any jurisdiction of Canada,
  - (ii) the securities laws of any foreign jurisdiction governing the issuer, or
  - (iii) any exchange or market on which the issuer's securities trade, or
- (c) activities or communications necessary to follow securities directions of any jurisdiction of Canada; (*activités de relations avec les investisseurs*)

**“investor relations person”** means a person that is a registrant or that provides services that include investor relations activities; (*professionnel des relations avec les investisseurs*)

**“issuer bid requirements”** means the requirements under securities legislation that apply to an issuer bid; (*règles sur les offres publiques de rachat*)

**“listed issuer”** means an issuer, any of the securities of which

- (a) are listed and not suspended, or the equivalent, from trading on
  - (i) TSX Inc.,
  - (ii) TSX Venture Exchange Inc.,
  - (iii) NYSE Amex Equities,
  - (iv) The New York Stock Exchange,
  - (v) the London Stock Exchange, or
- (b) are quoted on the Nasdaq Stock Market; (*émetteur coté*)

**“permitted assign”** means, for a person that is an employee, executive officer, director or consultant of an issuer or of a related entity of the issuer,

- (a) a trustee, custodian, or administrator acting on behalf of, or for the benefit of the person,
- (b) a holding entity of the person,

- (c) a RRSP, RRIF, or TFSA of the person,
- (d) a spouse of the person,
- (e) a trustee, custodian, or administrator acting on behalf of, or for the benefit of the spouse of the person,
- (f) a holding entity of the spouse of the person, or
- (g) a RRSP, RRIF, or TFSA of the spouse of the person; (*cessionnaire admissible*)

**“plan”** means a plan or program established or maintained by an issuer providing for the acquisition of securities of the issuer by persons described in section 2.24(1) [*Employee, executive officer, director and consultant*] as compensation; (*plan*)

**“related entity”** means, for an issuer, a person that controls or is controlled by the issuer or that is controlled by the same person that controls the issuer; (*entité apparentée*)

**“related person”** means, for an issuer,

- (a) a director or executive officer of the issuer or of a related entity of the issuer,
- (b) an associate of a director or executive officer of the issuer or of a related entity of the issuer, or
- (c) a permitted assign of a director or executive officer of the issuer or of a related entity of the issuer; (*personne apparentée*)

**“security holder approval”** means an approval for the issuance of securities of an issuer as compensation or under a plan

- (a) given by a majority of the votes cast at a meeting of security holders of the issuer other than votes attaching to securities beneficially owned by related persons to whom securities may be issued as compensation or under that plan, or
- (b) evidenced by a resolution signed by all the security holders entitled to vote at a meeting, if the issuer is not required to hold a meeting; and (*approbation des porteurs*)

**“support agreement”** includes an agreement to provide assistance in the maintenance or servicing of indebtedness of the borrower and an agreement to provide consideration for the purpose of maintaining or servicing indebtedness of the borrower. (*accord de soutien*)

## **Interpretation**

**2.23 (1)** In this Division, a person (first person) is considered to control another person (second person) if the first person, directly or indirectly, has the power to direct the management and policies of the second person by virtue of

- (a) ownership of or direction over voting securities in the second person,
- (b) a written agreement or indenture,
- (c) being the general partner or controlling the general partner of the second person, or
- (d) being a trustee of the second person.

**(2)** In this Division, participation in a distribution is considered voluntary if

- (a) in the case of an employee or the employee's permitted assign, the employee or the employee's permitted assign is not induced to participate in the distribution by expectation of employment or continued employment of the employee with the issuer or a related entity of the issuer,
- (b) in the case of an executive officer or the executive officer's permitted assign, the executive officer or the executive officer's permitted assign is not induced to participate in the distribution by expectation of appointment, employment, continued appointment or continued employment of the executive officer with the issuer or a related entity of the issuer,
- (c) in the case of a consultant or the consultant's permitted assign, the consultant or the consultant's permitted assign is not induced to participate in the distribution by expectation of engagement of the consultant to provide services or continued engagement of the consultant to provide services to the issuer or a related entity of the issuer, and
- (d) in the case of an employee of a consultant, the individual is not induced by the issuer, a related entity of the issuer, or the consultant to participate in the distribution by expectation of employment or continued employment with the consultant.

#### **Employee, executive officer, director and consultant**

**Refer to Appendix E of National Instrument 45-102 *Resale of Securities*. First trades are subject to a seasoning period on resale.**

**2.24 (1)** Subject to section 2.25 [*Unlisted reporting issuer exception*], the prospectus requirement does not apply to a distribution

- (a) by an issuer in a security of its own issue, or
- (b) by a control person of an issuer of a security of the issuer or of an option to acquire a security of the issuer,

with

- (c) an employee, executive officer, director or consultant of the issuer,
- (d) an employee, executive officer, director or consultant of a related entity of the issuer, or
- (e) a permitted assign of a person referred to in paragraphs (c) or (d)

if participation in the distribution is voluntary.

(2) For the purposes of subsection (1), a person referred to in paragraph (c), (d) or (e) includes a trustee, custodian or administrator acting as agent for that person for the purpose of facilitating a trade.

### **Unlisted reporting issuer exception**

**2.25 (1)** For the purpose of this section, “**unlisted reporting issuer**” means a reporting issuer in a jurisdiction of Canada that is not a listed issuer.

(2) Subject to subsection (3), section 2.24 [*Employee, executive officer, director and consultant*] does not apply to a distribution to an employee or consultant of the unlisted reporting issuer who is an investor relations person of the issuer, an associated consultant of the issuer, an executive officer of the issuer, a director of the issuer, or a permitted assign of those persons if, after the distribution,

- (a) the number of securities, calculated on a fully diluted basis, reserved for issuance under options granted to
  - (i) related persons, exceeds 10% of the outstanding securities of the issuer, or
  - (ii) a related person, exceeds 5% of the outstanding securities of the issuer, or
- (b) the number of securities, calculated on a fully diluted basis, issued within 12 months to
  - (i) related persons, exceeds 10% of the outstanding securities of the issuer, or
  - (ii) a related person and the associates of the related person, exceeds 5% of the outstanding securities of the issuer.

(3) Subsection (2) does not apply to a distribution if the unlisted reporting issuer

- (a) obtains security holder approval, and
- (b) before obtaining security holder approval, provides security holders with the following information in sufficient detail to permit security holders to form a reasoned judgment concerning the matter:
  - (i) the eligibility of employees, executive officers, directors, and consultants to be issued or granted securities as compensation or under a plan;
  - (ii) the maximum number of securities that may be issued, or in the case of options, the number of securities that may be issued on exercise of the options, as compensation or under a plan;
  - (iii) particulars relating to any financial assistance or support agreement to be provided to participants by the issuer or any related entity of the issuer to facilitate the purchase of securities as compensation or under a plan, including whether the assistance or support is to be provided on a full-, part-, or non-recourse basis;
  - (iv) in the case of options, the maximum term and the basis for the determination of the exercise price;
  - (v) particulars relating to the options or other entitlements to be granted as compensation or under a plan, including transferability; and
  - (vi) the number of votes attaching to securities that, to the issuer's knowledge at the time the information is provided, will not be included for the purpose of determining whether security holder approval has been obtained.

**Distributions among current or former employees, executive officers, directors, or consultants of non-reporting issuer**

**Refer to Appendix E of National Instrument 45-102 *Resale of Securities*. First trades are subject to a seasoning period on resale.**

**2.26 (1)** Subject to subsection (2), the prospectus requirement does not apply to a distribution of a security of an issuer by

- (a) a current or former employee, executive officer, director, or consultant of the issuer or related entity of the issuer, or

- (b) a permitted assign of a person referred to in paragraph (a),

to

- (c) an employee, executive officer, director, or consultant of the issuer or a related entity of the issuer, or
- (d) a permitted assign of the employee, executive officer, director, or consultant.

(2) The exemption in subsection (1) is only available if

- (a) participation in the distribution is voluntary,
- (b) the issuer of the security is not a reporting issuer in any jurisdiction of Canada, and
- (c) the price of the security being distributed is established by a generally applicable formula contained in a written agreement among some or all of the security holders of the issuer to which the transferee is or will become a party.

#### **Permitted transferees**

**Refer to Appendix E of National Instrument 45-102 *Resale of Securities*. First trades are subject to a seasoning period on resale.**

**2.27 (1)** Subject to section 2.28, the prospectus requirement does not apply to a distribution of a security of an issuer acquired by a person described in section 2.24(1)[*Employee, executive officer, director and consultant*] under a plan of the issuer if the distribution

- (a) is between
  - (i) a person who is an employee, executive officer, director or consultant of the issuer or a related entity of the issuer, and
  - (ii) the permitted assign of that person,or
- (b) is between permitted assigns of that person.

(2) Subject to section 2.28, the prospectus requirement does not apply to a distribution of a security of an issuer by a trustee, custodian or administrator acting on behalf, or for the benefit, of employees, executive officers, directors or consultants of the issuer or a related entity of the issuer, to

- (a) an employee, executive officer, director or consultant of the issuer or a related entity of the issuer, or
- (b) a permitted assign of a person referred to in paragraph (a),

if the security was acquired from

- (c) an employee, executive officer, director or consultant of the issuer or a related entity of the issuer, or
- (d) the permitted assign of a person referred to in paragraph (c).

**(3)** For the purposes of the exemptions in subsection (1) and paragraphs (2) (c) and (d), all references to employee, executive officer, director, or consultant include a former employee, executive officer, director, or consultant.

#### **Limitation re: permitted transferees**

**2.28** The exemption from the prospectus requirement under subsection 2.27(1) or (2) is only available if the security was acquired

- (a) by a person described in section 2.24(1) [*Employee, executive officer, director, and consultant*] under any exemption that makes the resale of the security subject to section 2.6 of National Instrument 45-102 *Resale of Securities*, or
- (b) in Manitoba, by a person described in section 2.24(1) [*Employee, executive officer, director, and consultant*].

#### **Issuer bid**

**2.29** The issuer bid requirements do not apply to the acquisition by an issuer of a security of its own issue that was acquired by a person described in section 2.24(1) [*Employee, executive officer, director, and consultant*] if

- (a) the purpose of the acquisition by the issuer is to
  - (i) fulfill withholding tax obligations, or
  - (ii) provide payment of the exercise price of a stock option,
- (b) the acquisition by the issuer is made in accordance with the terms of a plan that specifies how the value of the securities acquired by the issuer is determined,
- (c) in the case of securities acquired as payment of the exercise price of a stock option, the date of exercise of the option is chosen by the option holder, and

- (d) the aggregate number of securities acquired by the issuer within a 12 month period under this section does not exceed 5% of the outstanding securities of the class or series at the beginning of the period.

### **Division 5: Miscellaneous Exemptions**

#### **Isolated distribution by issuer**

**Refer to Appendix D of National Instrument 45-102 *Resale of Securities*. First trades are subject to a restricted period.**

**2.30** The prospectus requirement does not apply to a distribution by an issuer of a security of its own issue if the distribution is an isolated distribution and is not made

- (a) in the course of continued and successive transactions of a like nature, and
- (b) by a person whose usual business is trading in securities.

#### **Dividends and distributions**

**Subsection (1) is cited in Appendix E of National Instrument 45-102 *Resale of Securities*. First trades are subject to a seasoning period on resale.**

**Subsection (2) is cited in Appendix D and Appendix E of National Instrument 45-102. Resale restriction is determined by the exemption under which the previously issued security was first acquired.**

**2.31 (1)** The prospectus requirement does not apply to a distribution by an issuer of a security of its own issue to a security holder of the issuer as a dividend or distribution out of earnings, surplus, capital or other sources.

**(2)** The prospectus requirement does not apply to a distribution by an issuer to a security holder of the issuer of a security of a reporting issuer as an in specie dividend or distribution out of earnings or surplus.

#### **Distribution to lender by control person for collateral**

**This provision is not cited in any Appendix of National Instrument 45-102 *Resale of Securities*. Trades by a lender, pledgee, mortgagee or other encumbrancer to realize on a debt are regulated by section 2.8 of National Instrument 45-102.**

**2.32** The prospectus requirement does not apply to a distribution of a security of an issuer to a lender, pledgee, mortgagee or other encumbrancer from the holdings of a control person of the issuer for the purpose of giving collateral for a bona fide debt of the control person.

## Acting as underwriter

**Refer to Appendix F of National Instrument 45-102 *Resale of Securities*. First trades are a distribution**

2.33 The prospectus requirement does not apply to a distribution of a security between a person and a purchaser acting as an underwriter or between or among persons acting as underwriters.

## Specified debt

**This provision is not cited in any Appendix of National Instrument 45-102 *Resale of Securities*. These securities are free trading.**

2.34 (1) In this section, “permitted supranational agency” means

- (a) the African Development Bank, established by the Agreement Establishing the African Development Bank which came into force on September 10, 1964, that Canada became a member of on December 30, 1982;
- (b) the Asian Development Bank, established under a resolution adopted by the United Nations Economic and Social Commission for Asia and the Pacific in 1965;
- (c) the Caribbean Development Bank, established by the Agreement Establishing the Caribbean Development Bank which came into force on January 26, 1970, as amended, that Canada is a founding member of;
- (d) the European Bank for Reconstruction and Development, established by the Agreement Establishing the European Bank for Reconstruction and Development and approved by the *European Bank for Reconstruction and Development Agreement Act* (Canada), that Canada is a founding member of;
- (e) the Inter-American Development Bank, established by the Agreement establishing the Inter-American Development Bank which became effective December 30, 1959, as amended from time to time, that Canada is a member of;
- (f) the International Bank for Reconstruction and Development, established by the Agreement for an International Bank for Reconstruction and Development approved by the *Bretton Woods and Related Agreements Act* (Canada); and
- (g) the International Finance Corporation, established by Articles of Agreement approved by the *Bretton Woods and Related Agreements Act* (Canada).

(2) The prospectus requirement does not apply to a distribution of

- (a) a debt security issued by or guaranteed by the Government of Canada or the government of a jurisdiction of Canada,
- (b) a debt security issued by or guaranteed by a government of a foreign jurisdiction if the debt security has an approved credit rating from an approved credit rating organization,
- (c) a debt security issued by or guaranteed by a municipal corporation in Canada, or secured by or payable out of rates or taxes levied under the law of a jurisdiction of Canada on property in the jurisdiction and collectable by or through the municipality in which the property is situated,
- (d) a debt security issued by or guaranteed by a Canadian financial institution or a Schedule III bank, other than debt securities that are subordinate in right of payment to deposits held by the issuer or guarantor of those debt securities,
- (d.1) in Ontario, a debt security issued by or guaranteed by a loan corporation, trust company, trust corporation, insurance company, treasury branch, credit union, caisse populaire, financial services cooperative, or league that, in each case, is authorized by an enactment of a jurisdiction of Canada other than Ontario to carry on business in a jurisdiction of Canada, other than debt securities that are subordinate in right of payment to deposits held by the issuer or guarantor of those debt securities,
- (e) a debt security issued by the Comité de gestion de la taxe scolaire de l'île de Montréal, or
- (f) a debt security issued by or guaranteed by a permitted supranational agency if the debt securities are payable in the currency of Canada or the United States of America.

(3) Paragraphs (2)(a), (c) and (d) do not apply in Ontario.

**In Ontario, paragraphs 73(1)(a) and (b) of the *Securities Act* (Ontario) provide similar exemptions to the exemptions in paragraphs (2)(a), (c) and (d).**

#### **Short-term debt**

**This provision is not cited in any Appendix of National Instrument 45-102 *Resale of Securities*. These securities are free trading.**

**2.35** The prospectus requirement does not apply to a distribution of a negotiable promissory note or commercial paper maturing not more than one year from the date of issue, if the note or commercial paper distributed

- (a) is not convertible or exchangeable into or accompanied by a right to purchase another security other than a security described in this section, and
- (b) has an approved credit rating from an approved credit rating organization.

### **Mortgages**

**This provision is not cited in any Appendix of National Instrument 45-102 *Resale of Securities*. These securities are free trading.**

**2.36 (1)** In this section, “**syndicated mortgage**” means a mortgage in which 2 or more persons participate, directly or indirectly, as a lender in a debt obligation that is secured by the mortgage.

**(2)** Except in Ontario, and subject to subsection (3), the prospectus requirement does not apply to a distribution of a mortgage on real property in a jurisdiction of Canada by a person who is registered or licensed, or exempted from registration or licensing, under mortgage brokerage or mortgage dealer legislation of that jurisdiction.

**(3)** In Alberta, British Columbia, Manitoba, Québec and Saskatchewan, subsection (2) does not apply to a distribution of a syndicated mortgage.

**In Ontario, paragraph 73(1)(a) of the *Securities Act (Ontario)* provides a similar exemption.**

### **Personal property security legislation**

**This provision is not cited in any Appendix of National Instrument 45-102 *Resale of Securities*. These securities are free trading.**

**2.37** Except in Ontario, the prospectus requirement does not apply to a distribution to a person, other than an individual, in a security evidencing indebtedness secured by or under a security agreement, secured in accordance with personal property security legislation of a jurisdiction of Canada that provides for the granting of security in personal property.

**In Ontario, paragraph 73(1)(a) of the *Securities Act (Ontario)* provides a similar exemption.**

## Not for profit issuer

**This provision is not cited in any Appendix of National Instrument 45-102 *Resale of Securities*.  
These securities are free trading.**

**2.38** The prospectus requirement does not apply to a distribution by an issuer that is organized exclusively for educational, benevolent, fraternal, charitable, religious or recreational purposes and not for profit in a security of its own issue if

- (a) no part of the net earnings benefit any security holder of the issuer, and
- (b) no commission or other remuneration is paid in connection with the sale of the security.

## Variable insurance contract

**This provision is not cited in any Appendix of National Instrument 45-102 *Resale of Securities*.  
These securities are free trading.**

**2.39 (1)** In this section,

- (a) “**contract**” “**group insurance**”, “**insurance company**”, “**life insurance**” and “**policy**” have the respective meanings assigned to them in the legislation for a jurisdiction referenced in Appendix A.
- (b) “**variable insurance contract**” means a contract of life insurance under which the interest of the purchaser is valued for purposes of conversion or surrender by reference to the value of a proportionate interest in a specified portfolio of assets.

**(2)** The prospectus requirement does not apply to a distribution of a variable insurance contract by an insurance company if the variable insurance contract is

- (a) a contract of group insurance,
- (b) a whole life insurance contract providing for the payment at maturity of an amount not less than 75% of the premium paid up to age 75 years for a benefit payable at maturity,
- (c) an arrangement for the investment of policy dividends and policy proceeds in a separate and distinct fund to which contributions are made only from policy dividends and policy proceeds, or
- (d) a variable life annuity.

## RRSP/RRIF/TFSA

**Refer to Appendix D and Appendix E of National Instrument 45-102 *Resale of Securities*. The resale restriction is determined by the exemption under which the security was first acquired.**

**2.40** The prospectus requirement does not apply to a distribution of a security between

- (a) an individual or an associate of the individual, and
- (b) a RRSP, RRIF, or TFSA
  - (i) established for or by the individual, or
  - (ii) under which the individual is a beneficiary.

#### **Schedule III banks and cooperative associations - evidence of deposit**

**This provision is not cited in any Appendix of National Instrument 45-102 *Resale of Securities*. These securities are free trading.**

**2.41** Except in Ontario, the prospectus requirement does not apply to a distribution of an evidence of deposit issued by a Schedule III bank or an association governed by the *Cooperative Credit Associations Act* (Canada).

**In Ontario, clause (e) of the definition of “security” in subsection 1(1) of the *Securities Act* (Ontario) excludes these evidences of deposit from the definition of “security”.**

#### **Conversion, exchange, or exercise**

**Subsection (1)(a) is cited in Appendix D and Appendix E of National Instrument 45-102 *Resale of Securities*. Resale restriction is determined by the exemption under which the previously issued security was first acquired.**

**Subsection (1)(b) is cited in Appendix E of National Instrument 45-102 *Resale of Securities*. First trades are subject to a seasoning period on resale, unless the requirements of section 2.10 of NI 45-102 are met.**

**2.42 (1)** The prospectus requirement does not apply to a distribution by an issuer if

- (a) the issuer distributes a security of its own issue to a security holder of the issuer in accordance with the terms and conditions of a security previously issued by that issuer, or

- (b) subject to subsection (2), the issuer distributes a security of a reporting issuer held by it to a security holder of the issuer in accordance with the terms and conditions of a security previously issued by that issuer.

(2) Subsection (1)(b) does not apply unless

- (a) the issuer has given the regulator or, in Québec, the securities regulatory authority, prior written notice stating the date, amount, nature and conditions of the distribution, and
- (b) the regulator or, in Québec, the securities regulatory authority, has not objected in writing to the distribution within 10 days of receipt of the notice referred to in paragraph (a) or, if the regulator or securities regulatory authority objects to the distribution, the issuer must deliver to the regulator or securities regulatory authority information relating to the securities that is satisfactory to and accepted by the regulator or securities regulatory authority.

### **Self-directed registered educational savings plans**

<p><b>This provision is not cited in any Appendix of National Instrument 45-102 <i>Resale of Securities</i>. These securities are free trading.</b></p>
---

**2.43** The prospectus requirement does not apply to a distribution of a self-directed RESP to a subscriber if

- (a) the distribution is conducted by
  - (i) a dealing representative of a mutual fund dealer who is acting on behalf of the mutual fund dealer,
  - (ii) a Canadian financial institution, or,
  - (iii) in Ontario, a financial intermediary, and
- (b) the self-directed RESP restricts its investments in securities to securities in which the person who distributes the self-directed RESP is permitted to distribute.

## **PART 3: REGISTRATION EXEMPTIONS**

### **Removal of exemptions – market intermediaries**

**3.0 (1)** Subject to subsection (2), in Ontario and Newfoundland and Labrador, the exemptions from the dealer registration requirement under the following sections are not available for a market intermediary except for a trade in a security with a registered dealer that is an affiliate of the market intermediary:

- (a) section 3.1 [*Rights offering*];
- (b) section 3.3 [*Accredited investor*];
- (c) section 3.4 [*Private issuer*];
- (d) section 3.7 [*Founder, control person and family - Ontario*];
- (e) section 3.10 [*Minimum amount investment*];
- (f) section 3.11 [*Business combination and reorganization*];
- (g) section 3.12 [*Asset acquisition*];
- (h) section 3.14 [*Securities for debt*];
- (i) section 3.15 [*Issuer acquisition or redemption*];
- (j) section 3.16 [*Take-over bid and issuer bid*];
- (k) section 3.17 [*Offer to acquire to security holder outside local jurisdiction*];
- (l) section 3.19 [*Additional investment in investment funds*];
- (m) section 3.21 [*Private investment fund - loan and trust pools*];
- (n) section 3.29 [*Isolated trade*];
- (o) section 3.30 [*Isolated trade by issuer*];
- (p) section 3.31 [*Dividends and distributions*];
- (q) section 3.33 [*Acting as underwriter*];
- (r) section 3.34 [*Specified debt*];
- (s) section 3.35 [*Short-term debt*];
- (t) section 3.39 [*Variable insurance contract*];
- (u) section 3.42 [*Conversion, exchange, or exercise*];
- (v) section 3.44 [*Registered dealer*].

(2) Subsection (1) does not apply in respect of a trade in a security by a lawyer or accountant if the trade is incidental to the principal business of that lawyer or accountant.

## **Division 1: Capital Raising Exemptions**

### **Rights offering**

**3.1** The dealer registration requirement does not apply in respect of a trade by an issuer in a right granted by the issuer to purchase a security of its own issue to a security holder of the issuer if

- (a) the issuer has given the regulator or, in Québec, the securities regulatory authority, prior written notice stating the date, amount, nature and conditions of the trade, including the approximate net proceeds to be derived by the issuer on the basis of the additional securities being fully taken up,
- (b) the regulator or, in Québec, the securities regulatory authority, has not objected in writing to the trade within 10 days of receipt of the notice referred to in paragraph (a) or, if the regulator or securities regulatory authority objects to the trade, the issuer has delivered to the regulator or securities regulatory authority information relating to the securities that is satisfactory to and accepted by the regulator or securities regulatory authority, and
- (c) the issuer has complied with the applicable requirements of National Instrument 45-101 *Rights Offerings*.

### **Reinvestment plan**

**3.2 (1)** Subject to subsections (3), (4) and (5), the dealer registration requirement does not apply in respect of the following trades by an issuer, or by a trustee, custodian or administrator acting for or on behalf of the issuer, to a security holder of the issuer if the trades are permitted by a plan of the issuer:

- (a) a trade in a security of the issuer's own issue if a dividend or distribution out of earnings, surplus, capital or other sources payable in respect of the issuer's securities is applied to the purchase of the security, and
- (b) subject to subsection (2), a trade in a security of the issuer's own issue if the security holder makes an optional cash payment to purchase the security of the issuer that trades on a marketplace.

(2) Subsection (1) does not apply unless the aggregate number of securities issued under the optional cash payment referred to in subsection (1)(b) does not exceed, in the financial year of the issuer during which the trade takes place, 2% of the issued and outstanding securities of the class to which the plan relates as at the beginning of the financial year.

(3) A plan that permits the trades described in subsection (1)(a) or (b) must be available to every security holder in Canada to which the dividend or distribution out of earnings, surplus, capital or other sources is available.

(4) Subsection (1) does not apply to a trade in a security of an investment fund.

(5) Subject to section 8.3.1, if the security traded under a plan described in subsection (1) is of a different class or series than the class or series of the security to which the dividend or distribution is attributable, the issuer or the trustee, custodian or administrator must have provided to each participant that is eligible to receive a security under the plan either a description of the material attributes and characteristics of the security traded under the plan or notice of a source from which the participant can obtain the information without charge.

### **Accredited investor**

**3.3 (1)** The dealer registration requirement does not apply in respect of a trade in a security if the purchaser purchases the security as principal and is an accredited investor.

(2) Subject to subsection (3), for the purpose of this section, a trust company or trust corporation described in paragraph (p) of the definition of “accredited investor” in section 1.1 [*Definitions*] is deemed to be purchasing as principal.

(3) Subsection (2) does not apply to a trust company or trust corporation registered under the laws of Prince Edward Island that is not registered or authorized under the *Trust and Loan Companies Act* (Canada) or under comparable legislation in another jurisdiction of Canada.

(4) For the purpose of this section, a person described in paragraph (q) of the definition of “accredited investor” in section 1.1 [*Definitions*] is deemed to be purchasing as principal.

(5) This section does not apply to a trade in a security to a person if the person was created, or is used, solely to purchase or hold securities as an accredited investor as described in paragraph (m) of the definition of “accredited investor” in section 1.1 [*Definitions*].

### **Private issuer**

**3.4 (1)** In this section,

“**private issuer**” means an issuer

- (a) that is not a reporting issuer or an investment fund,
- (b) the securities of which, other than non-convertible debt securities,
  - (i) are subject to restrictions on transfer that are contained in the issuer’s constating documents or security holders’ agreements, and

- (ii) are beneficially owned by not more than 50 persons, not including employees and former employees of the issuer or its affiliates, provided that each person is counted as one beneficial owner unless the person is created or used solely to purchase or hold securities of the issuer in which case each beneficial owner or each beneficiary of the person, as the case may be, must be counted as a separate beneficial owner, and
- (c) that
  - (i) has distributed its securities only to persons described in subsection (2), or
  - (ii) has completed a transaction and immediately following the completion of the transaction, its securities were beneficially owned only by persons described in subsection (2) and since the completion of the transaction has distributed its securities only to persons described in subsection (2).

**(2)** The dealer registration requirement does not apply in respect of a trade in a security of a private issuer to a person who purchases the security as principal and is

- (a) a director, officer, employee, founder or control person of the issuer,
- (b) a director, officer or employee of an affiliate of the issuer,
- (c) a spouse, parent, grandparent, brother, sister, child or grandchild of a director, executive officer, founder or control person of the issuer,
- (d) a parent, grandparent, brother, sister, child or grandchild of the spouse of a director, executive officer, founder or control person of the issuer,
- (e) a close personal friend of a director, executive officer, founder or control person of the issuer,
- (f) a close business associate of a director, executive officer, founder or control person of the issuer,
- (g) a spouse, parent, grandparent, brother, sister, child or grandchild of the selling security holder or of the selling security holder's spouse,
- (h) a security holder of the issuer,
- (i) an accredited investor,
- (j) a person of which a majority of the voting securities are beneficially owned by, or a majority of the directors are, persons described in paragraphs (a) to (i),

- (k) a trust or estate of which all of the beneficiaries or a majority of the trustees or executors are persons described in paragraphs (a) to (i), or
- (l) a person that is not the public.

(3) Except for a trade to an accredited investor, no commission or finder's fee may be paid to any director, officer, founder or control person of an issuer in connection with a trade under subsection (2).

### **Family, friends and business associates**

**3.5 (1)** Except in Ontario and subject to section 3.6 [*Family, friends and business associates - Saskatchewan*], the dealer registration requirement does not apply in respect of a trade in a security to a person who purchases the security as principal and is

- (a) a director, executive officer or control person of the issuer, or of an affiliate of the issuer,
- (b) a spouse, parent, grandparent, brother, sister, child or grandchild of a director, executive officer or control person of the issuer, or of an affiliate of the issuer,
- (c) a parent, grandparent, brother, sister, child or grandchild of the spouse of a director, executive officer or control person of the issuer or of an affiliate of the issuer,
- (d) a close personal friend of a director, executive officer or control person of the issuer, or of an affiliate of the issuer,
- (e) a close business associate of a director, executive officer or control person of the issuer, or of an affiliate of the issuer,
- (f) a founder of the issuer or a spouse, parent, grandparent, brother, sister, child, grandchild, close personal friend or close business associate of a founder of the issuer,
- (g) a parent, grandparent, brother, sister, child or grandchild of a spouse of a founder of the issuer,
- (h) a person of which a majority of the voting securities are beneficially owned by, or a majority of the directors are, persons described in paragraphs (a) to (g), or
- (i) a trust or estate of which all of the beneficiaries or a majority of the trustees or executors are persons described in paragraphs (a) to (g).

(2) No commission or finder's fee may be paid to any director, officer, founder, or control person of an issuer or an affiliate of the issuer in connection with a trade under subsection (1).

### **Family, friends and business associates - Saskatchewan**

**3.6 (1)** In Saskatchewan, section 3.5 [*Family, friends and business associates*] does not apply unless the person making the trade obtains a signed risk acknowledgement from the purchaser in the required form for a trade to

- (a) a person described in section 3.5(1) (d) or (e) [*Family, friends and business associates*],
- (b) a close personal friend or close business associate of a founder of the issuer, or
- (c) a person described in section 3.5(1)(h) or (i) [*Family, friends and business associates*] if the trade is based in whole or in part on a close personal friendship or close business association.

(2) The person making the trade must retain the required form referred to in subsection (1) for 8 years after the trade.

### **Founder, control person and family - Ontario**

**3.7** In Ontario, the dealer registration requirement does not apply in respect of a trade in a security to a person who purchases the security as principal and is

- (a) a founder of the issuer,
- (b) an affiliate of a founder of the issuer,
- (c) a spouse, parent, brother, sister, grandparent, grandchild or child of an executive officer, director or founder of the issuer, or
- (d) a person that is a control person of the issuer.

### **Affiliates**

**3.8** The dealer registration requirement does not apply in respect of a trade by an issuer in a security of its own issue to an affiliate of the issuer that is purchasing as principal.

### **Offering memorandum**

**3.9 (1)** In British Columbia, New Brunswick, Nova Scotia and Newfoundland and Labrador, the dealer registration requirement does not apply in respect of a trade by an issuer in a security of its own issue to a purchaser if

- (a) the purchaser purchases the security as principal, and
- (b) at the same time or before the purchaser signs the agreement to purchase the security, the issuer

- (i) delivers an offering memorandum to the purchaser in compliance with subsections (5) to (13), and
- (ii) obtains a signed risk acknowledgement from the purchaser in compliance with subsection (15).

**(2)** In Alberta, Manitoba, Northwest Territories, Nunavut, Prince Edward Island, Québec, Saskatchewan and Yukon, the dealer registration requirement does not apply in respect of a trade by an issuer in a security of its own issue to a purchaser if

- (a) the purchaser purchases the security as principal,
- (b) the purchaser is an eligible investor or the acquisition cost to the purchaser does not exceed \$10 000,
- (c) at the same time or before the purchaser signs the agreement to purchase the security, the issuer
  - (i) delivers an offering memorandum to the purchaser in compliance with subsections (5) to (13), and
  - (ii) obtains a signed risk acknowledgement from the purchaser in compliance with subsection (15), and
- (d) if the issuer is an investment fund, the investment fund is
  - (i) a non-redeemable investment fund, or
  - (ii) a mutual fund that is a reporting issuer.

**(3)** In Alberta, Manitoba, Northwest Territories, Nunavut, Prince Edward Island, Québec, Saskatchewan and Yukon, this section does not apply to a trade in a security to a person described in paragraph (a) of the definition of “eligible investor” in section 1.1 [*Definitions*] if that person was created, or is used, solely to purchase or hold securities in reliance on an exemption from the dealer registration requirement set out in subsection (2).

**(4)** No commission or finder’s fee may be paid to any person, other than a registered dealer, in connection with a trade to a purchaser in Northwest Territories, Nunavut, Saskatchewan and Yukon under subsection (2).

**(5)** An offering memorandum delivered under this section must be in the required form.

**(6)** If the securities legislation where the purchaser is resident does not provide a comparable right, an offering memorandum delivered under this section must provide the purchaser with a contractual right to cancel the agreement to purchase the security by delivering a notice to the

issuer not later than midnight on the 2<sup>nd</sup> business day after the purchaser signs the agreement to purchase the security.

**(7)** If the securities legislation where the purchaser is resident does not provide statutory rights of action in the event of a misrepresentation in an offering memorandum delivered under this section, the offering memorandum must contain a contractual right of action against the issuer for rescission or damages that

- (a) is available to the purchaser if the offering memorandum, or any information or documents incorporated or deemed to be incorporated by reference into the offering memorandum, contains a misrepresentation, without regard to whether the purchaser relied on the misrepresentation,
- (b) is enforceable by the purchaser delivering a notice to the issuer
  - (i) in the case of an action for rescission, within 180 days after the purchaser signs the agreement to purchase the security, or
  - (ii) in the case of an action for damages, before the earlier of
    - A) 180 days after the purchaser first has knowledge of the facts giving rise to the cause of action, or
    - B) 3 years after the date the purchaser signs the agreement to purchase the security,
- (c) is subject to the defence that the purchaser had knowledge of the misrepresentation,
- (d) in the case of an action for damages, provides that the amount recoverable
  - (i) must not exceed the price at which the security was offered, and
  - (ii) does not include all or any part of the damages that the issuer proves does not represent the depreciation in value of the security resulting from the misrepresentation, and
- (e) is in addition to, and does not detract from, any other right of the purchaser.

**(8)** An offering memorandum delivered under this section must contain a certificate that states the following:

“This offering memorandum does not contain a misrepresentation.”

**(9)** If the issuer is a company, a certificate under subsection (8) must be signed

- (a) by the issuer's chief executive officer and chief financial officer or, if the issuer does not have a chief executive officer or chief financial officer, an individual acting in that capacity,
- (b) on behalf of the directors of the issuer by,
  - (i) any 2 directors who are authorized to sign, other than the persons referred to in paragraph (a), or
  - (ii) all the directors of the issuer and
- (c) by each promoter of the issuer.

**(10)** If the issuer is a trust, a certificate under subsection (8) must be signed by

- (a) the individuals who perform functions for the issuer similar to those performed by the chief executive officer and the chief financial officer of a company, and
- (b) each trustee and the manager of the issuer.

**(10.1)** If a trustee or the manager that is signing the certificate of the issuer is

- (a) an individual, the individual must sign the certificate,
- (b) a company, the certificate must be signed
  - (i) by the chief executive officer and the chief financial officer of the trustee or the manager, and
  - (ii) on behalf of the board of directors of the trustee or the manager, by
    - (A) any two directors of the trustee or the manager, other than the persons referred to in subparagraph (i), or
    - (B) all of the directors of the trustee or the manager,
- (c) a limited partnership, the certificate must be signed by each general partner of the limited partnership as described in subsection (11.1) in relation to an issuer that is a limited partnership, or
- (d) not referred to in paragraphs (a), (b) or (c), the certificate may be signed by any person or company with authority to act on behalf of the trustee or the manager.

**(10.2)** Despite subsections (10) and (10.1), if the issuer is an investment fund and the declaration of trust, trust indenture or trust agreement establishing the investment fund delegates the authority to do so, or otherwise authorizes an individual or company to do so, the certificate may

be signed by the individual or company to whom the authority is delegated or that is authorized to sign the certificate.

**(10.3)** Despite subsections (10) and (10.1), if the trustees of an issuer, other than an investment fund, do not perform functions for the issuer similar to those performed by the directors of a company, the trustees are not required to sign the certificate of the issuer provided that at least two individuals who do perform functions for the issuer similar to those performed by the directors of a company sign the certificate.

**(11)** If the issuer is a limited partnership, a certificate under subsection (8) must be signed by

- (a) each individual who performs a function for the issuer similar to any of those performed by the chief executive officer or the chief financial officer of a company, and
- (b) each general partner of the issuer.

**(11.1)** If a general partner of the issuer is

- (a) an individual, the individual must sign the certificate,
- (b) a company, the certificate must be signed
  - (i) by the chief executive officer and the chief financial officer of the general partner, and
  - (ii) on behalf of the board of directors of the general partner, by
    - (A) any two directors of the general partner, other than the persons referred to in subparagraph (i), or
    - (B) all of the directors of the general partner,
- (c) a limited partnership, the certificate must be signed by each general partner of the limited partnership and, for greater certainty, this subsection applies to each general partner required to sign,
- (d) a trust, the certificate must be signed by the trustees of the general partner as described in subsection 10 in relation to an issuer that is a trust, or
- (e) not referred to in paragraphs (a) to (d), the certificate may be signed by any person or company with authority to act on behalf of the general partner.

**(12)** If an issuer is not a company, trust or limited partnership, a certificate under subsection (8) must be signed by the persons that, in relation to the issuer, are in a similar position or perform a

similar function to any of the persons referred to in subsections (9), (10), (10.1), (10.2), (10.3), (11) and (11.1).

**(13)** A certificate under subsection (8) must be true

- (a) at the date the certificate is signed, and
- (b) at the date the offering memorandum is delivered to the purchaser.

**(14)** If a certificate under subsection (8) ceases to be true after it is delivered to the purchaser, the issuer cannot accept an agreement to purchase the security from the purchaser unless

- (a) the purchaser receives an update of the offering memorandum,
- (b) the update of the offering memorandum contains a newly dated certificate signed in compliance with subsection (9), (10), (10.1), (10.2), (10.3), (11) or (11.1), and
- (c) the purchaser re-signs the agreement to purchase the security.

**(15)** A risk acknowledgement under subsection (1) or (2) must be in the required form and an issuer relying on subsection (1) or (2) must retain the signed risk acknowledgment for 8 years after the trade.

**(16)** The issuer must

- (a) hold in trust all consideration received from the purchaser in connection with a trade in a security under subsection (1) or (2) until midnight on the 2<sup>nd</sup> business day after the purchaser signs the agreement to purchase the security, and
- (b) return all consideration to the purchaser promptly if the purchaser exercises the right to cancel the agreement to purchase the security described under subsection (6).

**(17)** The issuer must file a copy of an offering memorandum delivered under this section and any update of a previously filed offering memorandum with the securities regulatory authority on or before the 10<sup>th</sup> day after the distribution under the offering memorandum or update of the offering memorandum.

**(18)** If a qualifying issuer uses a form of offering memorandum that allows the qualifying issuer to incorporate previously filed information into the offering memorandum by reference, the qualifying issuer is exempt from the requirement under National Instrument 43-101 *Standards of Disclosure for Mineral Projects* to file a technical report to support scientific or technical information about the qualifying issuer's mineral project in the offering memorandum or incorporated by reference into the offering memorandum if the information about the mineral project is contained in a previously filed technical report under National Instrument 43-101 *Standards of Disclosure for Mineral Projects*.

## **Minimum amount investment**

**3.10 (1)** The dealer registration requirement does not apply in respect of a trade in a security to a person if

- (a) that person purchases as principal,
- (b) the security has an acquisition cost to the purchaser of not less than \$150 000 paid in cash at the time of the trade, and
- (c) the trade is in a security of a single issuer.

**(2)** Subsection (1) does not apply to a trade in a security to a person if the person was created, or is used, solely to purchase or hold securities in reliance on this exemption from the dealer registration requirement set out in subsection (1).

## **Division 2: Transaction Exemptions**

### **Business combination and reorganization**

**3.11** The dealer registration requirement does not apply in respect of a trade in a security in connection with

- (a) an amalgamation, merger, reorganization or arrangement that is under a statutory procedure,
- (b) an amalgamation, merger, reorganization or arrangement that
  - (i) is described in an information circular made pursuant to National Instrument 51-102 *Continuous Disclosure Obligations* or in a similar disclosure record and the information circular or similar disclosure record is delivered to each security holder whose approval of the amalgamation, merger, reorganization or arrangement is required before it can proceed, and
  - (ii) is approved by the security holders referred to in subparagraph (i), or
- (c) a dissolution or winding-up of the issuer.

### **Asset acquisition**

**3.12** The dealer registration requirement does not apply in respect of a trade by an issuer in a security of its own issue to a person as consideration for the acquisition, directly or indirectly, of the assets of the person, if those assets have a fair value of not less than \$150 000.

### **Petroleum, natural gas and mining properties**

**3.13** The dealer registration requirement does not apply in respect of a trade by an issuer in a security of its own issue as consideration for the acquisition, directly or indirectly, of petroleum, natural gas or mining properties or any interest in them.

### **Securities for debt**

**3.14** The dealer registration requirement does not apply in respect of a trade by a reporting issuer in a security of its own issue to a creditor to settle a bona fide debt of that reporting issuer.

### **Issuer acquisition or redemption**

**3.15** The dealer registration requirement does not apply in respect of a trade in a security to the issuer of the security.

### **Take-over bid and issuer bid**

**3.16** The dealer registration requirement does not apply in respect of a trade in a security in connection with a take-over bid in a jurisdiction of Canada or an issuer bid in a jurisdiction of Canada.

### **Offer to acquire to security holder outside local jurisdiction**

**3.17** The dealer registration requirement does not apply in respect of a trade by a security holder outside the local jurisdiction to a person in the local jurisdiction if the trade would have been in connection with a take-over bid or issuer bid made by that person were it not for the fact that the security holder is outside of the local jurisdiction.

## **Division 3: Investment Fund Exemptions**

### **Investment fund reinvestment**

**3.18 (1)** Subject to subsections (3), (4), (5) and (6), the dealer registration requirement does not apply in respect of the following trades by an investment fund, and the investment fund manager of the fund, to a security holder of the investment fund if the trades are permitted by a plan of the investment fund:

- (a) a trade in a security of the investment fund's own issue if a dividend or distribution out of earnings, surplus, capital or other sources payable in respect of the investment fund's securities is applied to the purchase of the security that is of the same class or series as the securities to which the dividend or distribution out of earnings, surplus, capital or other sources is attributable, and
- (b) subject to subsection (2), a trade in a security of the investment fund's own issue if the security holder makes an optional cash payment to purchase the security of

the investment fund that is of the same class or series of securities described in paragraph (a) that trade on a marketplace.

(2) The aggregate number of securities issued under the optional cash payment referred to in subsection (1) (b) must not exceed, in any financial year of the investment fund during which the trade takes place, 2% of the issued and outstanding securities of the class to which the plan relates as at the beginning of the financial year.

(3) A plan that permits the trades described in subsection (1) must be available to every security holder in Canada to which the dividend or distribution out of earnings, surplus, capital or other sources is available.

(4) A person must not charge a fee for a trade described in subsection (1).

(5) An investment fund that is a reporting issuer and in continuous distribution must set out in its current prospectus:

- (a) details of any deferred or contingent sales charge or redemption fee that is payable at the time of the redemption of the security,
- (b) any right that the security holder has to make an election to receive cash instead of securities on the payment of a dividend or making of a distribution by the investment fund, and
- (c) instructions on how the right referred to in paragraph (b) can be exercised.

(6) An investment fund that is a reporting issuer and is not in continuous distribution must provide the information required by subsection (5) in its prospectus, annual information form or a material change report.

### **Additional investment in investment funds**

**3.19** The dealer registration requirement does not apply in respect of a trade by an investment fund, or the investment fund manager of the fund, in a security of the investment fund's own issue with a security holder of the investment fund if

- (a) the security holder initially acquired securities of the investment fund as principal for an acquisition cost of not less than \$150 000 paid in cash at the time of the trade ,
- (b) the trade is in respect of a security of the same class or series as the securities initially acquired, as described in paragraph (a), and
- (c) the security holder, as at the date of the trade, holds securities of the investment fund that have

- (i) an acquisition cost of not less than \$150 000, or
- (ii) a net asset value of not less than \$150 000.

### **Private investment club**

**3.20** The dealer registration requirement does not apply in respect of a trade in a security of an investment fund if the investment fund

- (a) has no more than 50 beneficial security holders,
- (b) does not seek and has never sought to borrow money from the public,
- (c) does not and has never distributed its securities to the public,
- (d) does not pay or give any remuneration for investment management or administration advice in respect of trades in securities, except normal brokerage fees, and
- (e) for the purpose of financing the operations of the investment fund, requires security holders to make contributions in proportion to the value of the securities held by them.

### **Private investment fund - loan and trust pools**

**3.21 (1)** Subject to subsection (2), the dealer registration requirement does not apply in respect of a trade in a security of an investment fund if the investment fund

- (a) is administered by a trust company or trust corporation that is registered or authorized by an enactment of Canada or a jurisdiction of Canada to carry on business in Canada or a jurisdiction of Canada,
- (b) has no promoter or investment fund manager other than the trust company or trust corporation referred to in paragraph (a), and
- (c) co-mingles the money of different estates and trusts for the purpose of facilitating investment.

**(2)** A trust company or trust corporation registered under the laws of Prince Edward Island that is not registered under the *Trust and Loan Companies Act* (Canada) or under comparable legislation in another jurisdiction of Canada is not a trust company or trust corporation for the purpose of subparagraph (1)(a).

**(3)** The investment fund manager registration requirement does not apply to a trust company or trust corporation that administers an investment fund referred to in subsection (1).

## **Division 4: Employee, Executive Officer, Director and Consultant Exemptions**

### **Definitions**

**3.22** The definitions in Division 4 of Part 2 of this Instrument have the same meaning in this Division.

### **Interpretation**

**3.23 (1)** In this Division, a person (first person) is considered to control another person (second person) if the first person, directly or indirectly, has the power to direct the management and policies of the second person by virtue of

- (a) ownership of or direction over voting securities in the second person,
- (b) a written agreement or indenture,
- (c) being the general partner or controlling the general partner of the second person, or
- (d) being a trustee of the second person.

**(2)** In this Division, participation in a trade is considered voluntary if

- (a) in the case of an employee or the employee's permitted assign, the employee or the employee's permitted assign is not induced to participate in the trade by expectation of employment or continued employment of the employee with the issuer or a related entity of the issuer,
- (b) in the case of an executive officer or the executive officer's permitted assign, the executive officer or the executive officer's permitted assign is not induced to participate in the trade by expectation of appointment, employment, continued appointment or continued employment of the executive officer with the issuer or a related entity of the issuer,
- (c) in the case of a consultant or the consultant's permitted assign, the consultant or the consultant's permitted assign is not induced to participate in the trade by expectation of engagement of the consultant to provide services or continued engagement of the consultant to provide services to the issuer or a related entity of the issuer, and
- (d) in the case of an employee of a consultant, the individual is not induced by the issuer, a related entity of the issuer, or the consultant to participate in the trade by expectation of employment or continued employment with the consultant.

### **Employee, executive officer, director and consultant**

**3.24 (1)** Subject to section 3.25 [*Unlisted reporting issuer exception*], the dealer registration requirement does not apply in respect of

- (a) a trade by an issuer in a security of its own issue, or
- (b) a trade by a control person of an issuer in a security of the issuer or in an option to acquire a security of the issuer,

with

- (c) an employee, executive officer, director or consultant of the issuer,
- (d) an employee, executive officer, director or consultant of a related entity of the issuer, or
- (e) a permitted assign of a person referred to in paragraphs (c) or (d)

if participation in the trade is voluntary.

**(2)** For the purposes of subsection (1), a person referred to in paragraph (c), (d) or (e) includes a trustee, custodian or administrator acting as agent for that person for the purpose of facilitating a trade.

**(3)** The dealer registration requirement does not apply in respect of an act by a related entity of an issuer in furtherance of a trade referred to in subsection (1).

### **Unlisted reporting issuer exception**

**3.25 (1)** For the purpose of this section, “**unlisted reporting issuer**” means a reporting issuer in a jurisdiction of Canada that is not a listed issuer.

**(2)** Subject to subsection (3), section 3.24 [*Employee, executive officer, director and consultant*] does not apply to a trade to an employee or consultant of the unlisted reporting issuer who is an investor relations person of the issuer, an associated consultant of the issuer, an executive officer of the issuer, a director of the issuer, or a permitted assign of those persons if, after the trade,

- (a) the number of securities, calculated on a fully diluted basis, reserved for issuance under options granted to
  - (i) related persons, exceeds 10% of the outstanding securities of the issuer, or
  - (ii) a related person, exceeds 5% of the outstanding securities of the issuer, or
- (b) the number of securities, calculated on a fully diluted basis, issued within 12 months to

- (i) related persons, exceeds 10% of the outstanding securities of the issuer, or
- (ii) a related person and the associates of the related person, exceeds 5% of the outstanding securities of the issuer.

**(3)** Subsection (2) does not apply to a trade if the unlisted reporting issuer

- (a) obtains security holder approval, and
- (b) before obtaining security holder approval, provides security holders with the following information in sufficient detail to permit security holders to form a reasoned judgment concerning the matter:
  - (i) the eligibility of employees, executive officers, directors, and consultants to be issued or granted securities as compensation or under a plan;
  - (ii) the maximum number of securities that may be issued, or in the case of options, the number of securities that may be issued on exercise of the options, as compensation or under a plan;
  - (iii) particulars relating to any financial assistance or support agreement to be provided to participants by the issuer or any related entity of the issuer to facilitate the purchase of securities as compensation or under a plan, including whether the assistance or support is to be provided on a full-, part-, or non-recourse basis;
  - (iv) in the case of options, the maximum term and the basis for the determination of the exercise price;
  - (v) particulars relating to the options or other entitlements to be granted as compensation or under a plan, including transferability; and
  - (vi) the number of votes attaching to securities that, to the issuer's knowledge at the time the information is provided, will not be included for the purpose of determining whether security holder approval has been obtained.

**Trades among current or former employees, executive officers, directors, or consultants of non-reporting issuer**

**3.26 (1)** Subject to subsection (2), the dealer registration requirement does not apply in respect of a trade in a security of an issuer by

- (a) a current or former employee, executive officer, director, or consultant of the issuer or related entity of the issuer, or

- (b) a permitted assign of a person referred to in paragraph (a),

to

- (c) an employee, executive officer, director, or consultant of the issuer or a related entity of the issuer, or
- (d) a permitted assign of the employee, executive officer, director, or consultant.

(2) The exemption in subsection (1) is only available if

- (a) participation in the trade is voluntary,
- (b) the issuer of the security is not a reporting issuer in any jurisdiction of Canada, and
- (c) the price of the security being traded is established by a generally applicable formula contained in a written agreement among some or all of the security holders of the issuer to which the transferee is or will become a party.

### **Permitted transferees**

**3.27 (1)** The dealer registration requirement does not apply in respect of a trade in a security of an issuer acquired by a person described in section 3.24(1) [*Employee, executive officer, director and consultant*] under a plan of the issuer if the trade

- (a) is between
  - (i) a person who is an employee, executive officer, director or consultant of the issuer or a related entity of the issuer, and
  - (ii) the permitted assign of that person,or
- (b) is between permitted assigns of that person.

(2) The dealer registration requirement does not apply in respect of a trade in a security of an issuer by a trustee, custodian or administrator acting on behalf, or for the benefit, of employees, executive officers, directors or consultants of the issuer or a related entity of the issuer, to

- (a) an employee, executive officer, director or consultant of the issuer or a related entity of the issuer, or
- (b) a permitted assign of a person referred to in paragraph (a),

if the security was acquired from

- (c) an employee, executive officer, director or consultant of the issuer or a related entity of the issuer, or
- (d) the permitted assign of a person referred to in paragraph (c).

**(3)** For the purposes of the exemptions in subsection (1) and paragraphs (2) (c) and (d), all references to employee, executive officer, director, or consultant include a former employee, executive officer, director, or consultant.

### **Resale - non-reporting issuer**

**3.28** The dealer registration requirement does not apply in respect of the resale of a security that was acquired under this Division or by a person described in section 3.24(1) [*Employee, executive officer, director, and consultant*] if the conditions in section 2.14 of National Instrument 45-102 *Resale of Securities* are satisfied.

## **Division 5: Miscellaneous Exemptions**

### **Isolated trade**

**3.29** The dealer registration requirement does not apply in respect of a trade in a security by a person if the trade is an isolated trade and is not made

- (a) by the issuer of the security,
- (b) in the course of continued and successive transactions of a like nature, and
- (c) by a person whose usual business is trading in securities.

### **Isolated trade by issuer**

**3.30** The dealer registration requirement does not apply in respect of a trade by an issuer in a security of its own issue if the trade is an isolated trade and is not made

- (a) in the course of continued and successive transactions of a like nature, and
- (b) by a person whose usual business is trading in securities.

## **Dividends and distributions**

**3.31 (1)** The dealer registration requirement does not apply in respect of a trade by an issuer in a security of its own issue to a security holder of the issuer as a dividend or distribution out of earnings, surplus, capital or other sources.

**(2)** The dealer registration requirement does not apply in respect of a trade by an issuer to a security holder of the issuer in a security of a reporting issuer as an in specie dividend or distribution out of earnings or surplus.

## **Trade to lender by control person for collateral**

**3.32** The dealer registration requirement does not apply in respect of a trade in a security of an issuer to a lender, pledgee, mortgagee or other encumbrancer from the holdings of a control person of the issuer for the purpose of giving collateral for a bona fide debt of the control person.

## **Acting as underwriter**

**3.33** The dealer registration requirement does not apply in respect of a trade in a security between a person and a purchaser acting as an underwriter or between or among persons acting as underwriters.

## **Specified debt**

**3.34 (1)** In this section, “**permitted supranational agency**” means

- (a) the African Development Bank, established by the Agreement Establishing the African Development Bank which came into force on September 10, 1964, that Canada became a member of on December 30, 1982;
- (b) the Asian Development Bank, established under a resolution adopted by the United Nations Economic and Social Commission for Asia and the Pacific in 1965;
- (c) the Caribbean Development Bank, established by the Agreement Establishing the Caribbean Development Bank which came into force on January 26, 1970, as amended, that Canada is a founding member of;
- (d) the European Bank for Reconstruction and Development, established by the Agreement Establishing the European Bank for Reconstruction and Development and approved by the *European Bank for Reconstruction and Development Agreement Act* (Canada), that Canada is a founding member of;
- (e) the Inter-American Development Bank, established by the Agreement establishing the Inter-American Development Bank which became effective December 30, 1959, as amended from time to time, that Canada is a member of;

- (f) the International Bank for Reconstruction and Development, established by the Agreement for an International Bank for Reconstruction and Development approved by the *Bretton Woods and Related Agreements Act* (Canada); and
- (g) the International Finance Corporation, established by Articles of Agreement approved by the *Bretton Woods and Related Agreements Act* (Canada).

(2) The dealer registration requirement does not apply in respect of a trade in

- (a) a debt security issued by or guaranteed by the Government of Canada or the government of a jurisdiction of Canada,
- (b) a debt security issued by or guaranteed by a government of a foreign jurisdiction if the debt security has an approved credit rating from an approved credit rating organization,
- (c) a debt security issued by or guaranteed by a municipal corporation in Canada, or secured by or payable out of rates or taxes levied under the law of a jurisdiction of Canada on property in the jurisdiction and collectable by or through the municipality in which the property is situated,
- (d) a debt security issued by or guaranteed by a Canadian financial institution or a Schedule III bank, other than debt securities that are subordinate in right of payment to deposits held by the issuer or guarantor of those debt securities,
- (e) a debt security issued by the Comité de gestion de la taxe scolaire de l'île de Montréal, or
- (f) a debt security issued by or guaranteed by a permitted supranational agency if the debt securities are payable in the currency of Canada or the United States of America.

(3) Paragraphs (2)(a) and (c) do not apply in Ontario.

**In Ontario, paragraphs 35(1)1 and 35(1)2 of the *Securities Act* (Ontario) provide similar exemptions as the exemptions in paragraphs (2)(a) and (c).**

### Short-term debt

**3.35** The dealer registration requirement does not apply in respect of a trade in a negotiable promissory note or commercial paper maturing not more than one year from the date of issue, if the note or commercial paper traded

- (a) is not convertible or exchangeable into or accompanied by a right to purchase another security other than a security described in this section, and
- (b) has an approved credit rating from an approved credit rating organization.

## **Mortgages**

**3.36 (1)** In this section, “**syndicated mortgage**” means a mortgage in which 2 or more persons participate, directly or indirectly, as a lender in a debt obligation that is secured by the mortgage.

(2) Except in Ontario, and subject to subsection (3), the dealer registration requirement does not apply in respect of a trade in a mortgage on real property in a jurisdiction of Canada by a person who is registered or licensed, or exempted from registration or licensing, under mortgage brokerage or mortgage dealer legislation of that jurisdiction.

(3) In Alberta, British Columbia, Manitoba, Québec and Saskatchewan, subsection (2) does not apply in respect of a trade in a syndicated mortgage.

**In Ontario, subsection 35(4) of the *Securities Act* (Ontario) provides a similar exemption.**

## **Personal property security legislation**

**3.37** Except in Ontario, the dealer registration requirement does not apply in respect of a trade to a person, other than an individual, in a security evidencing indebtedness secured by or under a security agreement, secured in accordance with personal property security legislation of a jurisdiction of Canada that provides for the granting of security in personal property.

**In Ontario, subsection 35(2) of the *Securities Act* (Ontario) provides a similar exemption.**

## **Not for profit issuer**

**3.38** The dealer registration requirement does not apply in respect of a trade by an issuer that is organized exclusively for educational, benevolent, fraternal, charitable, religious or recreational purposes and not for profit in a security of its own issue if

- (a) no part of the net earnings benefit any security holder of the issuer, and
- (b) no commission or other remuneration is paid in connection with the sale of the security.

## **Variable insurance contract**

**3.39 (1)** In this section,

- (a) “**contract**” “**group insurance**”, “**insurance company**”, “**life insurance**” and “**policy**” have the respective meanings assigned to them in the legislation for a jurisdiction referenced in Appendix A.
- (b) “**variable insurance contract**” means a contract of life insurance under which the interest of the purchaser is valued for purposes of conversion or surrender by reference to the value of a proportionate interest in a specified portfolio of assets.

**(2)** The dealer registration requirement does not apply in respect of a trade in a variable insurance contract by an insurance company if the variable insurance contract is

- (a) a contract of group insurance,
- (b) a whole life insurance contract providing for the payment at maturity of an amount not less than 75% of the premium paid up to age 75 years for a benefit payable at maturity,
- (c) an arrangement for the investment of policy dividends and policy proceeds in a separate and distinct fund to which contributions are made only from policy dividends and policy proceeds, or
- (d) a variable life annuity.

## **RRSP/RRIF/TFSA**

**3.40** The dealer registration requirement does not apply in respect of a trade in a security between

- (a) an individual or an associate of the individual, and
- (b) a RRSP, RRIF, or TFSA
  - (i) established for or by the individual, or
  - (ii) under which the individual is a beneficiary.

## **Schedule III banks and cooperative associations - evidence of deposit**

**3.41** Except in Ontario, the dealer registration requirement does not apply in respect of a trade in an evidence of deposit issued by a Schedule III bank or an association governed by the *Cooperative Credit Associations Act* (Canada).

**In Ontario, clause (e) of the definition of “security” in subsection 1(1) of the *Securities Act* (Ontario) excludes these evidences of deposit from the definition of “security”.**

### **Conversion, exchange, or exercise**

**3.42 (1)** The dealer registration requirement does not apply in respect of a trade by an issuer if

- (a) the issuer trades a security of its own issue to a security holder of the issuer in accordance with the terms and conditions of a security previously issued by that issuer, or
- (b) subject to subsection (2), the issuer trades a security of a reporting issuer held by it to a security holder of the issuer in accordance with the terms and conditions of a security previously issued by that issuer.

**(2)** Subsection (1)(b) does not apply unless

- (a) the issuer has given the regulator or, in Québec, the securities regulatory authority, prior written notice stating the date, amount, nature and conditions of the trade, and
- (b) the regulator or, in Québec, the securities regulatory authority, has not objected in writing to the trade within 10 days of receipt of the notice referred to in paragraph (a) or, if the regulator or securities regulatory authority objects to the trade, the issuer must deliver to the regulator or securities regulatory authority information relating to the securities that is satisfactory to and accepted by the regulator or securities regulatory authority.

### **Self-directed registered educational savings plans**

**3.43** The dealer registration requirement does not apply to a trade in a self-directed RESP to a subscriber if

- (a) the trade is made by
  - (i) a dealing representative of a mutual fund dealer who is acting on behalf of the mutual fund dealer,
  - (ii) a Canadian financial institution, or,
  - (iii) in Ontario, a financial intermediary, and
- (b) the self-directed RESP restricts its investments in securities to securities in which the person who trades the self-directed RESP is permitted to trade.

## **Registered dealer**

**3.44** The dealer registration requirement does not apply in respect of a trade by a person acting solely through an agent who is a registered dealer.

## **Exchange contract**

**3.45 (1)** In Alberta, British Columbia, Québec and Saskatchewan, the dealer registration requirement does not apply in respect of the following trades in exchange contracts:

- (a) a trade by a person acting solely through a registered dealer;
- (b) subject to subsection (2) and (3), a trade resulting from an unsolicited order placed with an individual who is not a resident of and does not carry on business in the jurisdiction;
- (c) a trade that may occasionally be transacted by employees of a registered dealer if the employees
  - (i) do not usually trade in exchange contracts, and
  - (ii) have been designated by the regulator or, in Québec, the securities regulatory authority, as “non-trading” employees, either individually or as a class.

**(2)** An individual referred to in subsection (1)(b) must not

- (a) advertise or engage in promotional activity that is directed to persons in the jurisdiction during the 6 months preceding the trade, and
- (b) pay any commission or finder’s fee to any person in the jurisdiction in connection with the trade.

**(3)** Subsection (1)(b) does not apply in Saskatchewan.

## **Estates, bankruptcies, and liquidations**

**3.46** The dealer registration requirement does not apply in respect of a trade by a person acting under the authority of

- (a) a direction, order or judgment of a court,
- (b) a will, or
- (c) any law of a jurisdiction

in the course of enforcing legal obligations or administering the affairs of another person.

### **Employees of registered dealer**

**3.47** The dealer registration requirement does not apply in respect of a trade by an employee of a registered dealer in a security if the employee does not usually trade in securities and has been designated or accepted by the regulator or, in Québec, the securities regulatory authority, as a “non-trading” employee, either individually or as a class.

### **Small security holder selling and purchase arrangements**

**3.48 (1)** For the purposes of this section

“**exchange**” means

- (a) TSX Inc.,
- (b) the TSX Venture Exchange Inc., or
- (c) an exchange that
  - (i) has a policy that is substantially similar to the policy of the TSX Inc., and
  - (ii) is designated by the securities regulatory authority for the purpose of this section;

“**policy**” means

- (a) in the case of the TSX Inc., sections 638 and 639 [*Odd lot selling and purchase arrangements*] of the TSX Company Manual as amended from time to time,
- (b) in the case of the TSX Venture Exchange Inc., Policy 5.7 Small Shareholder Selling and Purchase Arrangements as amended from time to time, or
- (c) in the case of an exchange referred to in paragraph (c) of the definition of “exchange”, the rule, policy or other similar instrument of the exchange on small shareholder selling and purchase arrangements.

**(2)** The dealer registration requirement does not apply in respect of a trade by an issuer or its agent, in securities of the issuer that are listed on an exchange if

- (a) the trade is an act in furtherance of participation by the holders of the securities in an arrangement that is in accordance with the policy of that exchange,

- (b) the issuer and its agent do not provide advice to a security holder about the security holder's participation in the arrangement referred to in paragraph (a), other than a description of the arrangement's operation, procedures for participation in the arrangement, or both,
- (c) the trade is made in accordance with the policy of that exchange, without resort to an exemption from, or variation of, the significant subject matter of the policy, and
- (d) at the time of the trade after giving effect to a purchase under the arrangement, the market value of the maximum number of securities that a security holder is permitted to hold in order to be eligible to participate in the arrangement is not more than \$25 000.

(3) For the purposes of subsection (2)(c), an exemption from, or variation of, the maximum number of securities that a security holder is permitted to hold under a policy in order to be eligible to participate in the arrangement provided for in the policy is not an exemption from, or variation of, the significant subject matter of the policy.

### **Adviser**

**3.49** The adviser registration requirement does not apply to

- (a) the following persons if performance of services as an adviser are incidental to their principal business or occupation:
  - (i) a Canadian financial institution and a Schedule III bank;
  - (ii) the Business Development Bank of Canada continued under the *Business Development Bank of Canada Act* (Canada);
  - (iii) a société d'entraide économique or the Fédération des sociétés d'entraide économique du Québec governed by the Act respecting the sociétés d'entraide économique (Québec);
  - (iv) a lawyer, accountant, engineer or teacher, or, in Québec, a notary, if that individual
    - A) does not recommend securities of an issuer in which that individual has an interest, and
    - B) does not receive remuneration for the performance of services as an adviser separate from remuneration received by that individual for practicing in their professions;

- (v) a registered dealer or any partner, officer or employee of a registered dealer;

or

- (b) a publisher or a writer for a newspaper, news magazine or business or financial journal or periodical, however delivered, that is of general and regular paid circulation, and only available to subscribers for value, or purchasers of it, if the publisher or writer
  - (i) gives advice only through the written publication,
  - (ii) has no interest either directly or indirectly in any of the securities on which that individual gives advice, and
  - (iii) receives no commission or other consideration for giving the advice other than for acting in that person's capacity as a publisher or writer.

### **Investment dealer acting as portfolio manager**

**3.50 (1)** Subject to subsection (2), the adviser registration requirement does not apply to a registered investment dealer who manages the investment portfolios of its clients through discretionary authority granted by the clients if the investment dealer is a member of the Investment Industry Regulatory Organization of Canada and the advising activities are conducted in accordance with the rules of the Investment Industry Regulatory Organization of Canada.

(2) Any partner, director, officer or employee of a registered investment dealer referred to in subsection (1) who manages an investment portfolio for the registered investment dealer must be registered under the securities legislation of the jurisdiction to trade in securities.

## **PART 4: CONTROL BLOCK DISTRIBUTIONS**

### **Control block distributions**

**4.1 (1)** In this Part,

**“control block distribution”** means a trade to which the provisions of securities legislation listed in Appendix B apply.

(2) Terms defined or interpreted in National Instrument 62-103 *The Early Warning System and Related Take-over Bid and Insider Reporting Issues* and used in this Part have the same meaning as is assigned to them in that Instrument.

(3) The prospectus requirement does not apply to a control block distribution by an eligible institutional investor of a reporting issuer's securities if

- (a) the eligible institutional investor
  - (i) has filed the reports required under the early warning requirements or files the reports required under Part 4 of National Instrument 62-103 *The Early Warning System and Related Take-over Bid and Insider Reporting Issues*,
  - (ii) does not have knowledge of any material fact or material change with respect to the reporting issuer that has not been generally disclosed,
  - (iii) does not receive in the ordinary course of its business and investment activities knowledge of any material fact or material change with respect to the reporting issuer that has not been generally disclosed, and
  - (iv) either alone or together with any joint actors, does not possess effective control of the reporting issuer,
- (b) there are no directors or officers of the reporting issuer who were, or could reasonably be seen to have been, selected, nominated or designated by the eligible institutional investor or any joint actor,
- (c) the control block distribution is made in the ordinary course of business or investment activity of the eligible institutional investor,
- (d) securities legislation would not require the securities to be held for a specified period of time if the trade was not a control block distribution,
- (e) no unusual effort is made to prepare the market or to create a demand for the securities, and
- (f) no extraordinary commission or consideration is paid in respect of the control block distribution.

**(4)** An eligible institutional investor that makes a distribution in reliance on subsection (3) must file a letter within 10 days after the distribution that describes the date and size of the distribution, the market on which it was made and the price at which the securities being distributed were sold.

#### **Distributions by a control person after a take-over bid**

**4.2 (1)** Subject to subsection (2), the prospectus requirement does not apply to a distribution in a security from the holdings of a control person acquired under a take-over bid for which a take-over bid circular was issued and filed if

- (a) the issuer whose securities are being acquired under the take-over bid has been a reporting issuer for at least 4 months at the date of the take-over bid,

- (b) the intention to make the distribution is disclosed in the take-over bid circular issued in respect of the take-over bid,
- (c) the distribution is made within the period beginning on the date of the expiry of the bid and ending 20 days after that date,
- (d) a notice of intention to distribute securities in Form 45-102F1 *Notice of Intention to Distribute Securities under Section 2.8 of NI 45-102 Resale of Securities* under National Instrument 45-102 *Resale of Securities* is filed before the distribution,
- (e) an insider report of the distribution in Form 55-102F2 *Insider Report* or Form 55-102F6 *Insider Report*, as applicable, under National Instrument 55-102 *System for Electronic Disclosure by Insiders (SEDI)* is filed within 3 days after the completion of the distribution,
- (f) no unusual effort is made to prepare the market or to create a demand for the security, and
- (g) no extraordinary commission or consideration is paid in respect of the distribution.

(2) A control person referred to in subsection (1) is not required to comply with subsection (1) (b) if

- (a) another person makes a competing take-over bid for securities of the issuer for which the take-over bid circular is issued, and
- (b) the control person sells those securities to that other person for a consideration that is not greater than the consideration offered by that other person under its take-over bid.

## **PART 5: OFFERINGS BY TSX VENTURE EXCHANGE OFFERING DOCUMENT**

### **Application and interpretation**

**5.1 (1)** This Part does not apply in Ontario.

(2) In this Part

**“exchange policy”** means Exchange Policy 4.6 - *Public Offering by Short Form Offering Document* and Exchange Form 4H - *Short Form Offering Document*, of the TSX Venture Exchange as amended from time to time; (*politique de la Bourse*)

**“gross proceeds”** means the gross proceeds that are required to be paid to the issuer for listed securities distributed under a TSX Venture exchange offering document; (*produit brut*)

**“listed security”** means a security of a class listed on the TSX Venture Exchange; (*titre inscrit à la cote*)

**“prior exchange offering”** means a distribution of securities by an issuer under a TSX Venture exchange offering document that was completed during the 12-month period immediately preceding the date of the TSX Venture exchange offering document; (*placement antérieur selon la politique de la Bourse*)

**“subsequently triggered report”** means a material change report that must be filed no later than 10 days after a material change under securities legislation as a result of a material change that occurs after the date the TSX Venture exchange offering document is certified but before a purchaser enters into an agreement of purchase and sale; (*déclaration relative à un changement postérieur*)

**“TSX Venture Exchange”** means the TSX Venture Exchange Inc.; (*Bourse de croissance TSX*)

**“TSX Venture exchange offering document”** means an offering document that complies with the exchange policy; (*document d’offre conforme à la politique de la Bourse de croissance TSX*)

**“warrant”** means a warrant of an issuer distributed under a TSX Venture exchange offering document that entitles the holder to acquire a listed security or a portion of a listed security of the same issuer. (*bon de souscription*)

## **TSX Venture Exchange offering**

**Refer to Appendix D of National Instrument 45-102 *Resale of Securities*. These securities are free trading unless the security is acquired by**

- (i) a purchaser that, at the time the security was acquired, was an insider or promoter of the issuer of the security, an underwriter of the issuer, or a member of the underwriter’s professional group, or**
- (ii) any other purchaser in excess of \$40 000 for the portion of the securities in excess of \$40 000.**

**The first trade by purchasers under (i) and (ii) are subject to a restricted period.**

**5.2** The prospectus requirement does not apply to a distribution by an issuer in a security of its own issue if

- (a) the issuer has filed an AIF in a jurisdiction of Canada,

- (b) the issuer is a SEDAR filer,
- (c) the issuer is a reporting issuer in a jurisdiction of Canada and has filed in a jurisdiction of Canada
  - (i) a TSX Venture exchange offering document,
  - (ii) all documents required to be filed under the securities legislation of that jurisdiction, and
  - (iii) any subsequently triggered report,
- (d) the distribution is of listed securities or units consisting of listed securities and warrants,
- (e) the issuer has filed with the TSX Venture Exchange a TSX Venture exchange offering document in respect of the distribution, that
  - (i) incorporates by reference the following documents of the issuer filed with the securities regulatory authority in any jurisdiction of Canada:
    - A) the AIF,
    - B) the most recent annual financial statements and the MD&A relating to those financial statements,
    - C) all unaudited interim financial statements and the MD&A relating to those financial statements, filed after the date of the AIF but before or on the date of the TSX Venture exchange offering document,
    - D) all material change reports filed after the date of the AIF but before or on the date of the TSX Venture exchange offering document, and
    - E) all documents required under National Instrument 43-101 *Standards of Disclosure for Mineral Projects* and National Instrument 51-101 *Standards of Disclosure for Oil and Gas Activities* filed on or after the date of the AIF but before or on the date of the TSX Venture exchange offering document,
  - (ii) deems any subsequently triggered report required to be delivered to a purchaser under this Part to be incorporated by reference,
  - (iii) grants to purchasers contractual rights of action in the event of a misrepresentation, as required by the exchange policy,

- (iv) grants to purchasers contractual rights of withdrawal, as required by the exchange policy, and
- (v) contains all the certificates required by the exchange policy,
- (f) the distribution is conducted in accordance with the exchange policy,
- (g) the issuer or the underwriter delivers the TSX Venture exchange offering document and any subsequently triggered report to each purchaser
  - (i) before the issuer or the underwriter enters into the written confirmation of purchase and sale resulting from an order or subscription for securities being distributed under the TSX Venture exchange offering document, or
  - (ii) not later than midnight on the 2nd business day after the agreement of purchase and sale is entered into,
- (h) the listed securities issued under the TSX Venture exchange offering document, when added to the listed securities of the same class issued under prior exchange offerings, do not exceed
  - (i) the number of securities of the same class outstanding immediately before the issuer distributes securities of the same class under the TSX Venture exchange offering document, or
  - (ii) the number of securities of the same class outstanding immediately before a prior exchange offering,
- (i) the gross proceeds under the TSX Venture exchange offering document, when added to the gross proceeds from prior exchange offerings do not exceed \$2 million,
- (j) no purchaser acquires more than 20% of the securities distributed under the TSX Venture exchange offering document, and
- (k) no more than 50% of the securities distributed under the TSX Venture exchange offering document are subject to section 2.5 of National Instrument 45-102 *Resale of Securities*.

### **Underwriter obligations**

**5.3** An underwriter that qualifies as a “sponsor” under TSX Venture Exchange Policy 2.2 - *Sponsorship and Sponsorship Requirements* as amended from time to time must sign the TSX Venture exchange offering document and comply with TSX Venture Exchange Appendix 4A - *Due Diligence Report* in connection with the distribution.

## PART 6: REPORTING REQUIREMENTS

### Report of exempt distribution

**6.1 (1)** Subject to subsection (2) and section 6.2 [*When report not required*], issuers that distribute their own securities and underwriters that distribute securities they acquired under section 2.33 must file a report if they make the distribution under one or more of the following exemptions:

- (a) section 2.3 [*Accredited investor*];
- (b) section 2.5 [*Family, friends and business associates*];
- (c) subsection 2.9 (1) or (2) [*Offering memorandum for Alberta, B.C., Manitoba, New Brunswick, Nova Scotia, Newfoundland and Labrador, Northwest Territories, Nunavut, Prince Edward Island, Québec, Saskatchewan and Yukon*];
- (d) section 2.10 [*Minimum amount investment*];
- (e) section 2.12 [*Asset acquisition*];
- (f) section 2.13 [*Petroleum, natural gas and mining properties*];
- (g) section 2.14 [*Securities for debt*];
- (h) section 2.19 [*Additional investment in investment funds*];
- (i) section 2.30 [*Isolated distribution by issuer*];
- (j) section 5.2 [*TSX Venture Exchange offering*].

**(2)** The issuer or underwriter must file the report in the jurisdiction where the distribution takes place no later than 10 days after the distribution.

### When report not required

**6.2 (1)** An issuer is not required to file a report under section 6.1(a) [*Report of exempt distribution*] for a distribution of a debt security of its own issue or, concurrently with the distribution of the debt security, an equity security of its own issue, to a Canadian financial institution or a Schedule III bank.

**(2)** An investment fund is not required to file a report under section 6.1 [*Report of exempt distribution*] for a distribution under section 2.3 [*Accredited investor*], section 2.10 [*Minimum amount*] or section 2.19 [*Additional investment in investment funds*] if the investment fund files the report not later than 30 days after the financial year-end of the investment fund.

### **Required form of report of exempt distribution**

**6.3 (1)** The required form of report under section 6.1 [*Report of exempt distribution*] is Form 45-106F1.

**(2)** Except in Manitoba, an issuer that makes a distribution under an exemption from a prospectus requirement not provided for in this Instrument is exempt from the requirements in securities legislation to file a report of exempt trade or exempt distribution in the required form if the issuer files a report of exempt distribution in accordance with Form 45-106F1.

### **Required form of offering memorandum**

**6.4 (1)** The required form of offering memorandum under section 2.9 or section 3.9 [*Offering memorandum*] is Form 45-106F2.

**(2)** Despite subsection (1), a qualifying issuer may prepare an offering memorandum in accordance with Form 45-106F3.

### **Required form of risk acknowledgement**

**6.5 (1)** The required form of risk acknowledgement under subsection 2.9(12) or subsection 3.9(12) [*Offering memorandum*] is Form 45-106F4.

**(2)** In Saskatchewan, the required form of risk acknowledgement under section 2.6 or section 3.6 [*Family, friends and business associates*] is Form 45-106F5.

## **PART 7: EXEMPTION**

### **Exemption**

**7.1 (1)** Subject to subsection (2), the regulator or the securities regulatory authority may grant an exemption to this Instrument, in whole or in part, subject to such conditions or restrictions as may be imposed in the exemption.

**(2)** In Ontario, only the regulator may grant an exemption and only from Part 6, in whole or in part, subject to such conditions or restrictions as may be imposed in the exemption.

**(3)** Except in Ontario, an exemption referred to in subsection (1) is granted under the statute referred to in Appendix B of National Instrument 14-101 *Definitions* opposite the name of the local jurisdiction.

## **PART 8: TRANSITIONAL, COMING INTO FORCE**

### **Additional investment - investment funds – exemption from prospectus requirement**

**8.1** The prospectus requirement does not apply to a distribution by an investment fund in a security of its own issue to a purchaser that initially acquired the security as principal before this Instrument came into force if

- (a) the security was initially acquired under any of the following provisions:
  - (i) in Alberta, sections 86(e) and 131(1)(d) of the *Securities Act* (Alberta) as they existed prior to their repeal by sections 9(a) and 13 of the *Securities Amendment Act* (Alberta), 2003 SA c.32 and sections 66.2 and 122.2 of the *Alberta Securities Commission Rules (General)*;
  - (ii) in British Columbia, sections 45(2) (5) and (22), and 74(2) (4) and (19) of the *Securities Act* (British Columbia),
  - (iii) in Manitoba, sections 19(3) and 58(1)(a) of the *Securities Act* (Manitoba) and section 90 of the *Securities Regulation MR 491/88R*;
  - (iv) in New Brunswick, section 2.8 of Local Rule 45-501 *Prospectus and Registration Exemptions*;
  - (v) in Newfoundland and Labrador, sections 36(1)(e) and 73(1)(d) of the *Securities Act* (Newfoundland and Labrador);
  - (vi) in Nova Scotia, sections 41(1)(e) and 77(1)(d) of the *Securities Act* (Nova Scotia);
  - (vii) in Northwest Territories, section 3(c) and (z) of Blanket Order No. 1;
  - (viii) in Nunavut, section 3(c) and (z) of Blanket Order No. 1;
  - (ix) in Ontario, sections 35(1)5 and 72(1)(d) of the *Securities Act* (Ontario) and section 2.12 of Ontario Securities Commission Rule 45-501 *Exempt Distributions* that came into force on January 12, 2004;
  - (x) in Prince Edward Island, section 2(3)(d) of the *Securities Act* (Prince Edward Island) and Prince Edward Island Local Rule 45-512 -Exempt Distributions - Exemption for Purchase of Mutual Fund Securities;
  - (xi) in Québec, section 51 and 155.1(2) of the *Securities Act* (Québec);
  - (xii) in Saskatchewan, sections 39(1)(e) and 81(1)(d) of the *The Securities Act, 1988* (Saskatchewan).
- (b) the distribution is of a security of the same class or series as the initial distribution, and

- (c) the security holder, as at the date of the distribution, holds securities of the investment fund that have
  - (i) an acquisition cost of not less than the minimum amount prescribed by securities legislation referred to in paragraph (a) under which the initial distribution was conducted, or
  - (ii) a net asset value of not less than the minimum amount prescribed by securities legislation referred to in paragraph (a) under which the initial distribution was conducted.

### **Additional investment - investment funds – exemption from registration requirement**

**8.1.1 (1)** After March 27, 2010, this section 8.1.1 does not apply in any jurisdiction.

**(2)** The dealer registration requirement does not apply in respect of a trade by an investment fund in a security of its own issue to a purchaser that initially acquired the security as principal before this Instrument came into force if

- (a) the security was initially acquired under any of the following provisions:
  - (i) in Alberta, sections 86(e) and 131(1)(d) of the *Securities Act* (Alberta) as they existed prior to their repeal by sections 9(a) and 13 of the *Securities Amendment Act* (Alberta), 2003 SA c.32 and sections 66.2 and 122.2 of the *Alberta Securities Commission Rules (General)*;
  - (ii) in British Columbia, sections 45(2) (5) and (22), and 74(2) (4) and (19) of the *Securities Act* (British Columbia),
  - (iii) in Manitoba, sections 19(3) and 58(1)(a) of the *Securities Act* (Manitoba) and section 90 of the *Securities Regulation* MR 491/88R;
  - (iv) in New Brunswick, section 2.8 of Local Rule 45-501 *Prospectus and Registration Exemptions*;
  - (v) in Newfoundland and Labrador, sections 36(1)(e) and 73(1)(d) of the *Securities Act* (Newfoundland and Labrador);
  - (vi) in Nova Scotia, sections 41(1)(e) and 77(1)(d) of the *Securities Act* (Nova Scotia);
  - (vii) in Northwest Territories, section 3(c) and (z) of Blanket Order No. 1;
  - (viii) in Nunavut, section 3(c) and (z) of Blanket Order No. 1;

- (ix) in Ontario, sections 35(1)5 and 72(1)(d) of the *Securities Act* (Ontario) and section 2.12 of Ontario Securities Commission Rule 45-501 *Exempt Distributions* that came into force on January 12, 2004;
  - (x) in Prince Edward Island, section 2(3)(d) of the *Securities Act* (Prince Edward Island) and Prince Edward Island Local Rule 45-512 -Exempt Distributions - Exemption for Purchase of Mutual Fund Securities;
  - (xi) in Québec, section 51 and 155.1(2) of the *Securities Act* (Québec);
  - (xii) in Saskatchewan, sections 39(1)(e) and 81(1)(d) of the *The Securities Act, 1988* (Saskatchewan).
- (b) the trade is for a security of the same class or series as the initial trade, and
  - (c) the security holder, as at the date of the trade, holds securities of the investment fund that have
    - (i) an acquisition cost of not less than the minimum amount prescribed by securities legislation referred to in paragraph (a) under which the initial trade was conducted, or
    - (ii) a net asset value of not less than the minimum amount prescribed by securities legislation referred to in paragraph (a) under which the initial trade was conducted.

### **Definition of “accredited investor” - investment fund**

**8.2** An investment fund that distributed its securities to persons pursuant to any of the following provisions is an investment fund under paragraph (n)(ii) of the definition of “accredited investor”:

- (a) in Alberta, sections 86(e) and 131(1)(d) of the *Securities Act* (Alberta) as they existed prior to their repeal by sections 9(a) and 13 of the *Securities Amendment Act* (Alberta), 2003 SA c.32 and sections 66.2 and 122.2 of the *Alberta Securities Commission Rules (General)*;
- (b) in British Columbia, sections 45(2) (5) and (22), and 74(2) (4) and (19) of the *Securities Act* (British Columbia),
- (c) in Manitoba, sections 19(3) and 58(1)(a) of the *Securities Act* (Manitoba) and section 90 of the *Securities Regulation MR 491/88R*;
- (d) in New Brunswick, section 2.8 of Local Rule 45-501 *Prospectus and Registration Exemptions*;

- (e) in Newfoundland and Labrador, sections 36(1)(e) and 73(1)(d) of the *Securities Act* (Newfoundland and Labrador);
- (f) in Nova Scotia, sections 41(1)(e) and 77(1)(d) of the *Securities Act* (Nova Scotia);
- (g) in Northwest Territories, section 3(c) and (z) of Blanket Order No. 2;
- (h) in Nunavut, section 3(c) and (z) of Blanket Order No. 3;
- (i) in Ontario, sections 35(1)5 and 72(1)(d) of the *Securities Act* (Ontario) and section 2.12 of Ontario Securities Commission Rule 45-501 *Exempt Distributions* that came into force on January 12, 2004 ;
- (j) in Prince Edward Island, section 2(3)(d) of the *Securities Act* (Prince Edward Island) and Prince Edward Island Local Rule 45-512 *-Exempt Distributions - Exemption for Purchase of Mutual Fund Securities*;
- (k) in Québec, section 51 and 155.1(2) of the *Securities Act* (Québec);
- (l) in Saskatchewan, sections 39(1)(e) and 81(1)(d) of the *The Securities Act, 1988* (Saskatchewan).

### **Transition - Closely-held issuer – exemption from prospectus requirement**

**8.3 (1)** In this section,

“**2001 OSC Rule 45-501**” means the Ontario Securities Commission Rule 45-501 *Exempt Distributions* that came into force on November 30, 2001; (*Rule 45-501 (2001) de la CVM*)

“**2004 OSC Rule 45-501**” means the Ontario Securities Commission Rule 45-501 *Exempt Distributions* that came into force on January 12, 2004;

“**closely-held issuer**” has the same meaning as in 2004 OSC Rule 45-501; (*émetteur à peu d'actionnaires*)

(2) The prospectus requirement does not apply to a distribution of a security that was previously distributed by a closely-held issuer under section 2.1 of 2001 OSC Rule 45-501, or under section 2.1 of 2004 OSC Rule 45-501, to a person who purchases the security as principal and is

- (a) a director, officer, employee, founder or control person of the issuer,
- (b) a spouse, parent, grandparent, brother, sister or child of a director, executive officer, founder or control person of the issuer,
- (c) a parent, grandparent, brother, sister or child of the spouse of a director, executive officer, founder or control person of the issuer,

- (d) a close personal friend of a director, executive officer, founder or control person of the issuer,
- (e) a close business associate of a director, executive officer, founder or control person of the issuer,
- (f) a spouse, parent, grandparent, brother, sister or child of the selling security holder or of the selling security holder's spouse,
- (g) a security holder of the issuer,
- (h) an accredited investor,
- (i) a person of which a majority of the voting securities are beneficially owned by, or a majority of the directors are, persons described in paragraphs (a) to (h),
- (j) a trust or estate of which all of the beneficiaries or a majority of the trustees or executors are persons described in paragraphs (a) to (h), or
- (k) a person that is not the public.

**Transition - Closely-held issuer – exemption from registration requirement**

**8.3.1 (1)** After March 27, 2010, this section 8.3.1 does not apply in any jurisdiction.

**(2)** In this section,

**“2001 OSC Rule 45-501”** means the Ontario Securities Commission Rule 45-501 *Exempt Distributions* that came into force on November 30, 2001; (*Rule 45-501 (2001) de la CVM*)

**“2004 OSC Rule 45-501”** means the Ontario Securities Commission Rule 45-501 *Exempt Distributions* that came into force on January 12, 2004; (*Rule 45-501 (2004) de la CVM*)

**“closely-held issuer”** has the same meaning as in 2004 OSC Rule 45-501;

**(3)** The dealer registration requirement does not apply in respect of a trade in a security that was previously distributed by a closely-held issuer under section 2.1 of 2001 OSC Rule 45-501 or under section 2.1 of 2004 OSC Rule 45-501 to a person who purchases the security as principal and is

- (a) a director, officer, employee, founder or control person of the issuer,

- (b) a spouse, parent, grandparent, brother, sister or child of a director, executive officer, founder or control person of the issuer,
- (c) a parent, grandparent, brother, sister or child of the spouse of a director, executive officer, founder or control person of the issuer,
- (d) a close personal friend of a director, executive officer, founder or control person of the issuer,
- (e) a close business associate of a director, executive officer, founder or control person of the issuer,
- (f) a spouse, parent, grandparent, brother, sister or child of the selling security holder or of the selling security holder's spouse,
- (g) a security holder of the issuer,
- (h) an accredited investor,
- (i) a person of which a majority of the voting securities are beneficially owned by, or a majority of the directors are, persons described in paragraphs (a) to (h),
- (j) a trust or estate of which all of the beneficiaries or a majority of the trustees or executors are persons described in paragraphs (a) to (h), or
- (k) a person that is not the public.

### **Transition – reinvestment plan**

**8.4** Despite subsection 2.2(5) or 3.2(5), if an issuer's reinvestment plan was established before September 28, 2009, and provides for the distribution of a security that is of a different class or series than the class or series of the security to which the dividend or distribution is attributable, the issuer or the trustee, custodian or administrator of the plan must provide to each person who is already a participant the description of the material attributes and characteristics of the securities traded under the plan or notice of a source from which the participant can obtain the information not later than 140 days after the next financial year end of the issuer ending on or after September 28, 2009.

### **Application of Part 3 of this instrument**

**8.5** On March 27, 2010, Part 3 does not apply in any jurisdiction.

### **Repeal of former instrument**

**8.6** National Instrument 45-106 *Prospectus and Registration Exemptions* which came into force on September 14, 2005 is repealed on September 28, 2009.

**Effective date**

**8.7(1)** Except in Ontario, this Instrument comes into force on September 28, 2009.

**(2)** In Ontario, this Instrument comes into force on the later of the following:

- (a) September 28, 2009;
- (b) the day on which sections 5 and 11, subsection 12(1) and section 13 of Schedule 26 of the *Budget Measures Act, 2009* are proclaimed in force.

**Appendix A**  
to  
**National Instrument 45-106 Prospectus and Registration Exemptions**  
**Variable insurance contract exemption**  
(section 2.39)

**JURISDICTION**

**LEGISLATION REFERENCE**

ALBERTA

“contract of insurance”, “group insurance”, “life insurance”, and “policy” have the respective meanings assigned to them under the *Insurance Act* (Alberta) and the regulations under that Act.

“insurance company” means an insurer as defined in the *Insurance Act* (Alberta) that is licensed under that Act.

BRITISH COLUMBIA

“contract”, “group insurance”, and “policy” have the respective meanings assigned to them under the *Insurance Act* (British Columbia) and the regulations under that Act.

“life insurance” has the respective meaning assigned to it under the *Financial Institutions Act* (British Columbia) and the regulations under that Act.

“insurance company” means an insurance company, or an extraprovincial insurance corporation, authorized to carry on insurance business under the *Financial Institutions Act* (British Columbia).

MANITOBA

“contract of insurance”, “group insurance”, “life insurance”, and “policy” have the respective meanings assigned to them under the *Insurance Act* (Manitoba) and the regulations under that Act.

“insurance company” means an insurer as defined in the *Insurance Act* (Manitoba) that is licensed under that Act.

NEW BRUNSWICK

“contract of insurance”, “group insurance”, “life insurance”, and “policy” have the respective meanings assigned to them under the *Insurance Act* (New Brunswick) and the regulations under that Act.

“insurance company” means an insurer as defined in the *Insurance Act* (New Brunswick) that is licensed under

that Act.

#### NORTHWEST TERRITORIES

“contract”, “group insurance”, “life insurance”, and “policy” have the respective meanings assigned to them under the *Insurance Act* (Northwest Territories).

“insurance company” means an insurer as defined in the *Insurance Act* (Northwest Territories) that is licensed under that Act.

#### NOVA SCOTIA

“contract”, “group insurance”, “life insurance”, and “policy” have the respective meanings assigned to them under the *Insurance Act* (Nova Scotia) and the regulations under that Act.

“insurance company” has the same meaning as in section 3(1)(a) of the *General Securities Rules* (Nova Scotia).

#### ONTARIO

“contract”, “group insurance”, and “policy” have the respective meanings assigned to them in section 1 and 171 of the *Insurance Act* (Ontario).

“life insurance” has the respective meaning assigned to it in Schedule 1 by Order of the Superintendent of Financial Services.

“insurance company” has the same meaning as in section 1(2) of the *General Regulation* (Ont. Reg. 1015).

#### QUÉBEC

“contract of insurance”, “group insurance”, “life insurance”, and “policy” have the respective meanings assigned to them under the Civil Code of Québec.

“insurance company” means an insurer holding a license under the Act respecting insurance (R.S.Q., c. A-32).

#### PRINCE EDWARD ISLAND

“contract”, “group insurance”, “insurer”, “life insurance and “policy” have the respective meanings assigned to them in sections 1 and 174 of the *Insurance Act* (Prince Edward Island).

“insurance company” means an insurance company licensed under the *Insurance Act* (R.S.P.E.I. 1988, Cap. I-4),

SASKATCHEWAN

“contract”, “life insurance” and “policy” have the respective meanings assigned to them in section 2 of *The Saskatchewan Insurance Act* (Saskatchewan).

“group insurance” has the respective meaning assigned to it in section 133 of *The Saskatchewan Insurance Act* (Saskatchewan).

“insurance company” means an issuer licensed under *The Saskatchewan Insurance Act* (Saskatchewan).

YUKON

“contract”, “group”, “life insurance” and “policy” have the respective meanings assigned to them under the *Insurance Act* (Yukon) and the regulations made under that Act.

“insurance company” means an insurer as defined in the *Insurance Act* (Yukon) that is licensed under that Act.

**Appendix B**  
to  
**National Instrument 45-106 Prospectus and Registration Exemptions**

**Control Block Distributions**  
**(PART 4)**

<b>JURISDICTION</b>	<b>SECURITIES LEGISLATION REFERENCE</b>
ALBERTA	Section 1(p)(iii) of the <i>Securities Act</i> (Alberta)
BRITISH COLUMBIA	Paragraph (c) of the definition of “distribution” contained in section 1 of the <i>Securities Act</i> (British Columbia)
MANITOBA	Section 1(b) of the definition of “primary distribution to the public” contained in subsection 1(1) of the <i>Securities Act</i> (Manitoba)
NEW BRUNSWICK	Paragraph (c) of the definition of “distribution” contained in section 1(1) of the <i>Securities Act</i> (New Brunswick)
NEWFOUNDLAND AND LABRADOR	Section 2(1)(1)(iii) of the <i>Securities Act</i> (Newfoundland and Labrador)
NORTHWEST TERRITORIES	Paragraph (c) of the definition of “distribution” in subsection 1(1) of the <i>Securities Act</i> (Northwest Territories)
NOVA SCOTIA	Section 2(1)(1)(iii) of the <i>Securities Act</i> (Nova Scotia)
ONTARIO	Paragraph (c) of the definition of “distribution” contained in subsection 1(1) of the <i>Securities Act</i> (Ontario)
PRINCE EDWARD ISLAND	Section 1(f)(iii) of the <i>Securities Act</i> (Prince Edward Island)
QUÉBEC	Paragraph 9 of the definition of “distribution” contained section 5 of the <i>Securities Act</i> (Québec)
SASKATCHEWAN	Section 2(1)(r)(iii) of <i>The Securities Act, 1988</i> (Saskatchewan)
YUKON	Paragraph (c) of the definition of “distribution” in

subsection 1(1) of the *Securities Act* (Yukon)

**Form 45-106F1**  
***Report of Exempt Distribution***

This is the form required under section 6.1 of National Instrument 45-106 for a report of exempt distribution.

**Issuer/underwriter information**

**Item 1:** State the full name of the issuer of the security distributed and the address and telephone number of its head office. If the issuer of the security distributed is an investment fund, state the name of the fund as the issuer, and provide the full name of the manager of the investment fund and the address and telephone number of the head office of the manager. Include the former name of the issuer if its name has changed since last report. If an underwriter is completing this form, also state the full name of the underwriter and the address and telephone number of the head office of the underwriter.

**Item 2:** State whether the issuer is or is not a reporting issuer and, if reporting, each of the jurisdictions in which it is reporting.

**Item 3:** Indicate the industry of the issuer by checking the appropriate box next to one of the industries listed below.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| <input type="checkbox"/> Bio-tech                       | Mining   |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Financial Services             | <input type="checkbox"/> exploration/development |
| <input type="checkbox"/> investment companies and funds | <input type="checkbox"/> production              |
| <input type="checkbox"/> mortgage investment companies  | <input type="checkbox"/> Oil and gas             |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Forestry                       | <input type="checkbox"/> Real estate             |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Hi-tech                        | <input type="checkbox"/> Utilities               |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Industrial                     | <input type="checkbox"/> Other (describe)        |

---

**Details of distribution**

**Item 4:** Complete Schedule I to this report. Schedule I is designed to assist in completing the remainder of this report.

**Item 5:** State the distribution date. If the report is being filed for securities distributed on more than one distribution date, state all distribution dates.

**Item 6:** For each security distributed:

- (a) describe the type of security,
- (b) state the total number of securities distributed. If the security is convertible or exchangeable, describe the type of underlying security, the terms of exercise or conversion and any expiry date; and
- (c) state the exemption(s) relied on.

**Item 7:** Complete the following table for each Canadian and foreign jurisdiction where purchasers of the securities reside. Do not include in this table, securities issued as payment for commissions or finder's fees disclosed under item 8, below.

Each jurisdiction where purchasers reside	Number of purchasers	Price per security (Canadian \$) <sup>1</sup>	Total dollar value raised from purchasers in the jurisdiction (Canadian \$)
<b>Total number of Purchasers</b>			
<b>Total dollar value of distribution in all jurisdictions (Canadian \$)</b>			

**Note 1:** If securities are issued at different prices list the highest and lowest price the securities were sold for.

### Commissions and finder's fees

**Item 8:** Complete the following table by providing information for each person who has received or will receive compensation in connection with the distribution(s). Compensation includes commissions, discounts or other fees or payments of a similar nature. Do not include payments for services incidental to the distribution, such as clerical, printing, legal or accounting services.

If the securities being issued as compensation are or include convertible securities, such as warrants or options, please add a footnote describing the terms of the convertible securities, including the term and exercise price. Do not include the exercise price of any convertible security in the total dollar value of the compensation unless the securities have been converted.

Full name and address of the person being compensated	Compensation paid or to be paid (cash and/or securities)				
	Cash (Canadian \$)	Securities			Total dollar value of compensation (Canadian \$)
		Number and type of securities issued	Price per security	Exemption relied on and date of distribution	

**Item 9:** If a distribution is made in Ontario, please include the attached “Authorization of Indirect Collection of Personal Information for Distributions in Ontario”. The “Authorization of Indirect Collection of Personal Information for Distributions in Ontario” is only required to be filed with the Ontario Securities Commission.

**Certificate**

On behalf of the [issuer/underwriter], I certify that the statements made in this report are true.

Date: \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_  
Name of [issuer/underwriter] (please print)

\_\_\_\_\_  
Print name, title and telephone number of person signing

\_\_\_\_\_  
Signature

*Instruction*

*The person filing the form must complete the bracketed information by deleting the inappropriate word.*

**Item 10:** State the name, title and telephone number of the person who may be contacted with respect to any questions regarding the contents of this report, if different than the person signing the certificate.

**IT IS AN OFFENCE TO MAKE A MISREPRESENTATION IN THIS REPORT.**

## **Notice - Collection and use of personal information**

The personal information required under this form is collected on behalf of and used by the securities regulatory authorities or, where applicable, the regulators under the authority granted in securities legislation for the purposes of the administration and enforcement of the securities legislation.

If you have any questions about the collection and use of this information, contact the securities regulatory authority or, where applicable, the regulator in the jurisdiction(s) where the form is filed, at the address(es) listed at the end of this report.

## **Authorization of Indirect Collection of Personal Information for Distributions in Ontario**

The attached Schedule I contains personal information of purchasers and details of the distribution(s). The issuer/underwriter hereby confirms that each purchaser listed in Schedule I of this report who is resident in Ontario

- (a) has been notified by the issuer/underwriter
  - (i) of the delivery to the Ontario Securities Commission of the information pertaining to the person as set out in Schedule I,
  - (ii) that this information is being collected indirectly by the Ontario Securities Commission under the authority granted to it in securities legislation,
  - (iii) that this information is being collected for the purposes of the administration and enforcement of the securities legislation of Ontario, and
  - (iv) of the title, business address and business telephone number of the public official in Ontario, as set out in this report, who can answer questions about the Ontario Securities Commission's indirect collection of the information, and
- (b) has authorized the indirect collection of the information by the Ontario Securities Commission.

## Schedule I

Complete the following table.

For reports filed under sub-section 6.1(1)(j) (TSX Venture Exchange offering) of National Instrument 45-106 the following table only needs to list the total number of purchasers by jurisdiction instead of including the name, residential address and telephone number of each purchaser.

Do not include in this table, securities issued as payment of commissions or finder's fees disclosed under item 8 of this report.

**The information in this schedule will not be placed on the public file of any securities regulatory authority or, where applicable, regulator.** However, freedom of information legislation in certain jurisdictions may require the securities regulatory authority or, where applicable, regulator to make this information available if requested.

Full name, residential address and telephone number of purchaser	Number and type of securities purchased	Total purchase price (Canadian \$)	Exemption relied on	Date of distribution

**Instructions:**

1. References to a purchaser in this report are to the beneficial owner of the securities.
2. File this report and the applicable fee in each jurisdiction in which a distribution is made at the addresses listed at the end of this report. If the distribution is made in more than one jurisdiction, the issuer/underwriter must complete a single report identifying all purchasers and file that report in each of the jurisdictions in which the distribution is made. Filing fees associated with the filing of the report are not affected by identifying all purchasers in a single report.
3. If the space provided for any answer is insufficient, additional sheets may be used and must be cross-referenced to the relevant part and properly identified and signed by the person whose signature appears on the report.
4. One report may be used for multiple distributions occurring within 10 days of each other provided that the report is filed on or before the 10<sup>th</sup> day following the first of such distributions.
5. The information in items 5, 6, and 7 must reconcile with the information in Schedule I of Form 45-106F1. All dollar amounts must be in Canadian dollars.
6. In order to determine the applicable fee, consult the securities legislation of each jurisdiction in which a distribution is made.
7. This report must be filed in English or in French. In Québec, the issuer/underwriter must comply with linguistic obligations and rights prescribed by Québec law.

## **Securities Regulatory Authorities and Regulators**

### **British Columbia Securities Commission**

P.O. Box 10142, Pacific Centre  
701 West Georgia Street  
Vancouver, British Columbia V7Y 1L2  
Telephone: (604) 899-6500  
Toll free in British Columbia and Alberta 1-800-373-6393  
Facsimile: (604) 899-6506

### **Alberta Securities Commission**

4th Floor, 300 – 5th Avenue SW  
Calgary, Alberta T2P 3C4  
Telephone: (403) 297-6454  
Facsimile: (403) 297-6156

### **Saskatchewan Financial Services Commission**

Suite 601 - 1919 Saskatchewan Drive  
Regina, Saskatchewan S4P 4H2  
Telephone: (306) 787-5879  
Facsimile: (306) 787-5899

### **The Manitoba Securities Commission**

500 – 400 St Mary Avenue  
Winnipeg, Manitoba R3C 4K5  
Telephone: (204) 945-2548  
Toll free in Manitoba 1-800-655-5244  
Facsimile: (204) 945-0330

### **Ontario Securities Commission**

Suite 1903, Box 55  
20 Queen Street West  
Toronto, Ontario M5H 3S8  
Telephone: (416) 593- 8314  
Toll free in Canada: 1-877-785-1555  
Facsimile: (416) 593-8122  
Public official contact regarding indirect collection of information:  
Administrative Support Clerk  
Telephone (416) 593-3684

**Autorité des marchés financiers**

800, Square Victoria, 22e étage  
C.P. 246, Tour de la Bourse  
Montréal, Québec H4Z 1G3  
Telephone: (514) 395-0337  
Or 1-877-525-0337  
Facsimile: (514) 873-6155 (For filing purposes only)  
Facsimile: (514) 864-6381 (For privacy requests only)

**New Brunswick Securities Commission**

85 Charlotte Street, Suite 300  
Saint John, New Brunswick E2L 2J2  
Telephone: (506) 658-3060  
Toll Free in New Brunswick 1-866-933-2222  
Facsimile: (506) 658-3059

**Nova Scotia Securities Commission**

2nd Floor, Joseph Howe Building  
1690 Hollis Street  
Halifax, Nova Scotia B3J 3J9  
Telephone: (902) 424-7768  
Facsimile: (902) 424-4625

**Prince Edward Island Securities Office**

95 Rochford Street, 4<sup>th</sup> Floor Shaw Building  
P.O. Box 2000  
Charlottetown, Prince Edward Island C1A 7N8  
Telephone: (902) 368-4569  
Facsimile: (902) 368-5283

**Government of Newfoundland and Labrador**

Financial Services Regulation Division  
P.O. Box 8700  
Confederation Building  
2nd Floor, West Block  
Prince Philip Drive  
St. John's, NFLD A1B 4J6  
Attention: Director of Securities  
Telephone: (709) 729-4189  
Facsimile: (709) 729-6187

**Government of Yukon**

Department of Law  
Law Centre,  
2130 Second  
Whitehorse, YT Y1A 5H6  
Telephone: (867) 667-5314  
Facsimile: (867) 393-6251

Community  
3rd

Services  
Floor  
Avenue

**Government of Northwest Territories**

Government of the Northwest Territories  
Office of the Superintendent of Securities  
P.O. Box 1320  
Yellowknife, NT X1A 2L9  
Attention: Deputy Superintendent, Legal & Enforcement  
Telephone: (867) 920-8984  
Facsimile: (867) 873-0243

**Government of Nunavut**

Department of Justice  
Legal Registries Division  
P.O. Box 1000, Station 570  
1st Floor, Brown Building  
Iqaluit, Nunavut X0A 0H0  
Telephone: (867) 975-6590  
Facsimile: (867) 975-6594

**Form 45-106F2**  
*Offering Memorandum for Non-Qualifying Issuers*

**Date:** [Insert the date from the certificate page.]

**The Issuer**

Name:

Head office:   Address:

                  Phone #:

                  E-mail address:

                  Fax #:

Currently listed or quoted? [If no, state in bold type: **“These securities do not trade on any exchange or market”**. If yes, state where, e.g., TSX/TSX Venture Exchange.]

Reporting issuer? [Yes/No. If yes, state where.]

SEDAR filer? [Yes/No]

**The Offering**

Securities offered:

Price per security:

Minimum/Maximum offering: [If there is no minimum, state in bold type: **“There is no minimum.”** and also state in bold type: **“You may be the only purchaser.”**]

State in bold type: **Funds available under the offering may not be sufficient to accomplish our proposed objectives.**

Minimum subscription amount: [State the minimum amount each investor must invest, or state “There is no minimum subscription amount an investor must invest.”]

Payment terms:

Proposed closing date(s):

Income tax consequences: There are important tax consequences to these securities. See item 6. [If income tax consequences are not material, delete this item.]

Selling agent? [Yes/No. If yes, state “See item 7”. The name of the selling agent may also be stated.]

**Resale restrictions**

State: “You will be restricted from selling your securities for [4 months and a day/an indefinite period]. See item 10.”

**Purchaser's rights**

State: “You have 2 business days to cancel your agreement to purchase these securities. If there is a misrepresentation in this offering memorandum, you have the right to sue either for damages or to cancel the agreement. See item 11.”

State in bold type:

**“No securities regulatory authority or regulator has assessed the merits of these securities or reviewed this offering memorandum. Any representation to the contrary is an offence. This is a risky investment. See item 8.”**

[All of the above information must appear on a single cover page.]

## Item 1: Use of Available Funds

**1.1 Funds** - Using the following table, disclose the funds available as a result of the offering. If the issuer plans to combine additional sources of funding with the available funds from the offering to achieve its principal capital-raising purpose, please provide details about each additional source of funding. If there is no minimum offering, state "\$0" as the minimum.

Disclose also the amount of any working capital deficiency, if any, of the issuer as at a date not more than 30 days prior to the date of the offering memorandum. If the working capital deficiency will not be eliminated by the use of available funds, state how the issuer intends to eliminate or manage the deficiency.

		Assuming min. offering	Assuming max. offering
A.	Amount to be raised by this offering	\$	\$
B.	Selling commissions and fees	\$	\$
C.	Estimated offering costs (e.g., legal, accounting, audit.)	\$	\$
D.	Available funds: $D = A - (B+C)$	\$	\$
E.	Additional sources of funding required	\$	\$
F.	Working capital deficiency	\$	\$
G.	Total: $H = (D+E) - F$	\$	\$

**1.2 Use of Available Funds** - Using the following table, provide a detailed breakdown of how the issuer will use the available funds. If any of the available funds will be paid to a related party, disclose in a note to the table the name of the related party, the relationship to the issuer, and the amount. If the issuer has a working capital deficiency, disclose the portion, if any, of the available funds to be applied against the working capital deficiency. If more than 10% of the available funds will be used by the issuer to pay debt and the issuer incurred the debt within the two preceding financial years, describe why the debt was incurred.

Description of intended use of available funds listed in order of priority	Assuming min. offering	Assuming max. offering
	\$	\$
	\$	\$
Total: Equal to G in the Funds table above	\$	\$

**1.3 Reallocation** - The available funds must be used for the purposes disclosed in the offering memorandum. The board of directors can reallocate the proceeds to other uses only for sound business reasons. If the available funds may be reallocated, include the following statement:

“We intend to spend the available funds as stated. We will reallocate funds only for sound business reasons.”

**Item 2: Business of [name of issuer or other term used to refer to issuer]**

**2.1 Structure** - State the business structure (e.g., partnership, corporation or trust), the statute and the province, state or other jurisdiction under which the issuer is incorporated, continued or organized, and the date of incorporation, continuance or organization.

**2.2 Our Business** - Describe the issuer's business. The disclosure must provide sufficient information to enable a prospective purchaser to make an informed investment decision. For a non-resource issuer this disclosure may include principal products or services, operations, market, marketing plans and strategies and a discussion of the issuer's current and prospective competitors. For a resource issuer this will require a description of principal properties (including interest held) and a summary of material information including, if applicable: the stage of development, reserves, geology, operations, production and mineral reserves or mineral resources being explored or developed. A resource issuer disclosing scientific or technical information for a mineral project must follow General Instruction A.8 of this Form. A resource issuer disclosing information about its oil and gas activities must follow General Instruction A.9 of this Form.

**2.3 Development of Business** - Describe (generally, in one or two paragraphs) the general development of the issuer's business over at least its two most recently completed financial years and any subsequent period. Include the major events that have occurred or conditions that have influenced (favourably or unfavourably) the development of the issuer.

**2.4 Long Term Objectives** - Describe each significant event that must occur to accomplish the issuer's long term objectives, state the specific time period in which each event is expected to occur, and the costs related to each event.

**2.5 Short Term Objectives and How We Intend to Achieve Them**

- (a) Disclose the issuer's objectives for the next 12 months.
- (b) Using the following table, disclose how the issuer intends to meet those objectives for the next 12 months.

What we must do and how we will do it	Target completion date or, if not known, number of months to complete	Our cost to complete
		\$
		\$

## **2.6 Insufficient Funds**

If applicable, disclose that the funds available as a result of the offering either may not or will not be sufficient to accomplish all of the issuer's proposed objectives and there is no assurance that alternative financing will be available. If alternative financing has been arranged, disclose the amount, source and all outstanding conditions that must be satisfied.

## **2.7 Material Agreements** - Disclose the key terms of all material agreements

- (a) to which the issuer is currently a party, or
- (b) with a related party

including the following information:

- (i) if the agreement is with a related party, the name of the related party and the relationship,
- (ii) a description of any asset, property or interest acquired, disposed of, leased, under option, etc.,
- (iii) a description of any service provided,
- (iv) purchase price and payment terms (e.g., paid in instalments, cash, securities or work commitments),
- (v) the principal amount of any debenture or loan, the repayment terms, security, due date and interest rate,
- (vi) the date of the agreement,
- (vii) the amount of any finder's fee or commission paid or payable to a related party in connection with the agreement,
- (viii) any material outstanding obligations under the agreement, and

- (ix) for any transaction involving the purchase of assets by or sale of assets to the issuer from a related party, state the cost of the assets to the related party, and the cost of the assets to the issuer.

**Item 3: Interests of Directors, Management, Promoters and Principal Holders**

**3.1 Compensation and Securities Held** - Using the following table, provide the specified information about each director, officer and promoter of the issuer and each person who, directly or indirectly, beneficially owns or controls 10% or more of any class of voting securities of the issuer (a “principal holder”). If the principal holder is not an individual, state in a note to the table the name of any person that, directly or indirectly, beneficially owns or controls more than 50% of the voting rights of the principal holder. If the issuer has not completed its first financial year, then include compensation paid since inception. Compensation includes any form of remuneration including cash, shares and options.

Name and municipality of principal residence	Positions held (e.g., director, officer, promoter and/or principal holder) and the date of obtaining that position	Compensation paid by issuer or related party in the most recently completed financial year and the compensation anticipated to be paid in the current financial year	Number, type and percentage of securities of the issuer held after completion of min. offering	Number, type and percentage of securities of the issuer held after completion of max. offering

**3.2 Management Experience** - Using the following table, disclose the principal occupations of the directors and executive officers over the past five years. In addition, for each individual, describe any relevant experience in a business similar to the issuer's.

Name	Principal occupation and related experience

**3.3 Penalties, Sanctions and Bankruptcy**

- (a) Disclose any penalty or sanction (including the reason for it and whether it is currently in effect) that has been in effect during the last 10 years, or any cease trade order that has been in effect for a period of more than 30 consecutive days during the past 10 years against

- (i) a director, executive officer or control person of the issuer, or
  - (ii) an issuer of which a person referred to in (i) above was a director, executive officer or control person at the time.
- (b) Disclose any declaration of bankruptcy, voluntary assignment in bankruptcy, proposal under any bankruptcy or insolvency legislation, proceedings, arrangement or compromise with creditors or appointment of a receiver, receiver manager or trustee to hold assets, that has been in effect during the last 10 years with regard to any
- (i) director, executive officer or control person of the issuer, or
  - (ii) issuer of which a person referred to in (i) above was a director, executive officer or control person at that time.

**3.4 Loans** - Disclose the principal amount of any debenture or loan, the repayment terms, security, due date and interest rate due to or from the directors, management, promoters and principal holders as at a date not more than 30 days prior to the date of the offering memorandum.

**Item 4: Capital Structure**

**4.1 Share Capital** - Using the following table, provide the required information about outstanding securities of the issuer (including options, warrants and other securities convertible into shares). If necessary, notes to the table may be added to describe the material terms of the securities.

Description of security	Number authorized to be issued	Price per security	Number outstanding as at [a date not more than 30 days prior to the offering memorandum date]	Number outstanding after min. offering	Number outstanding after max. offering

**4.2 Long Term Debt** - Using the following table, provide the required information about outstanding long term debt of the issuer. Disclose the current portion of the long-term debt due within 12 months of the date of the offering memorandum. If the securities being offered are debt securities, add a column to the table disclosing the amount of debt that will be outstanding after both the minimum and maximum offering. If the debt is owed to a related party, indicate that in a note to the table and identify the related party.

Description of long term debt (including whether secured)	Interest rate	Repayment terms	Amount outstanding at [a date not more than 30 days prior to the offering memorandum date]
			\$
			\$

**4.3 Prior Sales** - If the issuer has issued any securities of the class being offered under the offering memorandum (or convertible or exchangeable into the class being offered under the offering memorandum) within the last 12 months, use the following table to provide the information specified. If securities were issued in exchange for assets or services, describe in a note to the table the assets or services that were provided.

Date of issuance	Type of security issued	Number of securities issued	Price per security	Total funds received

## Item 5: Securities Offered

**5.1 Terms of Securities**- Describe the material terms of the securities being offered, including:

- (a) voting rights or restrictions on voting,
- (b) conversion or exercise price and date of expiry,
- (c) rights of redemption or retraction, and

- (d) interest rates or dividend rates.

## **5.2 Subscription Procedure**

- (a) Describe how a purchaser can subscribe for the securities and the method of payment.
- (b) State that the consideration will be held in trust and the period that it will be held (refer at least to the mandatory two day period).
- (c) Disclose any conditions to closing, e.g., receipt of additional funds from other sources. If there is a minimum offering, disclose when consideration will be returned to purchasers if the minimum is not met, and whether the issuer will pay the purchasers interest on consideration.

## **Item 6: Income Tax Consequences and RRSP Eligibility**

**6.1** State: “You should consult your own professional advisers to obtain advice on the income tax consequences that apply to you.”

**6.2** If income tax consequences are a material aspect of the securities being offered (e.g., flow-through shares), provide

- (a) a summary of the significant income tax consequences to Canadian residents, and
- (b) the name of the person providing the income tax disclosure in (a).

**6.3** Provide advice regarding the RRSP eligibility of the securities and the name of the person providing the advice or state “Not all securities are eligible for investment in a registered retirement savings plan (RRSP). You should consult your own professional advisers to obtain advice on the RRSP eligibility of these securities.”

## **Item 7: Compensation Paid to Sellers and Finders**

If any person has or will receive any compensation (e.g., commission, corporate finance fee or finder's fee) in connection with the offering, provide the following information to the extent applicable:

- (a) a description of each type of compensation and the estimated amount to be paid for each type,

- (b) if a commission is being paid, the percentage that the commission will represent of the gross proceeds of the offering (assuming both the minimum and maximum offering),
- (c) details of any broker's warrants or agent's option (including number of securities under option, exercise price and expiry date), and
- (d) if any portion of the compensation will be paid in securities, details of the securities (including number, type and, if options or warrants, the exercise price and expiry date).

### **Item 8: Risk Factors**

Describe in order of importance, starting with the most important, the risk factors material to the issuer that a reasonable investor would consider important in deciding whether to buy the issuer's securities.

Risk factors will generally fall into the following three categories:

- (a) Investment Risk - risks that are specific to the securities being offered. Some examples include
  - arbitrary determination of price,
  - no market or an illiquid market for the securities,
  - resale restrictions, and
  - subordination of debt securities.
- (b) Issuer Risk - risks that are specific to the issuer. Some examples include
  - insufficient funds to accomplish the issuer's business objectives,
  - no history or a limited history of sales or profits,
  - lack of specific management or technical expertise,
  - management's regulatory and business track record,
  - dependence on key employees, suppliers or agreements,
  - dependence on financial viability of guarantor,
  - pending and outstanding litigation, and
  - political risk factors.
- (c) Industry Risk - risks faced by the issuer because of the industry in which it operates. Some examples include
  - environmental and industry regulation,
  - product obsolescence, and

- competition.

## **Item 9: Reporting Obligations**

**9.1** Disclose the documents, including any financial information required by the issuer's corporate legislation, constating documents, or other documents under which the issuer is organized, that will be sent to purchasers on an annual or on-going basis. If the issuer is not required to send any documents to the purchasers on an annual or on-going basis, state in bold type: **"We are not required to send you any documents on an annual or ongoing basis."**

**9.2** If corporate or securities information about the issuer is available from a government, securities regulatory authority or regulator, SRO or quotation and trade reporting system, disclose where that information can be located (including website address).

## **Item 10: Resale Restrictions**

**10.1** General Statement - For trades in Alberta, British Columbia, New Brunswick, Newfoundland and Labrador, Northwest Territories, Nova Scotia, Nunavut, Prince Edward Island, Québec, Saskatchewan and Yukon, state:

"These securities will be subject to a number of resale restrictions, including a restriction on trading. Until the restriction on trading expires, you will not be able to trade the securities unless you comply with an exemption from the prospectus and registration requirements under securities legislation."

**10.2** Restricted Period - For trades in Alberta, British Columbia, New Brunswick, Newfoundland and Labrador, Northwest Territories, Nova Scotia, Nunavut, Prince Edward Island, Québec, Saskatchewan and Yukon state one of the following, as applicable:

- (a) If the issuer is not a reporting issuer in a jurisdiction at the distribution date state:

"Unless permitted under securities legislation, you cannot trade the securities before the date that is 4 months and a day after the date [insert name of issuer or other term used to refer to the issuer] becomes a reporting issuer in any province or territory of Canada."

- (b) If the issuer is a reporting issuer in a jurisdiction at the distribution date state:

“Unless permitted under securities legislation, you cannot trade the securities before the date that is 4 months and a day after the distribution date.”

**10.3 Manitoba Resale Restrictions** - For trades in Manitoba, if the issuer will not be a reporting issuer in a jurisdiction at the time the security is acquired by the purchaser state:

“Unless permitted under securities legislation, you must not trade the securities without the prior written consent of the regulator in Manitoba unless

- (a) [name of issuer or other term used to refer to issuer] has filed a prospectus with the regulator in Manitoba with respect to the securities you have purchased and the regulator in Manitoba has issued a receipt for that prospectus, or
- (b) you have held the securities for at least 12 months.

The regulator in Manitoba will consent to your trade if the regulator is of the opinion that to do so is not prejudicial to the public interest.”

## **Item 11: Purchasers' Rights**

State the following:

“If you purchase these securities you will have certain rights, some of which are described below. For information about your rights you should consult a lawyer.

**(1) Two Day Cancellation Right** - You can cancel your agreement to purchase these securities. To do so, you must send a notice to us by midnight on the 2nd business day after you sign the agreement to buy the securities.

**(2) Statutory Rights of Action in the Event of a Misrepresentation** - [Insert this section only if the securities legislation of the jurisdiction in which the trade occurs provides purchasers with statutory rights in the event of a misrepresentation in an offering memorandum. Modify the language, if necessary, to conform to the statutory rights.] If there is a misrepresentation in this offering memorandum, you have a statutory right to sue:

- (a) [name of issuer or other term used to refer to issuer] to cancel your agreement to buy these securities, or

- (b) for damages against [state the name of issuer or other term used to refer to issuer and the title of any other person against whom the rights are available].

This statutory right to sue is available to you whether or not you relied on the misrepresentation. However, there are various defences available to the persons or companies that you have a right to sue. In particular, they have a defence if you knew of the misrepresentation when you purchased the securities.

If you intend to rely on the rights described in (a) or (b) above, you must do so within strict time limitations. You must commence your action to cancel the agreement within [state time period provided by the securities legislation]. You must commence your action for damages within [state time period provided by the securities legislation.]

**(3) Contractual Rights of Action in the Event of a Misrepresentation -** [Insert this section only if the securities legislation of the jurisdiction in which the purchaser is resident does not provide purchasers with statutory rights in the event of a misrepresentation in an offering memorandum.] If there is a misrepresentation in this offering memorandum, you have a contractual right to sue [name of issuer or other term used to refer to issuer]:

- (a) to cancel your agreement to buy these securities, or
- (b) for damages.

This contractual right to sue is available to you whether or not you relied on the misrepresentation. However, in an action for damages, the amount you may recover will not exceed the price that you paid for your securities and will not include any part of the damages that [name of issuer or other term used to refer to issuer] proves does not represent the depreciation in value of the securities resulting from the misrepresentation. [Name of issuer or other term used to refer to issuer] has a defence if it proves that you knew of the misrepresentation when you purchased the securities.

If you intend to rely on the rights described in (a) or (b) above, you must do so within strict time limitations. You must commence your action to cancel the agreement within 180 days after you signed the agreement to purchase the securities. You must commence your action for damages within the earlier of 180 days after learning of the misrepresentation and 3 years after you signed the agreement to purchase the securities.”

**Item 12: Financial Statements**

Include in the offering memorandum immediately before the certificate page of the offering memorandum all required financial statements as set out in the Instructions.

**Item 13: Date and Certificate**

State the following on the certificate page of the offering memorandum:

“Dated [insert the date the certificate page of the offering memorandum is signed].

**This offering memorandum does not contain a misrepresentation.”**

**Instructions for Completing**  
**Form 45-106F2**  
*Offering Memorandum for Non-Qualifying Issuers*

**A. General Instructions**

1. Draft the offering memorandum so that it is easy to read and understand. Be concise and use clear, plain language. Avoid technical terms. If technical terms are necessary, provide definitions.
2. Address the items required by the form in the order set out in the form. However, it is not necessary to provide disclosure about an item that does not apply.
3. The issuer may include additional information in the offering memorandum other than that specifically required by the form. An offering memorandum is generally not required to contain the level of detail and extent of disclosure required by a prospectus. Generally, this description should not exceed 2 pages. However, an offering memorandum must provide a prospective purchaser with sufficient information to make an informed investment decision.
4. The issuer may wrap the offering memorandum around a prospectus or similar document. However, all matters required to be disclosed by the offering memorandum must be addressed and the offering memorandum must provide a cross-reference to the page number or heading in the wrapped document where the relevant information is contained. The certificate to the offering memorandum must be modified to indicate that the offering memorandum, including the document around which it is wrapped, does not contain a misrepresentation.
5. It is an offence to make a misrepresentation in the offering memorandum. This applies both to information that is required by the form and to additional information that is provided. Include particulars of any material facts, which have not been disclosed under any of the Item numbers and for which failure to disclose would constitute a misrepresentation in the offering memorandum. Refer also to section 3.8(3) of Companion Policy 45-106CP for additional information.
6. When the term “related party” is used in this form, it refers to:
  - (a) a director, officer, promoter or control person of the issuer,
  - (b) in regard to a person referred to in (a), a child, parent, grandparent or sibling, or other relative living in the same residence,
  - (c) in regard to a person referred to in (a) or (b), his or her spouse or a person with whom he or she is living in a marriage-like relationship,

- (d) an insider of the issuer,
- (e) a company controlled by one or more individuals referred to in (a) to (d), and
- (f) in the case of an insider, promoter or control person that is not an individual, any person that controls that insider, promoter or control person.

(If the issuer is not a reporting issuer, the reference to “insider” includes persons or companies who would be insiders of the issuer if that issuer were a reporting issuer.)

7. Disclosure is required in item 3.1 of compensation paid directly or indirectly by the issuer or a related party to a director, officer, promoter and/or principal holder if the issuer receives a direct benefit from such compensation paid.
8. Refer to National Instrument 43-101 *Standards of Disclosure for Mineral Projects* (NI 43-101) when disclosing scientific or technical information for a mineral project of the issuer.
9. If an oil and gas issuer is disclosing information about its oil and gas activities, it must ensure that the information is disclosed in accordance with Part 4 and Part 5 of National Instrument 51-101 *Standards of Disclosure for Oil and Gas Activities* (NI 51-101). Under section 5.3 of NI 51-101, disclosure of reserves or resources must be consistent with the reserves and resources terminology and categories set out in the Canadian Oil and Gas Evaluation Handbook. For the purposes of this instruction, references to reporting issuer in Part 4 and Part 5 of NI 51-101 will be deemed to include all issuers.
10. Securities legislation restricts what can be told to investors about the issuer's intent to list or quote securities on an exchange or market. Refer to applicable securities legislation before making any such statements.
11. If an issuer uses this form in connection with a distribution under an exemption other than section 2.9 (*offering memorandum*) of National Instrument 45-106 *Prospectus and Registration Exemptions*, the issuer must modify the disclosure in item 11 to correctly describe the purchaser's rights. If a purchaser does not have statutory or contractual rights of action in the event of a misrepresentation in the offering memorandum, that fact must be stated in bold on the face page.
12. During the course of a distribution of securities, any material forward-looking information disseminated must only be that which is set out in the offering memorandum. If an extract of FOFI, as defined in National Instrument 51-102 *Continuous Disclosure Obligations* (NI 51-102), is disseminated, the extract or summary must be reasonably balanced and have a cautionary note in boldface stating that the information presented is not complete and that complete FOFI is included in the offering memorandum.

## **B. Financial Statements - General**

1. All financial statements, operating statements for an oil and gas property that is an acquired business or a business to be acquired and summarized financial information as to the assets, liabilities and results of operations of a business relating to an acquisition that is, or will be, an investment accounted for by the issuer using the equity method included in the offering memorandum must comply with National Instrument 52-107 *Acceptable Accounting Principles, Auditing Standards and Reporting Currency* (NI 52-107), regardless of whether the issuer is a reporting issuer or not. Under NI 52-107, a non-qualifying issuer that uses Canadian GAAP cannot use differential reporting as set out in the Handbook.
2. Include all financial statements required by these instructions in the offering memorandum immediately before the certificate page of the offering memorandum.
3. If the issuer has not completed one financial year or its first financial year end is less than 120 days from the date of the offering memorandum, include in the offering memorandum financial statements of the issuer consisting of:
  - (a) an income statement, a statement of retained earnings and a cash flow statement for the period from inception to a date not more than 90 days before the date of the offering memorandum,
  - (b) a balance sheet as at the end of the period referred to in paragraph (a), and
  - (c) notes to the financial statements.
4. If the issuer has completed one or more financial years, include in the offering memorandum annual financial statements of the issuer consisting of:
  - (a) an income statement, a statement of retained earnings and a cash flow statement for
    - (i) the most recently completed financial year that ended more than 120 days before the date of the offering memorandum, and
    - (ii) the financial year immediately preceding the financial year in clause (i), if any,
  - (b) a balance sheet as at the end of each of the periods referred to in paragraph (a), and
  - (c) notes to the financial statements.

5. If the issuer has completed one or more financial years, include in the offering memorandum interim financial statements of the issuer comprised of:
  - (a) an income statement, a statement of retained earnings and a cash flow statement for the most recently completed interim period that ended
    - (i) more than 60 days before the date of the offering memorandum, and
    - (ii) after the year-end date of the financial statements required under B.4(a)(i),
  - (b) an income statement, a statement of retained earnings and a cash flow statement for the corresponding period in the immediately preceding financial year, if any,
  - (c) a balance sheet as at the end of the periods required by paragraphs (a) and (b), and
  - (d) notes to the financial statements.
6. An issuer is not required to include the comparative financial information for the period in B.4.(a)(ii) in an offering memorandum if the issuer includes financial statements for a financial year ended less than 120 days before the date of the offering memorandum.
7. For an issuer that is not an investment fund, the term “interim period” has the meaning set out in NI 51-102. In most cases, an interim period is a period ending nine, six, or three months before the end of a financial year. For an issuer that is an investment fund, the term “interim period” has the meaning set out in National Instrument 81-106 – *Investment Fund Continuous Disclosure* (NI 81-106).
8. The comparative financial information required under B.5(b) and (c) may be omitted if not previously prepared.
9. The financial statements required by B.3 and the financial statements of the most recently completed financial period referred to in B.4 must be audited. The financial statements required under B.5, B.6 and the comparative financial information required by B.4 may be unaudited; however, if any of those financial statements have been audited, the auditor’s report must be included in the offering memorandum.
10. Refer to National Instrument 52-108 *Auditor Oversight* for requirements relating to reporting issuers and public accounting firms.
11. All unaudited financial statements and unaudited comparatives must be clearly labelled as unaudited.
12. If the offering memorandum does not contain audited financial statements for the issuer’s most recently completed financial year, and if the distribution is ongoing, update the offering memorandum to include the annual audited financial statements and the accompanying auditor’s report as soon as the issuer has approved the audited financial statements, but in any event no later than the 120<sup>th</sup> day following the financial year end.

13. The offering memorandum does not have to be updated to include interim financial statements for periods completed after the date that is 60 days before the date of the offering memorandum unless it is necessary to prevent the offering memorandum from containing a misrepresentation.
14. Forward looking information included in an offering memorandum must comply with section 4A.2 of NI 51-102 and must include the disclosure described in section 4A.3 of NI 51-102. In addition to the foregoing, FOFI or a financial outlook, each as defined in NI 51-102, included in an offering memorandum must comply with Part 4B of NI 51-102. For an issuer that is not a reporting issuer, references to “reporting issuer” in section 4A.2, section 4A.3 and Part 4B of NI 51-102 should be read as references to an “issuer”. Additional guidance may be found in the companion policy to NI 51-102.
15. If the issuer is a limited partnership, in addition to the financial statements required for the issuer, include in the offering memorandum the financial statements in accordance with Part B for the general partner and, if the limited partnership has active operations, for the limited partnership.

### **C. Financial Statements - Business Acquisitions**

1. If the issuer
  - (a) has acquired a business during the past two years and the audited financial statements of the issuer included in the offering memorandum do not include the results of the acquired business for 9 consecutive months, or
  - (b) is proposing to acquire a business and the acquisition has progressed to a state where a reasonable person would believe that the likelihood of the acquisition being completed is high,  
  
include the financial statements specified in C.4 for the business if either of the tests in C.2 is met, irrespective of how the issuer accounts, or will account, for the acquisition.
2. Include the financial statements specified in C.4 for a business referred to in C.1 if either:
  - (a) the issuer's proportionate share of the consolidated assets of the business exceeds 40% of the consolidated assets of the issuer calculated using the annual financial statements of each of the issuer and the business for the most recently completed financial year of each that ended before the date of acquisition or, for a proposed acquisition, the date of the offering memorandum or
  - (b) the issuer's consolidated investments in and advances to the business as at the date of acquisition or the proposed date of acquisition exceeds 40% of the consolidated

assets of the issuer, excluding any investments in or advances to the business, as at the last day of the issuer's most recently completed financial year that ended before the date of acquisition or the date of the offering memorandum for a proposed acquisition.

- 2.1 In this Instruction C, the term “date of acquisition” means the date of acquisition used for accounting purposes.
3. If an issuer or a business has not yet completed a financial year, or its first financial year ended within 120 days of the offering memorandum date, use the financial statements referred to in B.3 to make the calculations in C.2.
4. If under C.2 you must include in an offering memorandum financial statements for a business, the financial statements must include:
  - (a) If the business has not completed one financial year or its first financial year end is less than 120 days from the date of the offering memorandum
    - (i) an income statement, a statement of retained earnings and a cash flow statement
      - A) for the period from inception to a date not more than 90 days before the date of the offering memorandum, or
      - B) if the date of acquisition precedes the ending date of the period referred to in (A), for the period from inception to the date of acquisition or a date not more than 45 days before the date of acquisition,
    - (ii) a balance sheet dated as at the end of the period referred to in clause (i), and
    - (iii) notes to the financial statements.
  - (b) If the business has completed one or more financial years include
    - (i) annual financial statements comprised of:
      - A) an income statement, a statement of retained earnings and a cash flow statement for the following annual periods:

- i. the most recently completed financial year that ended before the date of acquisition and more than 120 days before the date of the offering memorandum, and
    - ii. the financial year immediately preceding the most recently completed financial year specified in clause i, if any,
  - B) a balance sheet as at the end of each of the periods specified in (A),
  - C) notes to the financial statements, and
- (ii) interim financial statements comprised of:
  - A) an income statement, a statement of retained earnings and a cash flow statement for either:
    - i. the most recently completed year-to-date interim period and the three month period ending on the last date of the interim period that ended before the date of acquisition and more than 60 days before the date of the offering memorandum and ended after the date of the financial statements required under C.4(b)(i)(A)i, or
    - ii. the period from the first day after the financial year referred to in C.4(b)(i) to a date before the date of acquisition and after the period end in C.4(b)(ii)(A)i, and
  - B) an income statement, a statement of retained earnings and a cash flow statement for the corresponding period in the immediately preceding financial year, if any,
  - C) a balance sheet as at the end of the periods required by (A) and (B), and
  - D) notes to the financial statements.

Refer to Instruction B.7 for the meaning of “interim period”.

5. The information for the most recently completed financial period referred to in C.4(b)(i) must be audited and accompanied by an auditor’s report. The financial statements required under C.4(a), C.4(b)(ii) and the comparative financial information required by C.4(b)(i) may be unaudited; however, if those financial statements or comparative

financial information have been audited, the auditor's report must be included in the offering memorandum.

6. If the offering memorandum does not contain audited financial statements for a business referred to in C.1 for the business's most recently completed financial year that ended before the date of acquisition and the distribution is ongoing, update the offering memorandum to include those financial statements accompanied by an auditor's report when they are available, but in any event no later than the date 120 days following the year-end.
7. The term "business" should be evaluated in light of the facts and circumstances involved. Generally, a separate entity or a subsidiary or division of an entity is a business and, in certain circumstances, a lesser component of an entity may also constitute a business, whether or not the subject of the acquisition previously prepared financial statements. The subject of an acquisition should be considered a business where there is, or the issuer expects there will be, continuity of operations. The issuer should consider:
  - (a) whether the nature of the revenue producing activity or potential revenue producing activity will remain generally the same after the acquisition, and
  - (b) whether any of the physical facilities, employees, marketing systems, sales forces, customers, operating rights, production techniques or trade names are acquired by the issuer instead of remaining with the vendor after the acquisition.
8. If a transaction or a proposed transaction for which the likelihood of the transaction being completed is high has been or will be accounted for as a reverse take-over as defined in NI 51-102, include financial statements for the legal subsidiary in the offering memorandum in accordance with Part A. The legal parent, as that term is defined in the CICA Handbook, is considered to be the business acquired. C.1 may also require financial statements of the legal parent.
9. An issuer satisfies the requirements in C.4 if the issuer includes in the offering memorandum the financial statements required in a business acquisition report under NI 51-102.

**D. Financial Statement - Exemptions**

1. An issuer will satisfy the financial statement requirements of this form if it includes the financial statements required by securities legislation for a prospectus.
2. Notwithstanding the requirements in section 3.2(a) of NI 52-107, an auditor's report that accompanies financial statements of an issuer or a business contained in an offering memorandum of a non-reporting issuer may contain a qualification of opinion relating to inventory if

- (a) the issuer includes in the offering memorandum a balance sheet that is for a date that is subsequent to the date to which the qualification relates, and
  - (b) the balance sheet referred to in paragraph (a) is accompanied by an auditor's report that does not contain a qualification of opinion relating to closing inventory, and
  - (c) the issuer has not previously filed financial statements for the same entity accompanied by an auditor's report for a prior year that contained a qualification of opinion relating to inventory.
3. If an issuer has, or will account for a business referred to in C.1 using the equity method, then financial statements for a business required by Part C are not required to be included if:
- (a) the offering memorandum includes disclosure for the periods for which financial statements are otherwise required under Part C that:
    - (i) summarizes information as to the assets, liabilities and results of operations of the business, and
    - (ii) describes the issuer's proportionate interest in the business and any contingent issuance of securities by the business that might significantly affect the issuer's share of earnings;
  - (b) the financial information provided under D.3(a) for the most recently completed financial year has been audited, or has been derived from audited financial statements of the business; and
  - (c) the offering memorandum discloses that:
    - (i) the financial information provided under D.3(a) for any completed financial year has been audited, or identifies the audited financial statements from which the financial information provided under D.3(a) has been derived; and
    - (ii) the audit opinion with respect to the financial information or financial statements referred to in D.3(c)(i) was issued without a reservation of opinion.

If the financial information included in an offering memorandum under D.3(a) has been derived from financial statements of a business incorporated or organized in a foreign jurisdiction that have been prepared in accordance

with foreign GAAP, the information must be accompanied by a note that explains and quantifies the effect of material differences between Canadian GAAP and the foreign GAAP.

4. Financial statements relating to the acquisition or proposed acquisition of a business that is an interest in an oil and gas property are not required to be included in an offering memorandum if the acquisition is significant based only on the asset test or:
- (a) the issuer is unable to provide the financial statements in respect of the significant acquisition otherwise required because those financial statements do not exist or the issuer does not have access to those financial statements,
  - (b) the acquisition was not or will not be accounted for as a “reverse take-over” as defined in NI 51-102,
  - (c) the business did not or does not constitute a “reportable segment” of the seller, as defined in section 1701 of the CICA Handbook, at the time of acquisition, and
  - (d) the offering memorandum contains alternative disclosure for the business which includes:
    - (i) an operating statement for each of the financial periods for which financial statements would, but for this section, be required under C.4, presenting for the business, at a minimum, the following line items:
      - A) gross revenue,
      - B) royalty expenses,
      - C) production costs, and
      - D) operating income,

The operating statement for the most recently completed financial period referred to in C.4(b)(i) must be audited.

- (ii) a description of the property or properties and the interest acquired by the issuer,
- (iii) information with respect to the estimated reserves and related future net revenue attributable to the business, the material assumptions used in

preparing the estimates and the identity and relationship to the issuer or to the seller of the person who prepared the estimates,

- (iv) actual production volumes of the property for the most recently completed year, and
  - (v) estimated production volumes of the property for the first year reflected in the estimate disclosed under D.4(d)(iv).
5. Financial statements for a business that is an interest in an oil and gas property, or for the acquisition or proposed acquisition by an issuer of a property, are not required to be audited if during the 12 months preceding the date of acquisition or the proposed date of acquisition, the daily average production of the property on a barrel of oil equivalent basis (with gas converted to oil in the ratio of six thousand cubic feet of gas being the equivalent of one barrel of oil) is less than 20 per cent of the total daily average production of the seller for the same or similar periods and:
- (i) despite reasonable efforts during the purchase negotiations, the issuer was prohibited from including in the purchase agreement the rights to obtain an audited operating statement of the property,
  - (ii) the purchase agreement includes representations and warranties by the seller that the amounts presented in the operating statement agree to the seller's books and records, and
  - (iii) the offering memorandum discloses
    - 1. that the issuer was unable to obtain an audited operating statement,
    - 2. the reasons for that inability,
    - 3. the fact that the purchase agreement includes the representations and warranties referred to in D.5(b)(ii), and
    - 4. that the results presented in the operating statements may have been materially different if the statements had been audited.

**Form 45-106F3**  
*Offering Memorandum for Qualifying Issuers*

**Date:** [Insert the date from the certificate page.]

**The Issuer**

Name:

Head office:

Address:

Phone #:

E-mail address:

Fax #:

Where currently listed or quoted? [e.g., TSX/TSX Venture Exchange]

Jurisdictions in which the issuer is a reporting issuer:

**The Offering**

Securities offered:

Price per security:

Minimum/Maximum offering: [If there is no minimum state in bold: **“There is no minimum.”** and also state in bold type: **“You may be the only purchaser.”**]

State in bold type: **Funds available under the offering may not be sufficient to accomplish our proposed objectives.**

Minimum subscription amount: [State the minimum amount each investor must invest, or state “There is no minimum subscription amount an investor must invest.”]

Payment terms:

Proposed closing date(s):

Income Tax consequences: “There are important tax consequences to these securities. See item 6.” [If income tax consequences are not material, delete this item.]

Selling agent? [Yes/No. If yes, state “See item 7”. The name of the selling agent may also be stated.]

**Resale restrictions**

State: “You will be restricted from selling your securities for 4 months and a day. See item 10”.

**Purchaser’s rights**

State: “You have 2 business days to cancel your agreement to purchase these securities. If there is a misrepresentation in this offering memorandum, you have the right to sue either for damages or to cancel the agreement. See item 11.”

State in bold type:

**“No securities regulatory authority or regulator has assessed the merits of these securities or reviewed this offering memorandum. Any representation to the contrary is an offence. This is a risky investment. See item 8.”**

[All of the above information must appear on a single cover page.]

## **Item 1: Use of Available Funds**

**1.1 Available Funds** - Using the following table, disclose the funds available as a result of the offering. If the issuer plans to combine additional sources of funding with the available funds from the offering to achieve its principal capital-raising purpose, please provide details about each additional source of funding. If there is no minimum offering, state “\$0” as the minimum.

Disclose also the amount of any working capital deficiency, if any, of the issuer as at a date not more than 30 days prior to the date of the offering memorandum. If the working capital deficiency will not be eliminated by the use of available funds, state how the issuer intends to eliminate or manage the deficiency.

		Assuming min. offering	Assuming max. offering
A	Amount to be raised by this offering	\$	\$
B	Selling commissions and fees	\$	\$
C	Estimated offering costs (e.g., legal, accounting, audit)	\$	\$
D	Available funds: $D = A - (B+C)$	\$	\$
E.	Additional sources of funding required	\$	\$
F.	Working capital deficiency	\$	\$
H.	Total: $H = (D+E) - F$	\$	\$

**1.2 Use of Available Funds** - Using the following table, provide a detailed breakdown of how the issuer will use the available funds. If any of the available funds will be paid to an insider, associate or affiliate of the issuer, disclose in a note to the table the name of the insider, associate or affiliate, the relationship to the issuer, and the amount. If the issuer has a working capital deficiency, disclose the portion, if any, of the available funds to be applied against the working capital deficiency. If more than 10% of the available funds will be used by the issuer to pay debt and the issuer incurred the debt within the two preceding financial years, describe why the debt was incurred.

Description of intended use of available funds listed in order of priority.	Assuming min. offering	Assuming max. offering
	\$	\$
	\$	\$
Total: Equal to G in the Funds table above	\$	\$

**1.3 Reallocation** - The available funds must be used for the purposes disclosed in the offering memorandum. The board of directors can reallocate the proceeds to other uses only for sound business reasons. If the available funds may be reallocated, include the following statement:

“We intend to spend the available funds as stated. We will reallocate funds only for sound business reasons.”

**1.4 Insufficient Funds** - If applicable, disclose that the funds available as a result of the offering either may not or will not be sufficient to accomplish all of the issuer’s proposed objectives and that there is no assurance that alternative financing will be available. If alternative financing has been arranged, disclose the amount, source and any outstanding conditions that must be satisfied.

**Item 2: Information About** [name of issuer or other term used to refer to issuer]

**2.1 Business Summary** - Briefly (in one or two paragraphs) describe the business intended to be carried on by the issuer over the next 12 months. State whether this represents a change of business. The disclosure must provide sufficient information to enable a prospective purchaser to make an informed investment decision. If the issuer is a non-resource issuer, describe the products that the issuer is or will be developing or producing and the stage of development of each of the products. If the issuer is a resource issuer, state: whether the issuer’s principal properties are primarily in the exploration or in the development or production stage; what resources the issuer is engaged in exploring, developing or producing; and the locations of the issuer’s principal properties. A resource issuer who discloses information about its oil and gas activities must follow General Instruction A-9 of this Form.

**2.2 Existing Documents Incorporated by Reference** - State:

“Information has been incorporated by reference into this offering memorandum from documents listed in the table below, which have been filed with securities regulatory authorities or regulators in Canada. The documents incorporated by reference are available for viewing on the SEDAR website at [www.sedar.com](http://www.sedar.com). In addition, copies of

the documents may be obtained on request without charge from [insert complete address and telephone and the name of a contact person].

Documents listed in the table and information provided in those documents are not incorporated by reference to the extent that their contents are modified or superseded by a statement in this offering memorandum or in any other subsequently filed document that is also incorporated by reference in this offering memorandum.”

Using the following table, list all of the documents incorporated by reference (as required by Instruction D.1):

Description of document (In the case of material change reports, provide a brief description of the nature of the material change)	Date of document

**2.3 Existing Documents Not Incorporated by Reference - State:**

“Other documents available on the SEDAR website (for example, most press releases, take-over bid circulars, prospectuses and rights offering circulars) are not incorporated by reference into this offering memorandum unless they are specifically referenced in the table above. Your rights as described in item 11 of this offering memorandum apply only in respect of information contained in this offering memorandum and documents or information incorporated by reference.”

**2.4 Existing Information Not Incorporated by Reference -** Certain specified information (as outlined in Instruction D.2) contained in the documents incorporated by reference may be, but is not required to be, incorporated by reference into the offering memorandum. If the issuer does not wish to incorporate that information into the offering memorandum, the issuer must state that and include a statement in the offering memorandum identifying:

- (a) the information that is not being incorporated by reference, and
- (b) the document in which the information is contained.

**2.5 Future Documents Not Incorporated by Reference - State:**

“Documents filed after the date of this offering memorandum are not deemed to be incorporated into this offering memorandum. However, if you subscribe for securities and an event occurs, or there is a change in our business or affairs, that makes the certificate to this offering memorandum no longer true, we will provide you with an update of this offering memorandum, including a newly dated and signed certificate, and will not accept your subscription until you have re-signed the agreement to purchase the securities.”

**Item 3: Interests of Directors, Executive Officers, Promoters and Principal Holders**

**3.1** Using the following table, provide information about each director, executive officer, promoter and each person who, directly or indirectly, beneficially owns or controls 10% or more of any class of voting securities of the issuer (a “principal holder”). If the principal holder is not an individual, state in a note to the table the name of any person or company that, directly or indirectly, beneficially owns or controls more than 50% of the voting rights of the principal holder.

Name and municipality of principal residence	Position(s) with the issuer

**3.2** State: “You can obtain further information about directors and executive officers from [insert the name and date of the document(s) with the most current information, e.g., management information circular, annual information form or material change report].”

**3.3** State: “Current information regarding the securities held by directors, executive officers and principal holders can be obtained from [refer to the SEDI website at [www.sedi.ca](http://www.sedi.ca) or, if information cannot be obtained from the SEDI website, refer to the securities regulatory authority(ies) or regulator(s) from which the information can be obtained, including any website(s)]. [Name of issuer or other term used to refer to issuer] can not guarantee the accuracy of this information.”

**3.4 Loans** - Disclose the principal amount of any debenture or loan, the repayment terms, security, due date and interest rate due to or from the directors, management, promoters and principal holders as at a date not more than 30 days prior to the date of the offering memorandum.

#### Item 4: Capital Structure

Using the following table, provide the required information about outstanding securities of the issuer (including options, warrants and other securities convertible into shares). If necessary, notes to the table may be added to describe the material terms of the securities.

Description of security	Number authorized to be issued	Price per security	Number outstanding as at [a date not more than 30 days prior to the offering memorandum date]	Number outstanding after min. offering	Number outstanding after max. offering

#### Item 5: Securities Offered

**5.1 Terms of Securities** - Describe the material terms of the securities being offered, including:

- (a) voting rights or restrictions on voting,
- (b) conversion or exercise price and date of expiry,
- (c) rights of redemption or retraction, and
- (d) interest rates or dividend rates.

#### **5.2 Subscription Procedure**

- (a) Describe how a purchaser can subscribe for the securities and the method of payment.
- (b) State that the consideration will be held in trust and the period that it will be held (refer at least to the mandatory two day period).

- (c) Disclose any conditions to closing e.g., receipt of additional funds from other sources. If there is a minimum offering, disclose when consideration will be returned to purchasers if the minimum is not met.

## **Item 6: Income Tax Consequences and RRSP Eligibility**

**6.1** State: “You should consult your own professional advisers to obtain advice on the income tax consequences that apply to you”.

**6.2** If income tax consequences are a material aspect of the securities being offered (e.g., flow-through shares), provide

- (a) a summary of the significant income tax consequences to Canadian residents, and
- (b) the name of the person or company providing the income tax disclosure in (a).

**6.3** Provide advice regarding the RRSP eligibility of the securities and the name of the person or company providing the advice or state “Not all securities are eligible for investment in a registered retirement savings plan (RRSP). You should consult your own professional advisers to obtain advice on the RRSP eligibility of these securities.”

## **Item 7: Compensation Paid to Sellers and Finders**

If any person or company has or will receive any compensation (e.g., commission, corporate finance fee or finder’s fee) in connection with the offering, provide the following information to the extent applicable:

- (a) a description of each type of compensation and the estimated amount to be paid for each type,
- (b) if a commission is being paid, the percentage that the commission will represent of the gross proceeds of the offering (assuming both the minimum and maximum offering),
- (c) details of any broker’s warrants or agent’s option (including number of securities under option, exercise price and expiry date), and

- (d) if any portion of the compensation will be paid in securities, details of the securities (including number, type and, if options or warrants, the exercise price and expiry date).

## **Item 8: Risk Factors**

Describe in order of importance, starting with the most important, the risk factors material to the issuer that a reasonable investor would consider important in deciding whether to buy the issuer's securities.

Risk factors will generally fall into the following three categories:

- (a) Investment Risk - risks that are specific to the securities being offered. Some examples include
- arbitrary determination of price,
  - no market or an illiquid market for the securities,
  - resale restrictions, and
  - subordination of debt securities.
- (b) Issuer Risk - risks that are specific to the issuer. Some examples include
- insufficient funds to accomplish the issuer's business objectives,
  - no history or a limited history of sales or profits,
  - lack of specific management or technical expertise,
  - management's regulatory and business track record,
  - dependence on key employees, suppliers or agreements,
  - dependence on financial viability of guarantor,
  - pending and outstanding litigation, and
  - political risk factors.
- (c) Industry Risk - risks faced by the issuer because of the industry in which it operates. Some examples include
- environmental and industry regulation,
  - product obsolescence, and
  - competition.

## **Item 9: Reporting Obligations**

**9.1** Disclose the documents that will be sent to purchasers on an annual or on-going basis.

**9.2** If corporate or securities information about the issuer is available from a government, securities regulatory authority or regulator, SRO or quotation and trade reporting system, disclose where that information can be located (including website address).

## **Item 10: Resale Restrictions**

For trades in Alberta, British Columbia, New Brunswick, Newfoundland and Labrador, Northwest Territories, Nova Scotia, Nunavut, Prince Edward Island, Québec, Saskatchewan and Yukon, state:

“These securities will be subject to a number of resale restrictions, including a restriction on trading. Until the restriction on trading expires, you will not be able to trade the securities unless you comply with an exemption from the prospectus and registration requirements under securities legislation.

Unless permitted under securities legislation, you cannot trade the securities before the date that is 4 months and a day after the distribution date.”

## **Item 11: Purchasers’ Rights**

State the following:

“If you purchase these securities you will have certain rights, some of which are described below. For information about your rights you should consult a lawyer.

**(1) Two -Day Cancellation Right** - You can cancel your agreement to purchase these securities. To do so, you must send a notice to us by midnight on the 2nd business day after you sign the agreement to buy the securities.

**(2) Statutory Rights of Action in the Event of a Misrepresentation** - [Insert this section only if the securities legislation of the jurisdiction in which the trade occurs provides purchasers with statutory rights in the event of a misrepresentation in an offering memorandum. Modify the language, if necessary, to conform to the statutory rights.] If there is a misrepresentation in this offering memorandum, you have a statutory right to sue:

- (a) [name of issuer or other term used to refer to issuer] to cancel your agreement to buy these securities, or
- (b) for damages against [state the name of issuer or other term used to refer to issuer and the title of any other person or company against whom the rights are available].

This statutory right to sue is available to you whether or not you relied on the misrepresentation. However, there are various defences available to the persons or companies that you have a right to sue. In particular, they have a defence if you knew of the misrepresentation when you purchased the securities.

If you intend to rely on the rights described in (a) or (b) above, you must do so within strict time limitations. You must commence your action to cancel the agreement within [state time period provided by the securities legislation]. You must commence your action for damages within [state time period provided by the securities legislation].

**(3) Contractual Rights of Action in the Event of a Misrepresentation** - [Insert this section only if the securities legislation of the jurisdiction in which the purchaser is resident does not provide purchasers with statutory rights in the event of a misrepresentation in an offering memorandum.] If there is a misrepresentation in this offering memorandum, you have a contractual right to sue [name of issuer or other term used to refer to issuer]:

- (a) to cancel your agreement to buy these securities, or
- (b) for damages.

This contractual right to sue is available to you whether or not you relied on the misrepresentation. However, in an action for damages, the amount you may recover will not exceed the price that you paid for your securities and will not include any part of the damages that [name of issuer or other term used to refer to issuer] proves does not represent the depreciation in value of the securities resulting from the misrepresentation. [Name of issuer or other term used to refer to issuer] has a defence if it proves that you knew of the misrepresentation when you purchased the securities.

If you intend to rely on the rights described in (a) or (b) above, you must do so within strict time limitations. You must commence your action to cancel the agreement within 180 days after you signed the agreement to purchase the securities. You must commence your action for damages

within the earlier of 180 days after learning of the misrepresentation and 3 years after you signed the agreement to purchase the securities.”

**Item 12: Date and Certificate**

State the following on the certificate page of the offering memorandum:

“Dated [insert the date the certificate page of the offering memorandum is signed].

**This offering memorandum does not contain a misrepresentation.”**

**Instructions for Completing**  
**Form 45-106F3**  
*Offering Memorandum for Qualifying Issuers*

**A. General Instructions**

1. Only a “qualifying issuer” may use this form.
2. An issuer using this form to draft an offering memorandum must incorporate by reference certain parts of its existing continuous disclosure base. An issuer that does not want to do this must use Form 45-106F2 *Offering Memorandum for Non-Qualifying Issuers*.
3. Draft the offering memorandum so that it is easy to read and understand. Be concise and use clear, plain language. Avoid technical terms. If technical terms are necessary, provide definitions.
4. Address the items required by the form in the order set out in the form. However, it is not necessary to provide disclosure about an item that does not apply.
5. The issuer may include additional information in the offering memorandum other than that specifically required by the form. The offering memorandum is generally not required to contain the level of detail and extent of disclosure required by a prospectus. However, an offering memorandum must provide a prospective purchaser with sufficient information to make an informed investment decision.
6. The issuer may wrap the offering memorandum around a prospectus or similar document. However, all matters required to be disclosed by the offering memorandum must be addressed and the offering memorandum must provide a cross-reference to the page number or heading in the wrapped document where the relevant information is contained. The certificate to the offering memorandum must be modified to indicate that the offering memorandum, including the document around which it is wrapped, does not contain a misrepresentation.
7. It is an offence to make a misrepresentation in the offering memorandum. This applies both to information that is required by the form and to additional information that is provided. Include particulars of any material facts, which have not been disclosed under any of the Item numbers and for which failure to disclose would constitute a misrepresentation in the offering memorandum. Refer also to section 3.8(3) of Companion Policy 45-106CP for additional information.
8. Refer to National Instrument 43-101 *Standards of Disclosure for Mineral Projects* (NI 43-101) when disclosing scientific or technical information for a mineral project of the issuer.
9. If an oil and gas issuer is disclosing information about its oil and gas activities, it must ensure that the information is disclosed in accordance with Part 4 and Part 5 of National

Instrument 51-101 Standards of Disclosure for Oil and Gas Activities (NI 51-101). Under section 5.3 of NI 51-101, disclosure of reserves or resources must be consistent with the reserves and resources terminology and categories set out in the Canadian Oil and Gas Evaluation Handbook. For the purposes of this instruction, references to reporting issuer in Part 4 and Part 5 of NI 51-101 will be deemed to include all issuers.

10. Securities legislation restricts what can be told to investors about the issuer's intent to list or quote securities on an exchange or market. Refer to applicable securities legislation before making any such statements.
11. If an issuer uses this form in connection with a distribution under an exemption other than section 2.9 (*offering memorandum*) of National Instrument 45-106 *Prospectus and Registration Exemptions*, the issuer must modify the disclosure in item 12 to correctly describe the purchaser's rights. If a purchaser does not have statutory or contractual rights of action in the event of a misrepresentation in the offering memorandum, that fact must be stated in bold on the face page.
12. During the course of a distribution of securities, any material forward-looking information disseminated must only be that which is set out in the offering memorandum. If an extract of FOFI, as defined in NI 51-102 *Continuous Disclosure Obligations* (NI 51-102), is disseminated, the extract or summary must be reasonably balanced and have a cautionary note in boldface stating that the information presented is not complete and that complete FOFI is included in the offering memorandum.

## **B. Financial Statements**

1. All financial statements incorporated by reference into the offering memorandum must comply with NI 51-102 and National Instrument 52-107 *Acceptable Accounting Principles, Auditing Standards and Reporting Currency*.
2. Forward-looking information included in an offering memorandum must comply with section 4A.2 of NI 51-102 and must include the disclosure described in section 4A.3 of NI 51-102. In addition to the foregoing, FOFI or a financial outlook, each as defined in NI 51-102, included in an offering memorandum must comply with Part 4B of NI 51-102. Additional guidance may be found in the companion policy to NI 51-102.

## **C. Required Updates to the Offering Memorandum**

1. If the offering memorandum does not incorporate by reference the issuer's AIF, and audited financial statements for its most recently completed financial year, update the offering memorandum for any financial statements that are required to be filed prior to the distribution to incorporate by reference the documents as soon as the documents are filed on SEDAR.
2. Except for documents referred to in C.1, the offering memorandum does not have to be updated to incorporate by reference interim financial statements or other documents

referred to in D.1 unless it is necessary to do so to prevent the offering memorandum from containing a misrepresentation.

**D. Information about the Issuer**

1. *Existing Documents Incorporated by Reference* - In addition to any other document that an issuer may choose to incorporate by reference, the issuer must incorporate the following documents:

- (a) the issuer's AIF for the issuer's most recently completed financial year for which annual financial statements are either required to be filed or have been filed,
- (b) material change reports, except confidential material change reports, filed since the end of the financial year in respect of which the issuer's AIF is filed,
- (c) the interim financial statements for the issuer's most recently completed interim period for which the issuer prepares interim financial statements that are required to be filed or have been filed and which ends after the most recently completed financial year referred to in (d),
- (d) the comparative financial statements, together with the accompanying auditor's report, for the issuer's most recently completed financial year for which annual financial statements are required to be filed or have been filed,
- (e) if, before the offering memorandum is filed, financial information about the issuer for a financial period more recent than the period for which financial statements are required under D.1(c) and (d) is publicly disseminated by, or on behalf of, the issuer through news release or otherwise, the content of the news release or public communication,
- (f) management's discussion and analysis (MD&A) as required under NI 51-102 for the period specified in D.1(c) and D.1(d),
- (g) each business acquisition report required to be filed under NI 51-102 for acquisitions completed since the beginning of the financial year in respect of which the issuer's AIF is filed, unless the issuer incorporated the business acquisition report by reference into its AIF for its most recently completed financial year for which annual financial statements are either required to be filed

or have been filed, or incorporated at least 9 months of the acquired business or related businesses operations into the issuer's most recent audited financial statements,

- (h) any information circular filed by the issuer since the beginning of the financial year in respect of which the issuer's most recent AIF is filed, other than an information circular prepared in connection with an annual general meeting if the issuer has filed and incorporated by reference an information circular for a subsequent annual general meeting,
  - (i) if the issuer has oil and gas activities, as defined in National Instrument 51-101 *Standards of Disclosure for Oil and Gas Activities*, the most recent Form 51-101F1, Form 51-101F2 and Form 51-101F3, filed by an SEC issuer, unless
    - (i) the issuer's current AIF is in the form of Form 51-102F2; or
    - (ii) the issuer is otherwise exempted from the requirements of NI 51-101,
  - (j) any other disclosure document which the issuer has filed pursuant to an undertaking to a provincial and territorial securities regulatory authority or regulator since the beginning of the financial year in respect of which the issuer's most recent AIF is filed, and
  - (k) any other disclosure document of the type listed above that the issuer has filed pursuant to an exemption from any requirement under securities legislation since the beginning of the financial year in respect of which the issuer's most recent AIF is filed.
2. *Mineral Property* – If a material part of the funds available as a result of the distribution is to be expended on a particular mineral property and if the issuer's most recent AIF does not contain the disclosure required under section 5.4 of Form 51-102F2 for the property or that disclosure is inadequate or incorrect due to changes, disclose the information required under section 5.4 of Form 51-102F2.

An issuer may incorporate any additional document provided that the document is available for viewing on the SEDAR website and that, on request by a purchaser, the issuer provides a copy of the document to the purchaser, without charge.

Form 45-106F4

WARNING

**Risk Acknowledgement**

- I acknowledge that this is a risky investment.
- I am investing entirely at my own risk.
- No securities regulatory authority or regulator has evaluated or endorsed the merits of these securities or the disclosure in the offering memorandum.
- The person selling me these securities is not registered with a securities regulatory authority or regulator and has no duty to tell me whether this investment is suitable for me. *[Instruction: Delete if sold by registrant]*
- I will not be able to sell these securities except in very limited circumstances. I may never be able to sell these securities. *[Instruction: Delete if issuer is reporting]*
- The securities are redeemable, but I may only be able to redeem them in limited circumstances. *[Instruction: Delete if securities are not redeemable]*
- I will not be able to sell these securities for 4 months. *[Instruction: Delete if issuer is not reporting or if the purchaser is a Manitoba resident]*
- I could lose all the money I invest.

I am investing \$\_\_\_\_\_ [total consideration] in total; this includes any amount I am obliged to pay in future. \_\_\_\_\_ [name of issuer] will pay \$\_\_\_\_\_ [amount of fee or commission ] of this to \_\_\_\_\_ [name of person selling the securities] as a fee or commission.

**I acknowledge that this is a risky investment and that I could lose all the money I invest.**

\_\_\_\_\_  
Date

\_\_\_\_\_  
Signature of Purchaser

\_\_\_\_\_  
Print name of Purchaser

Sign 2 copies of this document. Keep one copy for your records.

**You have 2 business days to cancel your purchase** [*Instruction: The issuer must complete this section before giving the form to the purchaser.*]

To do so, send a notice to [name of issuer] stating that you want to cancel your purchase. You must send the notice before midnight on the 2<sup>nd</sup> business day after you sign the agreement to purchase the securities. You can send the notice by fax or email or deliver it in person to [name of issuer] at its business address. Keep a copy of the notice for your records.

Issuer Name and Address:

Fax:

E-mail:

### **You are buying Exempt Market Securities**

They are called *exempt market securities* because two parts of securities law do not apply to them. If an issuer wants to sell *exempt market securities* to you:

- the issuer does not have to give you a prospectus (a document that describes the investment in detail and gives you some legal protections), and
- the securities do not have to be sold by an investment dealer registered with a securities regulatory authority or regulator.

There are restrictions on your ability to resell *exempt market securities*. *Exempt market securities* are more risky than other securities.

**You will receive an offering memorandum** Read the offering memorandum carefully because it has important information about the issuer and its securities. Keep the offering memorandum because you have rights based on it. Talk to a lawyer for details about these rights.

**You will not receive advice** [*Instruction: Delete if sold by registrant*]

You will not get professional advice about whether the investment is suitable for you. But you can still seek that advice from a registered adviser or registered dealer. In Alberta, Manitoba, Northwest Territories, Nunavut, Prince Edward Island, Québec, Saskatchewan and Yukon to qualify as an eligible investor, you may be required to obtain that advice.

**The securities you are buying are not listed** [*Instruction: Delete if securities are listed or quoted*]

The securities you are buying are not listed on any stock exchange, and they may never be listed. You may never be able to sell these securities.

**The issuer of your securities is a non-reporting issuer** *[Instruction: Delete if issuer is reporting]*

A *non-reporting issuer* does not have to publish financial information or notify the public of changes in its business. You may not receive ongoing information about this issuer.

For more information on the exempt market, call your local securities regulatory authority or regulator. *[Instruction: Insert the name, telephone number and website address of the securities regulatory authority or regulator in the jurisdiction in which you are selling these securities.]*

***[Instruction: The purchaser must sign 2 copies of this form. The purchaser and the issuer must each receive a signed copy.]***

W  
A  
R  
N  
I  
N  
G

**Risk Acknowledgement  
Saskatchewan Close Personal Friends and Close Business Associates**

I acknowledge that this is a risky investment:

- I am investing entirely at my own risk.
- No securities regulatory authority or regulator has evaluated or endorsed the merits of these securities.
- The person selling me these securities is not registered with a securities regulatory authority or regulator and has no duty to tell me whether this investment is suitable for me. *[Instruction: Delete if sold by registrant]*
- I will not be able to sell these securities except in very limited circumstances. I may never be able to sell these securities. *[Instruction: Delete if issuer is reporting]*
- The securities are redeemable, but I may only be able to redeem them in limited circumstances. *[Instruction: Delete if securities are not redeemable]*
- I will not be able to sell these securities for 4 months. *[Instruction: Delete if issuer is not reporting]*
- I could lose all the money I invest.
- I do not have a 2-day right to cancel my purchase of these securities or the statutory rights of action for misrepresentation I would have if I were purchasing the securities under a prospectus. I do have a 2-day right to cancel my purchase of these securities if I receive an amended offering document.

I am investing \$\_\_\_\_\_ [total consideration] in total; this includes any amount I am obliged to pay in future.

I am a **close** personal friend or **close** business associate of \_\_\_\_\_ [state name], who is a \_\_\_\_\_ [state title - founder, director, executive officer or control person] of \_\_\_\_\_ [state name of issuer or its affiliate – if an affiliate state “an affiliate of the issuer” and give the issuer’s name].

I acknowledge that I am purchasing based on my close relationship with \_\_\_\_\_ [state name of founder, director, executive officer or control person] whom I know well enough and for a sufficient period of time to be able to assess her/his capabilities and trustworthiness.

**I acknowledge that this is a risky investment and that I could lose all the money I invest.**

\_\_\_\_\_  
Date

\_\_\_\_\_  
Signature of Purchaser

\_\_\_\_\_  
Print name of Purchaser

Sign 2 copies of this document. Keep one copy for your records.

**You are buying Exempt Market Securities**

They are called *exempt market securities* because two parts of securities law do not apply to them. If an issuer wants to sell *exempt market securities* to you:

- the issuer does not have to give you a prospectus (a document that describes the investment in detail and gives you some legal protections), and
- the securities do not have to be sold by an investment dealer registered with a securities regulatory authority or regulator.

There are restrictions on your ability to resell *exempt market securities*. Exempt market securities are more risky than other securities.

**You may not receive any written information about the issuer or its business**

If you have any questions about the issuer or its business, ask for written clarification before you purchase the securities. You should consult your own professional advisers before investing in the securities.

**You will not receive advice** [*Instruction: Delete if sold by registrant*]

Unless you consult your own professional advisers, you will not get professional advice about whether the investment is suitable for you.

**The issuer of your securities is a non-reporting issuer** [*Instruction: Delete if issuer is reporting*]

A *non-reporting issuer* does not have to publish financial information or notify the public of changes in its business. You may not receive ongoing information about this issuer. You can only sell the securities of a non-reporting issuer in very limited circumstances. You may never be able to sell these securities.

**The securities you are buying are not listed** [*Instruction: Delete if securities are listed or quoted*]

The securities you are buying are not listed on any stock exchange, and they may never be listed. There may be no market for these securities. You may never be able to sell these securities.

For more information on the exempt market, refer to the Saskatchewan Financial Services Commission's website at <http://www.sfsc.gov.sk.ca>.

[*Instruction: The purchaser must sign 2 copies of this form. The purchaser and the issuer must each receive a signed copy.*]

## **APPENDIX C-2**

### **Amended and Restated Companion Policy 45-106CP *Prospectus and Registration Exemptions***

#### **PART 1 - INTRODUCTION**

- 1.1 Purpose
- 1.2 All trades are subject to securities legislation
- 1.3 Multi-jurisdictional distributions
- 1.4 Other exemptions
- 1.5 Discretionary relief
- 1.6 Advisers
- 1.7 Underwriters
- 1.8 Persons created to use exemptions (“syndication”)
- 1.9 Responsibility for compliance
- 1.10 Prohibited activities

#### **PART 2 - INTERPRETATION**

- 2.1 Definitions
- 2.2 Executive officer (“policy making function”)
- 2.3 Directors, executive officers and officers of non-corporate issuers
- 2.4 Founder
- 2.5 Investment fund
- 2.6 Affiliate, control and related entity
- 2.7 Close personal friend
- 2.8 Close business associate
- 2.9 Indirect interest

#### **PART 3 - CAPITAL RAISING EXEMPTIONS**

- 3.1 Soliciting purchasers
- 3.2 Soliciting purchasers - Newfoundland and Labrador and Ontario
- 3.3 Advertising
- 3.4 Restrictions on finder’s fees or commissions
  - 3.4.1 Reinvestment plans
- 3.5 Accredited investor
- 3.6 Private issuer
- 3.7 Family, friends and business associates
- 3.8 Offering memorandum
- 3.9 Minimum amount investment

#### **PART 4 - OTHER EXEMPTIONS**

- 4.1 Employee, executive officer, director and consultant exemptions
- 4.2 Business combination and reorganization
- 4.3 Asset acquisition - character of assets to be acquired
- 4.4 Securities for debt – bona fide debt
- 4.5 Take-over bid and issuer bid
- 4.6 Isolated distribution or trade

- 4.7 Mortgages
- 4.8 Not for profit issuer
- 4.9 Exchange contracts

**PART 5 - FORMS**

- 5.1 Report of Exempt Distribution
- 5.2 Forms required under the offering memorandum exemption
- 5.3 Real estate securities
- 5.4 Risk Acknowledgement Form Respecting Close Personal Friends and Close Business Associates – Saskatchewan

**PART 6 - RESALE OF SECURITIES ACQUIRED UNDER AN EXEMPTION**

- 6.1 Resale restrictions

**Companion Policy 45-106CP**  
***Prospectus and Registration Exemptions***

**PART 1 – INTRODUCTION**

National Instrument 45-106 *Prospectus and Registration Exemptions* (“NI 45-106”) provides: (i) exemptions from the prospectus requirement; (ii) exemptions from registration requirements; and (iii) one exemption from the issuer bid requirements.

The registration exemptions in Part 3 of NI 45-106 will not apply in any jurisdiction **six months** after National Instrument 31-103 *Registration Requirements and Exemptions* (“NI 31-103”) comes into force. A subset of registration exemptions will continue to apply after the six month transition period and will be located in NI 31-103.

**1.1 Purpose**

The purpose of this Companion Policy is to help users understand how the provincial and territorial securities regulatory authorities and regulators interpret or apply certain provisions of NI 45-106. This Companion Policy includes explanations, discussion and examples of the application of various parts of NI 45-106.

**1.2 All trades are subject to securities legislation**

The securities legislation of a local jurisdiction applies to any trade in a security in the local jurisdiction, whether or not the issuer of the security is a reporting issuer in that jurisdiction. Likewise, the definition of “trade” in securities legislation includes any act, advertisement, solicitation, conduct or negotiation directly or indirectly in furtherance of a trade. A person who engages in these activities, or other trading activities, must comply with the securities legislation of each jurisdiction in which the trade occurs.

**1.3 Multi-jurisdictional distributions**

A distribution can occur in more than one jurisdiction. If it does, the person conducting the distribution must comply with the securities legislation of each jurisdiction in which the distribution occurs. For example, a distribution from a person in Alberta to a purchaser in British Columbia may be considered a distribution in both jurisdictions.

**1.4 Other exemptions**

In addition to the exemptions in NI 45-106, exemptions may also be available to persons under securities legislation of each local jurisdiction. The CSA has issued CSA Staff Notice 45-304 that lists other exemptions available under securities legislation.

**1.5 Discretionary relief**

In addition to the exemptions contained in NI 45-106 and those available under securities legislation of a local jurisdiction, the securities regulatory authority or regulator in each jurisdiction has the discretion to grant exemptions from the prospectus requirement and the registration requirements.

## **1.6 Advisers**

Subsection 1.5(2) of NI 45-106 provides that an exemption from the dealer registration requirement in NI 45-106 is deemed to be an exemption from the underwriter registration requirement. However, it is not deemed to be an exemption from the adviser registration requirement. The adviser registration requirement is distinct from the dealer registration requirement. In general terms, persons engaged in the business of, or holding themselves out as being in the business of, providing investment advice are required to be registered, or exempted from registration, under applicable securities legislation. Accordingly, only advisers registered or exempted from registration as advisers may act as advisers in connection with a trade made under NI 45-106.

## **1.7 Underwriters**

Underwriters should not sell securities to the public without providing a prospectus. If an underwriter purchases securities with a view to distribution, the underwriter should purchase the securities under the prospectus exemption in section 2.33 of NI 45-106. If the underwriter purchases securities under this exemption, the first trade in the securities will be a distribution. As a result, the underwriter will only be able to resell the securities if it can rely on another exemption from the prospectus requirement, or if a prospectus is delivered to the purchasers of the securities.

There may be legitimate transactions where a dealer purchases securities under a prospectus exemption other than the exemption in section 2.33 of NI 45-106; however, these transactions are only appropriate when the dealer purchases the securities with investment intent and not with a view to distribution.

If a dealer purchases securities through a series of exempt transactions in order to avoid the obligation to deliver a prospectus, the transactions will be viewed as a whole to determine if they constitute a distribution. If a transaction is in effect an indirect distribution, a prospectus will be required to qualify the sale of the securities despite the fact that each interim step in the transaction could otherwise be completed under a prospectus exemption. Such indirect distributions cannot be legitimately structured under NI 45-106.

## **1.8 Persons created to use exemptions (“syndication”)**

Sections 2.3(5), 3.3(5), 2.4(1), 3.4(1), 2.9(3), 3.9(3), 2.10(2) and 3.10(2) of NI 45-106 specifically prohibit syndications. A distribution or a trade of securities to a person that had no pre-existing purpose and is created or used solely to purchase or hold securities under exemptions (a “syndicate”) may be considered a distribution of, or trade in, securities to the persons beneficially owning or controlling the syndicate.

For example, a newly formed company with 15 shareholders is set up with the intention of purchasing \$150 000 worth of securities under the minimum amount investment exemption. Each shareholder of the newly formed company contributes \$10 000. In this situation the shareholders of the newly formed company are indirectly investing \$10 000 when the exemption requires that they each invest \$150 000. Consequently, both the newly formed company and its shareholders

may need to comply with the requirements of the minimum amount investment exemption, or find an alternative exemption to rely on.

Syndication related concerns should not ordinarily arise if the purchaser under the exemption is a corporation, syndicate, partnership or other form of entity that is pre-existing and has a bona fide purpose other than investing in the securities being sold. However, it is an inappropriate use of these exemptions to indirectly distribute or trade securities when the exemption is not available to directly distribute or trade securities to each person in the syndicate.

### **1.9 Responsibility for compliance**

A person distributing or trading securities is responsible for determining when an exemption is available. In determining whether an exemption is available, a person may rely on factual representations by a purchaser, provided that the person has no reasonable grounds to believe that those representations are false. However, the person distributing or trading securities is responsible for determining whether, given the facts available, the exemption is available. Generally, a person distributing or trading securities under an exemption should retain all necessary documents that show the person properly relied upon the exemption.

For example, an issuer distributing securities to a close personal friend of a director could require that the purchaser provide a signed statement describing the purchaser's relationship with the director. On the basis of that factual information, the issuer could determine whether the purchaser is a close personal friend of the director for the purposes of a family, friends and business associates exemption. The issuer should not rely merely on a representation: "I am a close personal friend of a director". Likewise, under the accredited investor exemptions, the seller must have a reasonable belief that the purchaser understands the meaning of the definition of "accredited investor". Prior to discussing the particulars of the investment with the purchaser, the seller should discuss with the purchaser the various criteria for qualifying as an accredited investor and whether the purchaser meets any of the criteria.

It is not appropriate for a person to assume an exemption is available. For instance a seller should not accept a form of subscription agreement that only states that the purchaser is an accredited investor. Rather the seller should request that the purchaser provide the details on how they fit within the accredited investor definition.

### **1.10 Prohibited activities**

Securities legislation in certain jurisdictions prohibits any person from making certain representations to a purchaser of securities, including an undertaking about the future value or price of the securities. In certain jurisdictions, these provisions also prohibit a person from making any statement that the person knows or ought reasonably to know is a misrepresentation. These prohibitions apply whether or not a trade is made under an exemption.

Misrepresentation is defined in securities legislation. The use of exaggeration, innuendo or ambiguity in an oral or written representation about a material fact, or other deceptive behaviour relating to a material fact, might be a misrepresentation.

## **PART 2 – INTERPRETATION**

### **2.1 Definitions**

Unless defined in NI 45-106, terms used in NI 45-106 have the meaning given to them in local securities legislation or in National Instrument 14-101 *Definitions*.

The term “contract of insurance” in the definition of “financial assets” has the meaning assigned to it in the legislation for the jurisdiction referenced in Appendix A of NI 45-106.

### **2.2 Executive officer (“policy making function”)**

The definition of “executive officer” in NI 45-106 is based on the definition of the same term contained in National Instrument 51-102 *Continuous Disclosure Obligations* (“NI 51-102”).

Paragraph (c) of the definition "executive officer" includes individuals that are not employed by the issuer or any of its subsidiaries, but who perform a policy-making function in respect of the issuer.

The definition includes someone who “performs a policy-making function” in respect of the issuer. The CSA is of the view that an individual who “performs a policy-making function” in respect of an issuer is someone who is responsible, solely or jointly with others, for setting the direction of the issuer and is sufficiently knowledgeable of the business and affairs of the issuer so as to be able to respond meaningfully to inquiries from investors about the issuer.

### **2.3 Directors, executive officers and officers of non-corporate issuers**

The term “director” is defined in NI 45-106 and it includes, for non-corporate issuers, individuals who perform functions similar to those of a director of a company.

When the term “officer” is used in NI 45-106, or any of the NI 45-106 forms, a non-corporate issuer should refer to the definitions in securities legislation. Securities legislation in most jurisdictions defines “officer” to include any individual acting in a capacity similar to that of an officer of a company. Therefore, in most jurisdictions, non-corporate issuers must determine which individuals are acting in capacities similar to that of directors and officers of corporate issuers, for the purposes of complying with NI 45-106 and its forms.

For example, the determination of who is acting in the capacity of a director or executive officer may be important where a person intends to distribute or trade securities of a limited partnership under an exemption that is conditional on a relationship with a director or executive officer. The person must conclude that the purchaser has the necessary relationship with an individual who is acting in a capacity with the limited partnership that is similar to that of a director or executive officer of a company.

### **2.4 Founder**

The definition of “founder” includes a requirement that, at the time of the distribution of, or trade in, a security the person be actively involved in the business of the issuer. Accordingly, a person who takes the initiative in founding, organizing or substantially reorganizing the business of the

issuer within the meaning of the definition but subsequently ceases to be actively engaged in the day to day operations of the business of the issuer would no longer be a “founder” for the purposes of NI 45-106, regardless of the person’s degree of prior involvement with the issuer or the extent of the person’s continued ownership interest in the issuer.

## **2.5 Investment fund**

Generally, the definition of “investment fund” would not include a trust or other entity that issues securities that entitle the holder to net cash flows generated by: (i) an underlying business owned by the trust or other entity, or (ii) the income-producing properties owned by the trust or other entity. Examples of trusts or other entities that are not included in the definition are business income trusts, real estate investment trusts and royalty trusts.

## **2.6 Affiliate, control and related entity**

### **(1) Affiliate**

Section 1.3 of NI 45-106 contains rules for determining whether persons are affiliates for the purposes of NI 45-106, which may be different than those contained in other securities legislation.

### **(2) Control**

The concept of control has two different interpretations in NI 45-106. For the purposes of Division 4 of Part 2 and Division 4 of Part 3 (trades to employees, executive officers, directors and consultants), the interpretation of control is contained in section 2.23(1) and section 3.23(1), respectively. For the purposes of the rest of NI 45-106, the interpretation of control is found in section 1.4 of NI 45-106. The reason for having two different interpretations of control is that the exemptions for distributions of, and trades in, securities to employees, executive officers, directors and consultants require a broader concept of control than is considered necessary for the rest of NI 45-106 to accommodate the issuance of compensation securities in a wide variety of business structures.

## **2.7 Close personal friend**

For the purposes of both the private issuer exemptions and the family, friends and business associates exemptions, a “close personal friend” of a director, executive officer, founder or control person of an issuer is an individual who knows the director, executive officer, founder or control person well enough and has known them for a sufficient period of time to be in a position to assess their capabilities and trustworthiness. The term “close personal friend” can include a family member who is not already specifically identified in the exemptions if the family member satisfies the criteria described above.

The relationship between the individual and the director, executive officer, founder or control person must be direct. For example, the exemption is not available to a close personal friend of a close personal friend of a director of the issuer.

An individual is not a close personal friend solely because the individual is:

- (a) a relative,
- (b) a member of the same organization, association or religious group, or
- (c) a client, customer, former client or former customer.

## **2.8 Close business associate**

For the purposes of both the private issuer exemptions and the family, friends and business associates exemptions, a “close business associate” is an individual who has had sufficient prior business dealings with a director, executive officer, founder or control person of the issuer to be in a position to assess their capabilities and trustworthiness.

An individual is not a close business associate solely because the individual is:

- (a) a member of the same organization, association or religious group, or
- (b) a client, customer, former client or former customer.

The relationship between the individual and the director, executive officer, founder or control person must be direct. For example, the exemptions are not available for a close business associate of a close business associate of a director of the issuer.

## **2.9 Indirect interest**

Under paragraph (t) of the definition of “accredited investor” in section 1.1 of NI 45-106, an “accredited investor” includes a person in respect of which all of the owners of interests in that person, direct, indirect or beneficial, are accredited investors. The interpretive provision in section 1.2 of NI 45-106 is needed to confirm the meaning of indirect interest in British Columbia.

# **PART 3 – CAPITAL RAISING EXEMPTIONS**

## **3.1 Soliciting purchasers**

Part 2, Division 1, and Part 3, Division 1 (capital raising exemptions) in NI 45-106 do not prohibit the use of registrants, finders, or advertising in any form (for example, internet, e-mail, direct mail, newspaper or magazine) to solicit purchasers under any of the exemptions. However, use of any of these means to find purchasers under the private issuer exemptions in sections 2.4 and 3.4 of NI 45-106, or under the family, friends and business associates exemptions in sections 2.5 and 3.5 of NI 45-106, may give rise to a presumption that the relationship required for use of these exemptions is not present. If, for example, an issuer advertises or pays a commission or finder’s fee to a third party to find purchasers under the family, friends and business associates exemptions, it suggests that the precondition of a close relationship between the purchaser and the issuer may not exist and therefore the issuer cannot rely on these exemptions.

Use of a finder by a private issuer to find an accredited investor, however, would not preclude the private issuer from relying upon the private issuer exemptions, provided that all of the other conditions to those exemptions are met.

Any solicitation activities that aim to identify a particular category of investor should clearly state the kind of investor being sought and the criteria that investors will be required to meet. Any print materials used to find accredited investors, for example, should clearly and prominently state that only accredited investors should respond to the solicitation.

### **3.2 Soliciting purchasers – Newfoundland and Labrador and Ontario**

In Newfoundland and Labrador and Ontario, the exemptions from the dealer registration requirement identified in section 3.01 of NI 45-106 are not available to a “market intermediary”, except as therein provided (or as otherwise provided in local securities legislation – see, for instance, in the case of Ontario, OSC Rule 45-501 *Ontario Prospectus and Registration Exemptions*). Generally, a person is a market intermediary if the person is in the business of trading in securities as principal or agent. In Ontario, the term “market intermediary” is defined in Ontario Securities Commission Rule 14-501 *Definitions*.

The Ontario Securities Commission takes the position that if an issuer retains an employee whose primary job function is to actively solicit members of the public for the purposes of selling the issuer’s securities, the issuer and its employee are in the business of selling securities. Further, if an issuer and its employees are deemed to be in the business of selling securities the Ontario Securities Commission considers both the issuer and its employees to be market intermediaries. This applies whether the issuer and its employees are located in Ontario and solicit members of the public outside of Ontario or whether the issuer and its employees are located outside of Ontario and solicit members of the public in Ontario. Accordingly, in order to be in compliance with securities legislation, these issuers and their employees should be registered under the appropriate category of registration in Ontario.

### **3.3 Advertising**

NI 45-106 does not restrict the use of advertising to solicit or find purchasers. However, issuers and selling security holders should review other securities legislation and securities directions for guidelines, limitations and prohibitions on advertising intended to promote interest in an issuer or its securities. For example, any advertising or marketing communications must not contain a misrepresentation and should be consistent with the issuer’s public disclosure record.

### **3.4 Restrictions on finder’s fees or commissions**

The following restrictions apply with respect to certain exemptions under NI 45-106:

- (1) no commissions or finder’s fees may be paid to directors, officers, founders and control persons in connection with a distribution or a trade made under the private issuer exemptions or the family, friends and business associates exemptions, except in connection with a distribution of, or trade in, a security to an accredited investor under a private issuer exemption; and

- (2) in Northwest Territories, Nunavut and Saskatchewan, only a registered dealer may be paid a commission or finder's fee in connection with a distribution of, or a trade in, a security to a purchaser in one of those jurisdictions under an offering memorandum exemption.

### **3.4.1 Reinvestment plans**

- (1) When is a plan administrator acting "for or on behalf of the issuer"?

Sections 2.2 and 3.2 of NI 45-106 contain prospectus and dealer registration exemptions for distributions of, and trades in, securities by a trustee, custodian or administrator acting for or on behalf of the issuer. If the trustee, custodian or administrator is engaged by the issuer, the plan administrator acts "for or on behalf of the issuer" and therefore falls within the language contained in sections 2.2(1) and 3.2(1) of NI 45-106. The fact that the plan administrator may act on or in accordance with instructions of a plan participant, under the plan, does not preclude the administrator from relying on the exemptions contained in sections 2.2 or 3.2 of NI 45-106.

- (2) Providing a description of material attributes and characteristics of securities

The prospectus and dealer registration reinvestment plan exemptions in sections 2.2(5) and 3.2(5) of NI 45-106 add a requirement, effective September 28, 2009, that if the securities distributed or traded under a reinvestment plan, in reliance upon a reinvestment plan exemption, are of a different class or series than the securities to which the dividend or distribution is attributable, the issuer or plan agent must have provided the plan participants with a description of the material attributes and characteristics of the securities being distributed or traded. An issuer or plan agent with an existing reinvestment plan can satisfy this requirement in a number of ways. If plan participants have previously signed a plan agreement or received a copy of a reinvestment plan that included this information, the issuer or plan agent does not need to take any further action for current plan participants. (Future participants should receive the same type of information before their first trade of a security under the plan.)

If plan participants have not received this information in the past, the issuer or plan agent can provide the required information or a reference to a website where the information is available with other materials sent to holders of that class of securities, for example with proxy materials. Section 8.3.1 of NI 45-106 provides a transition period, allowing the issuer or plan agent to meet this requirement not later than 140 days after the next financial year end of the issuer ending on or after September 28, 2009.

- (3) Interest payments

The exemptions in sections 2.2 and 3.2 of NI 45-106 may be available where a person invests interest payable on debentures or other similar securities into other securities of the issuer. The words "distributions out of earnings...or other sources" cover interest payable on debentures.

### **3.5 Accredited investor**

- (1) Individual qualification – financial tests

An individual is an “accredited investor” for the purposes of NI 45-106 if he or she satisfies, either alone or with a spouse, any of the financial asset test in paragraph (j), the net income test in paragraph (k) or the net asset test in paragraph (l) of the “accredited investor” definition in section 1.1 of NI 45-106.

These branches of the definition are designed to treat spouses as a single investing unit, so that either spouse qualifies as an “accredited investor” if the combined financial assets, net income, or net assets of both spouses exceed the \$1 000 000, \$300 000, or \$5 000 000 thresholds, respectively.

For the purposes of the financial asset test in paragraph (j), “financial assets” are defined in NI 45-106 to mean cash, securities, or a contract of insurance, a deposit or an evidence of a deposit that is not a security for the purposes of securities legislation. These financial assets are generally liquid or relatively easy to liquidate. The value of a purchaser’s personal residence would not be included in a calculation of financial assets. By comparison, the net asset test under paragraph (l) involves a consideration of all of the purchaser’s total assets minus the purchaser’s total liabilities. Accordingly, for the purposes of the net asset test, the calculation of total assets would include the value of a purchaser’s personal residence and the calculation of total liabilities would include the amount of any liability (such as a mortgage) in respect of the purchaser’s personal residence.

If the combined net income of both spouses does not exceed \$300 000, but the net income of one of the spouses exceeds \$200 000, only the spouse whose net income exceeds \$200 000 qualifies as an accredited investor.

(2) Bright-line standards – individuals

The monetary thresholds in the “accredited investor” definition are intended to create “bright-line” standards. Investors who do not satisfy these monetary thresholds do not qualify as accredited investors under the applicable paragraph.

(3) Beneficial ownership of financial assets

Paragraph (j) of the “accredited investor” definition refers to an individual who, either alone or with a spouse, beneficially owns financial assets having an aggregate realizable value that, before taxes but net of any related liabilities, exceeds \$1 000 000. As a general matter, it should not be difficult to determine whether financial assets are beneficially owned by an individual, an individual’s spouse, or both, in any particular instance. However, financial assets held in a trust or in other types of investment vehicles for the benefit of an individual may raise questions as to whether the individual beneficially owns the financial assets in the circumstances. The following factors are indicative of beneficial ownership of financial assets:

- (a) physical or constructive possession of evidence of ownership of the financial asset;
- (b) entitlement to receipt of any income generated by the financial asset;
- (c) risk of loss of the value of the financial asset; and

- (d) the ability to dispose of the financial asset or otherwise deal with it as the individual sees fit.

For example, securities held in a self-directed RRSP, for the sole benefit of an individual, are beneficially owned by that individual. In general, financial assets in a spousal RRSP would also be included for the purposes of the threshold test because paragraph (j) takes into account financial assets owned beneficially by a spouse. However, financial assets held in a group RRSP under which the individual would not have the ability to acquire the financial assets and deal with them directly would not meet these beneficial ownership requirements.

#### (4) Calculation of purchaser's net assets

To calculate a purchaser's net assets under paragraph (l) of the "accredited investor" definition, subtract the purchaser's total liabilities from the purchaser's total assets. The value attributed to assets should reasonably reflect their estimated fair value. Income tax should be considered a liability if the obligation to pay it is outstanding at the time of the distribution of, or trade in, the security.

#### (5) Financial statements

The minimum net asset threshold of \$5 000 000 specified in paragraph (m) of the "accredited investor" definition must, in the case of a non-individual entity, be shown on the entity's "most recently prepared financial statements". The financial statements must be prepared in accordance with applicable generally accepted accounting principles.

#### (6) Time for assessing qualification

The financial tests prescribed in the accredited investor definition are to be applied only at the time of the distribution of, or trade in, the security. The person is not required to monitor the purchaser's continuing qualification as an accredited investor after the distribution of, or trade in, the security is completed.

#### (7) Recognition or Designation as an Accredited Investor

Paragraph (v) of the "accredited investor" definition in NI 45-106 contemplates that a person may apply to be recognized or designated as an accredited investor by the securities regulatory authorities or regulators, except in Ontario and Québec, the regulators. The securities regulatory authorities or regulators have not adopted any specific criteria for granting accredited investor recognition or designation to applicants, as the securities regulatory authorities or regulators believe that the "accredited investor" definition generally covers all types of persons that do not require the protection of the prospectus requirement or the dealer registration requirement. Accordingly, the securities regulatory authorities or regulators expect that applications for accredited investor recognition or designation will be utilized on a very limited basis. If a securities regulatory authority or regulator considers it appropriate in the circumstances, it may grant accredited investor recognition or designation to a person on terms and conditions, including a requirement that the person apply annually for renewal of accredited investor recognition or designation.

### **3.6 Private issuer**

#### **(1) Meaning of “the public”**

Whether or not a person is a member of the public must be determined on the facts of each particular case. The courts have interpreted “the public” very broadly in the context of securities trading. Whether a person is a part of the public will be determined on the particular facts of each case, based on the tests that have developed under the relevant case law. A person who intends to distribute or trade securities, in reliance upon the private issuer prospectus exemption in section 2.4(2) or the private issuer dealer registration exemption in section 3.4(2) of NI 45-106, to a person not listed in paragraphs (a) through (j) of that section will have to satisfy itself that the distribution of, or trade in, the security is not to the public.

#### **(2) Meaning of “close personal friends” and “close business associates”**

See sections 2.7 and 2.8 of this Companion Policy for a discussion of the meaning of “close personal friend” and “close business associate”.

#### **(2.1) Meaning of “non-convertible debt securities”**

Paragraph (b) of the definition of private issuer has a number of restrictions that apply to the securities, other than non-convertible debt securities, of a private issuer. Non-convertible debt securities are debt securities that do not have a right or obligation to exchange or convert into another security of the issuer.

#### **(3) Business combination of private issuers**

A distribution of, or trade in, securities in connection with an amalgamation, merger, reorganization, arrangement or other statutory procedure involving two private issuers, to holders of securities of those issuers is not a distribution of, or trade in, a security to the public, provided that the resulting issuer is a private issuer.

Similarly, a distribution of, or trade in, securities by a private issuer in connection with a share exchange take-over bid for another private issuer is not a distribution of, or trade in, securities to the public, provided the offeror remains a private issuer after completion of the bid.

#### **(4) Acquisition of a private issuer**

Persons relying on a private issuer exemption in NI 45-106 must be satisfied that the purchaser is not a member of the public. Generally, however, if the owner of a private issuer sells the business of the private issuer by way of a sale of securities, rather than assets, to another party who acquires all of the securities, the sale will not be considered to have been to the public.

(5) Ceasing to be a private issuer

The term “private issuer” is defined in section 2.4(1) (with the same definition repeated in section 3.4(1) of NI 45-106). A private issuer can distribute securities only to the persons listed in section 2.4(2) of NI 45-106. If a private issuer distributes securities to a person not listed in section 2.4(2), even under another exemption, it will no longer be a private issuer and will not be able to continue to use the private issuer prospectus exemption in section 2.4(2) (or the private issuer dealer registration exemption in section 3.4(2)). For example, if a private issuer distributes securities under the offering memorandum exemption, it will no longer be a private issuer.

Issuers that cease to be private issuers will still be able to use other exemptions to distribute their securities. For example, such issuers could rely on the family, friends and business associates prospectus exemption (except in Ontario) or the accredited investor prospectus exemption. However, issuers that rely on these prospectus exemptions must file a report of exempt distribution with the securities regulatory authority or regulator in each jurisdiction in which the distribution took place.

An issuer that completes a going private transaction (for example, by way of an amalgamation squeeze out or a takeover bid with a subsequent statutory compulsory acquisition) can however use the private issuer exemption after a going private transaction.

### **3.7 Family, friends and business associates**

(1) Number of purchasers

There is no restriction on the number of persons that the issuer may sell securities to under the family, friends and business associates exemptions in sections 2.5 and 3.5 of NI 45-106. However, an issuer selling securities to a large number of persons under this exemption may give rise to a presumption that not all of the purchasers are family, close personal friends or close business associates and that the exemption may not be available.

(2) Meaning of “close personal friends” and “close business associates”

See sections 2.7 and 2.8 of this Companion Policy for a discussion of the meaning of “close personal friend” and “close business associate”.

(3) Risk acknowledgement - Saskatchewan

Under sections 2.6 and 3.6 of NI 45-106, the corresponding family, friends and business associates exemption in section 2.5 or 3.5 of NI 45-106 cannot be relied upon in Saskatchewan for a distribution of, or trade in, securities based on a close personal friendship or close business association unless the person obtains a signed “risk acknowledgement” in the required form from the purchaser and retains the form for eight years after the distribution of, or trade in, securities.

### **3.8 Offering memorandum**

(1) Eligibility criteria - Alberta, Manitoba, Northwest Territories, Nunavut, Prince Edward Island, Québec and Saskatchewan

Alberta, Manitoba, Northwest Territories, Nunavut, Prince Edward Island, Québec, Saskatchewan, and Yukon impose eligibility criteria on persons investing under the offering memorandum exemptions. In these jurisdictions, the purchaser must be an eligible investor if the purchaser's acquisition cost is more than \$10 000.

In determining the acquisition cost to a purchaser who is not an eligible investor, include any future payments that the purchaser will be required to make. Proceeds which may be obtained on exercise of warrants or other rights, or on conversion of convertible securities, are not considered to be part of the acquisition cost unless the purchaser is legally obligated to exercise or convert the securities. The \$10 000 maximum acquisition cost is calculated per distribution of, or trade in, security.

Nevertheless, concurrent and consecutive, closely-timed offerings to the same purchaser will usually constitute one distribution of, or trade in, a security. Consequently, when calculating the acquisition cost, all of these offerings by or on behalf of the issuer to the same purchaser who is not an eligible investor would be included. It would be inappropriate for an issuer to try to circumvent the \$10 000 threshold by dividing a subscription in excess of \$10 000 by one purchaser into a number of smaller subscriptions of \$10 000 or less that are made directly or indirectly by the same purchaser.

A purchaser can qualify as an eligible investor under various categories of the definition, including if the purchaser has and has had in prior years either \$75 000 pre-tax net income or has \$400 000 worth of net assets. In calculating a purchaser's net assets, subtract the purchaser's total liabilities from the purchaser's total assets. The value attributed to assets should reasonably reflect their estimated fair value. Income tax should be considered a liability if the obligation to pay it is outstanding at the time of the distribution of, or trade in, a security.

Another way a purchaser can qualify as an eligible investor is to obtain advice from an eligibility adviser. An eligibility adviser is a person registered as an investment dealer (or in an equivalent category of unrestricted dealer in the purchaser's jurisdiction) that is authorized to give advice with respect to the type of security being distributed or traded. In Saskatchewan and Manitoba, certain lawyers and public accountants may also act as eligibility advisers.

A registered investment dealer providing advice to a purchaser in these circumstances is expected to comply with the "know your client" and suitability requirements under applicable securities legislation and SRO rules and policies. Some dealers have obtained exemptions from the "know your client" and suitability requirements because they do not provide advice. An assessment of suitability by these dealers is not sufficient to qualify a purchaser as an eligible investor.

## (2) Form of offering memorandum

There are two forms of offering memorandum: Form 45-106F3, which may be used by qualifying issuers, and Form 45-106F2, which must be used by all other issuers. Form 45-106F3 requires qualifying issuers to incorporate by reference their annual information form (AIF), management's discussion and analysis (MD&A), annual financial statements and subsequent specified continuous disclosure documents required under NI 51-102.

A qualifying issuer is a reporting issuer that has filed an AIF under NI 51-102 and has met all of its other continuous disclosure obligations, including those in NI 51-102, National Instrument 43-

101 *Standards of Disclosure for Mineral Projects*, and National Instrument 51-101 *Standards of Disclosure for Oil and Gas Activities*. Under NI 51-102, venture issuers are not required to file AIFs. However, if a venture issuer wants to use Form 45-106F3, the venture issuer must voluntarily file an AIF under NI 51-102 in order to incorporate that AIF into its offering memorandum.

(3) Date of certificate and required signatories

The issuer must ensure that the information provided to the purchaser is current and does not contain a misrepresentation. For example, if a material change occurs in the business of the issuer after delivery of an offering memorandum to a potential purchaser, the issuer must give the potential purchaser an update to the offering memorandum before the issuer accepts the agreement to purchase the securities. The update to the offering memorandum may take the form of an amendment describing the material change, a new offering memorandum containing up-to-date disclosure or a material change report, whichever the issuer decides will most effectively inform purchasers.

Whatever form of update the issuer uses, it must include a newly signed and dated certificate as required in the applicable subsection 2.9(9), (10), (10.1), (10.2), (10.3), (11), (11.1), or (12) or 3.9(9), (10), (10.1), (10.2), (10.3), (11), (11.1), or (12) of NI 45-106.

“Promoter” is defined differently in provincial and territorial securities legislation across CSA jurisdictions. It is generally defined as meaning a person who has taken the initiative in founding, organizing or substantially reorganizing the business of the issuer or who has received consideration over a prescribed amount for services or property or both in connection with founding, organizing or substantially reorganizing the issuer. “Promoter” has not been defined in the *Securities Act* (Québec) and a broad interpretation is taken in Québec in determining who would be considered a promoter.

Under securities legislation, persons who receive consideration solely as underwriting commissions or in consideration of property and who do not otherwise take part in the founding, organizing or substantially reorganizing the issuer are not promoters. Simply selling securities, or in some way facilitating sales in securities, does not make a person a promoter under the offering memorandum exemptions.

(4) Consideration to be held in trust

The purchaser has, or must be given, the right to cancel the agreement to purchase the securities until midnight on the 2<sup>nd</sup> business day after signing the agreement. During this period, the issuer must arrange for the consideration to be held in trust on behalf of the purchaser.

It is up to the issuer to decide what arrangements are necessary to preserve the consideration received from the purchaser. The requirement to hold the consideration in trust may be satisfied if, for example, the issuer keeps the purchaser’s cheque, without cashing or depositing it, until the expiration of the two business day cancellation period.

It is also the issuer’s responsibility to ensure that whoever is holding the consideration promptly returns it to the purchaser if the purchaser cancels the agreement to purchase the securities.

(5) Filing of offering memorandum

The issuer is required to file the offering memorandum with the securities regulatory authority or regulator in each of the jurisdictions in which the issuer distributes or trades securities under an offering memorandum exemption. The issuer must file the offering memorandum on or before the 10<sup>th</sup> day after the distribution.

If the issuer is conducting multiple closings, the offering memorandum must be filed on or before the 10th day after the first closing. Once the offering memorandum has been filed, there is no need to file it again after subsequent closings, unless it has been updated.

(6) Purchasers' rights

Unless securities legislation in a purchaser's jurisdiction provides a purchaser with a comparable right of cancellation or revocation, an issuer must give each purchaser under an offering memorandum a contractual right to cancel the agreement to purchase the securities by delivering a notice to the issuer not later than midnight on the 2nd business day after the purchaser signs the agreement.

Unless securities legislation in a purchaser's jurisdiction provides purchasers with comparable statutory rights, the issuer must also give the purchaser a contractual right of action against the issuer in the event the offering memorandum contains a misrepresentation. This contractual right of action must be available to the purchaser regardless of whether the purchaser relied on the misrepresentation when deciding to purchase the securities. This right is similar to that given to a purchaser under a prospectus. The purchaser may claim damages or ask that the agreement be cancelled. If the purchaser wants to cancel the agreement, the purchaser must commence the action within 180 days after signing the agreement to purchase the securities. If the purchaser is seeking damages, the purchaser must commence the action within the earlier of 180 days after learning of the misrepresentation or 3 years after signing the agreement to purchase the securities.

The issuer is required to describe in the offering memorandum any rights available to the purchaser, whether they are provided by the issuer contractually as a condition to the use of the exemption or provided under securities legislation.

### **3.9 Minimum amount investment**

An issuer may wish to distribute or trade more than one kind of security of its own issue, such as shares and debt, in a single transaction under a minimum investment amount exemption. Provided that the shares and debt are sold in units that have a total acquisition cost of not less than \$150 000 paid in cash at the time of the distribution of, or trade in, a security, the exemptions can, if otherwise available, be used, notwithstanding that the acquisition cost of the shares and the acquisition cost of the debt, taken separately, are both less than \$150 000.

## **PART 4 - OTHER EXEMPTIONS**

### **4.1 Employee, executive officer, director and consultant exemptions**

Trustees, custodians or administrators who engage in activities, contemplated in the prospectus and dealer registration exemptions in sections 2.27 and 3.27 of NI 45-106, that bring together purchasers and sellers of securities should have regard to the provisions of National Instrument 21-101 *Marketplace Operation* respecting “marketplaces” and “alternative trading systems”.

The employee, executive officer, director and consultant exemptions are based on the alignment of economic interests between an issuer and its employees. They may, where available, be used to provide employees and other similar persons with an opportunity to participate in the growth of the employer’s business and to compensate persons for the services they provide to an issuer. The securities regulatory authorities or regulators will generally not grant exemptive relief analogous to these exemptions except in very limited circumstances.

#### **4.2 Business combination and reorganization**

##### **(1) Statutory procedure**

The securities regulatory authorities interpret the phrase “statutory procedure” broadly and are of the view that the prospectus and dealer registration exemptions contained in sections 2.11 and 3.11 of NI 45-106 apply to all distributions of, and trades in, securities of an issuer that are both part of the procedure and necessary to complete the transaction, regardless of when the distribution of, or trade in, a security occurs.

The prospectus and dealer registration exemptions contained in sections 2.11 and 3.11 of NI 45-106 exempt distributions of, and trades in, securities in connection with an amalgamation, merger, reorganization or arrangement if the same is done “under a statutory procedure”. The securities regulatory authorities or regulators are of the view that the references to statutory procedure in sections 2.11 and 3.11 of NI 45-106 are to any statute of a jurisdiction or foreign jurisdiction under which the entities involved have been incorporated or created and exist or under which the transaction is taking place. This would include, for example, an arrangement under the *Companies’ Creditors Arrangement Act* (Canada).

##### **(2) Three-cornered amalgamations**

Certain corporate statutes permit a so-called “three-cornered merger or amalgamation” under which two companies will amalgamate or merge and security holders of the amalgamating or merging entities will receive securities of a third party affiliate of one amalgamating or merging entity. The prospectus and dealer registration exemptions contained in sections 2.11 and 3.11 of NI 45-106 refer to these distributions of, or trades in, a security when they refer to a distribution of, or a trade in, a security made in connection with an amalgamation or merger done under a statutory procedure.

##### **(3) Exchangeable shares**

A transaction involving a procedure described in the prospectus and dealer registration exemptions contained in sections 2.11 and 3.11 of NI 45-106 may include an exchangeable share structure to achieve certain tax-planning objectives. For example, where a non-Canadian company seeks to acquire a Canadian company under a plan of arrangement, an exchangeable share structure may be used to allow the Canadian shareholders of the company to be acquired to receive, in substance, shares of the non-Canadian company while avoiding the adverse tax

consequences associated with exchanging shares of a Canadian company for shares of a non-Canadian company. Instead of receiving shares of the non-Canadian company directly, the Canadian shareholders receive shares of a Canadian company which, through various contractual arrangements, have economic terms and voting rights that are essentially identical to the shares of the non-Canadian company and permit the holder to exchange such shares, at a time of the holder's choosing, for shares of the non-Canadian company.

Historically, the use of an exchangeable share structure in connection with a statutory procedure has raised a question as to whether the exemptions now contained in sections 2.11 and 3.11 of NI 45-106 were available for all distributions or trades necessary to complete the transaction. For example, in the case of the acquisition under a plan of arrangement noted above, the use of an exchangeable share structure may result in a delay of several months or even years between the date of the arrangement and the date the shares of the non-Canadian company are distributed to the former shareholders of the acquired company. As a result of this delay, some filers have questioned whether the distribution of the non-Canadian company's shares upon the exercise of the exchangeable shares may still be viewed as being "in connection with" the statutory transaction, and have made application for exemptive relief to address this uncertainty.

The securities regulatory authorities or regulators take the position that the statutory procedure exemptions contained in section 2.11 and section 3.11 of NI 45-106 refer to all distributions or trades of securities that are necessary to complete an exchangeable share transaction involving a procedure described in section 2.11 or section 3.11, even where such distributions or trades occur several months or years after the transaction. In the case of the acquisition noted above, the investment decision of the shareholders of the acquired company at the time of the arrangement represented a decision to, ultimately, exchange their shares for shares of the non-Canadian company. The distribution of such shares upon the exercise of the exchangeable shares does not represent a new investment decision, but merely represents the completion of that original investment decision. Accordingly, additional exemptive relief is not warranted in circumstances where the original transaction was completed in reliance on these exemptions.

#### **4.3 Asset acquisition - character of assets to be acquired**

When issuing securities, issuers must comply with the requirements under applicable corporate or other governing legislation that the securities be issued for fair value. Where securities are issued for non-cash consideration such as assets or resource properties, it is the responsibility of the issuer and its board of directors to determine the fair market value of the assets or resource properties and to retain records to demonstrate how that fair market value was determined. In some situations, cash assets that make up working capital could also be considered in the total calculation of the fair market value.

#### **4.4 Securities for debt - *bona fide debt***

A bona fide debt is one that was incurred for value, on commercially reasonable terms and that on the date the debt was incurred the parties believed would be repaid in cash.

A reporting issuer may distribute or trade securities to settle a debt only after the debt becomes due, as evidenced by the creditor issuing an invoice, demand letter or other written statement to the issuer indicating that the debt is due. The securities for debt exemptions may not be relied on

for the issuance of securities by an issuer to secure a debt that will remain outstanding after the issuance.

#### **4.5 Take-over bid and issuer bid**

##### **(1) Exempt bids**

The terms take-over bid and issuer bid, for the purposes of sections 2.16 and 3.16 of NI 45-106, include an exempt take-over bid and exempt issuer bid.

##### **(2) Bids involving exchangeable shares**

The take-over bid and issuer bid exemptions refer to all distributions or trades necessary to complete a take-over bid or an issuer bid that involves an exchangeable share structure (as described under section 4.2 of this Companion Policy), even where such distributions or trades may occur several months or even years after the bid is completed.

#### **4.6 Isolated distribution or trade**

The exemptions contained in section 2.30 and 3.30 of NI 45-106 are limited to distributions of, or trades in, a security made by an issuer in a security of its own issue. There is also an additional isolated trade dealer registration exemption contained in section 3.29 of NI 45-106. While the latter exemption refers to trades in any security, it does not apply to any trades by an issuer in a security that is issued by the issuer.

It is intended that these exemptions will only be used rarely and are not available for registrants or others whose business is trading in securities.

Reliance upon the isolated trade exemption might, for example, be appropriate when a person who is not involved in the business of trading securities wishes to make a single trade of a security that the person owns to another person. The exemption would not be available to a person for any subsequent trades for a period of time adequate to ensure that each transaction was truly isolated and unconnected.

#### **4.7 Mortgages**

In British Columbia, Alberta, Manitoba, Québec and Saskatchewan, NI 45-106 specifically excludes syndicated mortgages from the mortgage prospectus and dealer registration exemptions in sections 2.36 and 3.36. In determining what constitutes a syndicated mortgage, issuers will need to refer to the corresponding definition provided in section 2.36(1) or 3.36(1) of NI 45-106.

The mortgage exemptions do not apply to distributions or trades in securities that secure mortgages by bond, debenture, trust deed or similar obligation. The mortgage exemptions also do not apply to a distribution of, or a trade in, a security that represents an undivided co-ownership interest in a pool of mortgages, such as a pass-through certificate issued by an issuer of asset-backed securities.

#### **4.8 Not for profit issuer**

(1) Eligibility to use these exemptions

These exemptions apply to distributions of, and trades in, securities of an issuer that is organized exclusively for educational, benevolent, fraternal, charitable, religious or recreational purposes and not for profit (“not for profit issuer”). To use these exemptions, an issuer must be organized exclusively for one or more of the listed purposes and use the funds raised for those purposes.

If an issuer is organized exclusively for one of the listed purposes, but its mandate changes so that it is no longer primarily engaged in the purpose it was organized for, the issuer may no longer be able to rely on these exemptions. For example, if an issuer organized exclusively for educational purposes over time devotes more and more of its efforts to lending money, even if it is only to other educational entities, the lending issuer *may* be unable to rely on these exemptions. The same would also be true if one of an issuer’s mandates was to provide an investment vehicle for its members. An issuer that issues securities that pay dividends would also not be able to use these exemptions, because no part of the issuer’s net earnings can go to any security holder. However, if the securities are debt securities and the issuer agrees to repay the principal amount with or without interest, the security holders are not considered to be receiving part of the net earnings of the issuer. The debt securities may be secured or unsecured.

If investors could receive any special treatment as a result of purchasing securities, the security holders are *not* typically receiving part of the net earnings of the issuer and the sale may still fit within these exemptions. For example, if the not for profit issuer runs a golf course and offers security holders a waiver of greens fees for three years, it could still rely on these exemptions, provided all other conditions are met (and the exemption remains available in the relevant jurisdiction(s)).

If, at the time of the distribution of, or trade in, the security, the purchaser has an entitlement to the assets of the issuer on the basis that they would be getting part of the net earnings of the issuer, then the sale would not fit within these exemptions.

In Québec, not for profit issuers may still rely on the broad exemption available for not for profit issuers under section 3 of the *Securities Act* (Québec).

(2) Meaning of “no commission or other remuneration”

Sections 2.38(b) and 3.38(b) provide that “no commission or other remuneration is paid in connection with the sale of the security”. This is intended to ensure that no one is paid to find purchasers of the securities. However, the issuer may pay its legal and accounting advisers for their legal or accounting services in connection with the sale.

#### **4.9 Exchange contracts**

The dealer registration exemption for exchange contracts contained in section 3.45 of NI 45-106 (and as limited by section 3.0 of NI 45-106) is only available in Alberta, British Columbia, Québec and Saskatchewan. In Manitoba and Ontario, exchange contracts are governed by commodity futures legislation.

Except in Saskatchewan, the dealer registration exemption for exchange contracts contained in section 3.45(1)(b) (and as limited by section 3.0) of NI 45-106 provides for trades resulting from

unsolicited orders placed with an individual resident outside the jurisdiction. However, if the individual conducts further trades in the future, that individual will be deemed to be carrying on business in the jurisdiction and will not be able to rely on this exemption.

## **PART 5 – FORMS**

### **5.1 Report of Exempt Distribution**

#### **(1) Requirement to file**

An issuer that has distributed a security of its own issue under any of the prospectus exemptions listed in section 6.1 of NI 45-106 is required to file Form 45-106F1 *Report of Exempt Distribution*, on or before the 10th day after the distribution. Alternatively, if an underwriter distributes securities acquired under section 2.33 of NI 45-106, either the issuer or the underwriter may complete and file the form. If there is a syndicate of underwriters, the lead underwriter may file the form on behalf of the syndicate or each underwriter may file a form relating to the portion of the distribution it was responsible for.

In determining if it is required to file a report in a particular jurisdiction, the issuer or underwriter should consider the following questions:

- (a) Is there a distribution in the jurisdiction? (Please refer to the securities legislation of the jurisdiction for guidance, if any, on when a distribution occurs in the jurisdiction.)
- (b) If there is a distribution in the jurisdiction, what exemption from the prospectus requirement is the issuer relying on for the distribution of the security?
- (c) Does the exemption referred to in paragraph (b) trigger a reporting requirement? (Reports of exempt distribution are required for distributions made in reliance on the prospectus exemptions listed in section 6.1 of NI 45-106.)

A distribution may occur in more than one jurisdiction. In this case, the issuer is required to file a single report in each Canadian jurisdiction where the distribution has occurred. The report will set out all distributions in each Canadian jurisdiction.

#### **(2) Access to information**

The securities legislation of several provinces requires that information filed with the securities regulatory authority or, where applicable, the regulator under such securities legislation, be made available for public inspection during normal business hours except for information that the securities regulatory authority, or where applicable, the regulator,

- (a) believes to be personal or other information of such a nature that the desirability of avoiding disclosure thereof in the interest of any affected individual outweighs the desirability of adhering to the principle that information filed with the securities regulatory authority or the regulator, as applicable, be available to the public for inspection,

- (b) in Alberta, considers that it would not be prejudicial to the public interest to hold the information in confidence, and
- (c) in Québec, considers that access to the information could result in serious prejudice.

Based on the above mentioned provisions of securities legislation, the securities regulatory authorities or regulators, as applicable, have determined that the information listed in Form 45-106F1 *Report of Exempt Distribution*, Schedule I (“Schedule I”) discloses personal or other information of such a nature that the desirability of avoiding disclosure of this personal information outweighs the desirability of making the information available to the public for inspection. In addition, in Alberta, the regulator considers that it would not be prejudicial to the public interest to hold the information listed in Schedule I in confidence. In Québec, the securities regulatory authority considers that access to Schedule I by the public in general could result in serious prejudice and consequently, the information listed in Schedule I will not be made publicly available.

### (3) Filings in British Columbia

For filings made in British Columbia, issuers are required to file Form 45-106F1 and pay the fees associated with that filing electronically using BCSC e-services. This requirement only applies to Form 45-106F1 filings that are required to be made within 10 days of the distribution. It does not apply to Form 45-106F1 filings made annually by investment funds under section 6.2(2) of NI 45-106. Please refer to BC Instrument 13-502 *Electronic Filing of Reports of Exempt Distribution* for further information.

## **5.2 Forms required under the offering memorandum exemption**

NI 45-106 designates two forms of offering memorandum. The first, Form 45-106F2, is for non-qualifying issuers and the second, Form 45-106F3, can only be used by qualifying issuers (as defined in NI 45-106).

The required form of risk acknowledgment under sections 2.9(1), 3.9(1), 2.9(2) and 3.9(2) of NI 45-106 is Form 45-106F4.

## **5.3 Real estate securities**

Certain jurisdictions impose alternative or additional disclosure requirements in relation to the distribution of real estate securities by offering memorandum. Refer to securities legislation in the jurisdictions where securities are being distributed.

## **5.4 Risk Acknowledgement Form Respecting Close Personal Friends and Close Business Associates – Saskatchewan**

In Saskatchewan, a risk acknowledgment is also required under section 2.6(1) of NI 45-106 (and under section 3.6(1)) if the person intends to rely upon the “family, friends and business associates exemption” in section 2.5 (or in section 3.5) of NI 45-106, which is based on a relationship of close personal friendship or close business association. The form of risk acknowledgement required in these circumstances is Form 45-106F5.

## **PART 6 – RESALE OF SECURITIES ACQUIRED UNDER AN EXEMPTION**

### **6.1 Resale restrictions**

In most jurisdictions, securities distributed under a prospectus exemption may be subject to restrictions on their resale. The particular resale, or “first trade”, restrictions depend on the parties to the distribution and the particular exemption that was relied upon to distribute the securities. In certain circumstances, no resale restrictions will apply and the securities acquired under an exempt distribution will be freely tradable.

Resale restrictions are imposed under National Instrument 45-102 *Resale of Securities* (“NI 45-102”). While NI 45-106 contains text boxes providing commentary on resale, these text boxes are intended as guidance only and are not a substitute for reviewing the applicable provisions in NI 45-102 to determine what resale restrictions, if any, apply to the securities in question.

The resale restrictions operate by the resale transaction triggering the prospectus requirement unless certain conditions are satisfied. Securities that are subject to such restrictions in circumstances where the conditions cannot be satisfied may nevertheless be distributed under an exemption from the prospectus requirement, whether under NI 45-106 or other securities legislation.

**Amended and Restated September 28, 2009 except in Ontario.**

**In Ontario, Amended and Restated on the later of the following:**

- (a) September 28, 2009;**
- (b) the day on which sections 5 and 11, subsection 12(1) and section 13 of Schedule 26 of the *Budget Measures Act, 2009* are proclaimed in force.**

## Appendix D-1

### National Instrument 45-106 Prospectus and Registration Exemptions

*Text boxes in this Instrument refer to National Instrument 45-102 Resale of Securities. ~~These text boxes are~~ located above sections 2.1 to 2.5, 2.7 to 2.21, 2.24, 2.26, 2.27, and 2.30 to 2.43 refer to National Instrument 45-102 Resale of Securities. These text boxes do not form part of this Instrument.*

Text boxes in this Instrument located below sections 2.34, 3.34, 2.36, 3.36, 2.37, 3.37, 2.41 and 3.41 refer to the Securities Act (Ontario). These text boxes do not form part of this Instrument.

### Table of Contents

#### **PART 1: DEFINITIONS AND INTERPRETATION**

- 1.1 Definitions
- 1.2 [Interpretation of indirect interest](#)
- ~~1.3~~ 1.3 Affiliate
- ~~1.3~~ 1.4 Control
- ~~1.4~~ 1.5 Registration requirement
- ~~1.5~~ 1.6 Definition of distribution - Manitoba ~~and Yukon~~
- ~~1.6~~ 1.7 Definition of trade - Québec

#### **PART 2: PROSPECTUS EXEMPTIONS**

##### **Division 1: Capital Raising Exemptions**

- 2.1 Rights offering
- 2.2 Reinvestment plan
- 2.3 Accredited investor
- 2.4 Private issuer
- 2.5 Family, friends and business associates
- 2.6 Family, friends and business associates - Saskatchewan
- 2.7 Founder, control person and family - Ontario
- 2.8 Affiliates
- 2.9 Offering memorandum
- 2.10 Minimum amount investment

##### **Division 2: Transaction Exemptions**

- 2.11 Business combination and reorganization
- 2.12 Asset acquisition
- 2.13 Petroleum, natural gas and mining properties
- 2.14 Securities for debt
- 2.15 Issuer acquisition or redemption
- 2.16 Take-over bid and issuer bid
- 2.17 Offer to acquire to security holder outside local jurisdiction

### **Division 3: Investment Fund Exemptions**

- 2.18 Investment fund reinvestment
- 2.19 Additional investment in investment funds
- 2.20 Private investment club
- 2.21 Private investment fund - loan and trust pools

### **Division 4: Employee, Executive Officer, Director and Consultant Exemptions**

- 2.22 Definitions
- 2.23 Interpretation
- 2.24 Employee, executive officer, director and consultant
- 2.25 Unlisted reporting issuer exception
- 2.26 Distributions among current or former employees, executive officers, directors, or consultants of non-reporting issuer
- 2.27 Permitted transferees
- 2.28 Limitations re: permitted transferees
- 2.29 Issuer bid

### **Division 5: Miscellaneous Exemptions**

- 2.30 Isolated distribution by issuer
- 2.31 Dividends and distributions
- 2.32 Distribution to lender by control person for collateral
- 2.33 Acting as underwriter
- 2.34 Specified debt
- 2.35 Short-term debt
- 2.36 Mortgages
- 2.37 Personal property security legislation
- 2.38 Not for profit issuer
- 2.39 Variable insurance contract
- 2.40 RRSP/RRIF/[TFSA](#)
- 2.41 Schedule III banks and cooperative associations - evidence of deposit
- 2.42 Conversion, exchange, or exercise
- 2.43 Self-directed registered educational savings plans

## **PART 3: REGISTRATION EXEMPTIONS**

~~3.0 — Application~~

~~3.01 — Application — British Columbia and Manitoba~~

3.0 ~~3.02 — Removal of exemptions - market intermediaries~~

~~3.03 — Person or company not in the business of trading~~

### **Division 1: Capital Raising Exemptions**

- 3.1 Rights offering
- 3.2 Reinvestment plan
- 3.3 Accredited investor
- 3.4 Private issuer
- 3.5 Family, friends and business associates
- 3.6 Family, friends and business associates - Saskatchewan
- 3.7 Founder, control person and family - Ontario
- 3.8 Affiliates
- 3.9 Offering memorandum
- 3.10 Minimum amount investment

## **Division 2: Transaction Exemptions**

- 3.11 Business combination and reorganization
- 3.12 Asset acquisition
- 3.13 Petroleum, natural gas and mining properties
- 3.14 Securities for debt
- 3.15 Issuer acquisition or redemption
- 3.16 Take-over bid and issuer bid
- 3.17 Offer to acquire to security holder outside local jurisdiction

## **Division 3: Investment Fund Exemptions**

- 3.18 Investment fund reinvestment
- 3.19 Additional investment in investment funds
- 3.20 Private investment club
- 3.21 Private investment fund - loan and trust pools

## **Division 4: Employee, Executive Officer, Director and Consultant Exemptions**

- 3.22 Definitions
- 3.23 Interpretation
- 3.24 Employee, executive officer, director and consultant
- 3.25 Unlisted reporting issuer exception
- 3.26 Trades among current or former employees, executive officers, directors, or consultants of non-reporting issuer
- 3.27 Permitted transferees
- ~~3.28 Limitations re: permitted transferees~~
- [3.28 Resale – non-reporting issuer](#)

## **Division 5: Miscellaneous Exemptions**

- 3.29 Isolated trade
- 3.30 Isolated trade by issuer
- 3.31 Dividends and distributions
- 3.32 Trade to lender by control person for collateral
- 3.33 Acting as underwriter
- 3.34 Specified debt
- 3.35 Short-term debt
- 3.36 Mortgages
- 3.37 Personal property security legislation
- 3.38 Not for profit issuer
- 3.39 Variable insurance contract
- 3.40 RRSP/RRIF/[TFSA](#)
- 3.41 Schedule III banks and cooperative associations - evidence of deposit
- 3.42 Conversion, exchange, or exercise
- 3.43 Self-directed registered educational savings plans
- 3.44 Registered dealer
- 3.45 Exchange contract
- 3.46 Estates, bankruptcies, and liquidations
- 3.47 Employees of registered dealer
- 3.48 Small security holder selling and purchase arrangements
- 3.49 Adviser
- 3.50 Investment dealer acting as portfolio manager

## **PART 4: CONTROL BLOCK DISTRIBUTIONS**

- 4.1 Control block distributions
- 4.2 ~~Trades~~[Distributions](#) by a control person after a take-over bid

## **PART 5: OFFERINGS BY TSX VENTURE EXCHANGE OFFERING DOCUMENT**

- 5.1 Application and interpretation
- 5.2 TSX Venture Exchange offering
- 5.3 Underwriter obligations

## **PART 6: REPORTING REQUIREMENTS**

- 6.1 Report of exempt distribution
- 6.2 When report not required
- 6.3 Required form of report of exempt distribution
- 6.4 Required form of offering memorandum
- 6.5 Required form of risk acknowledgement
- ~~6.6 — Reporting requirements in British Columbia~~

## **PART 7: EXEMPTION**

- 7.1 Exemption

## **PART 8: TRANSITIONAL, COMING INTO FORCE**

- 8.1 Additional investment – investment funds – [exemption from prospectus requirement](#)
- [8.1.1 Additional investment – investment funds – exemption from registration requirement](#)
- 8.2 Definition of “accredited investor” – investment fund
- 8.3 Transition – ~~MI 45-103 / MI 45-105 / OSC Rule 45-501~~[Closely-held issuer – exemption from prospectus requirement](#)
- [8.3.1 Transition – Closely-held issuer – exemption from registration requirement](#)
- ~~8.4 — Transition — Closely held issuer~~[8.4.1](#) Transition – Reinvestment plan
- 8.5 [Application of Part 3 of this instrument](#)
- [8.6](#) Repeal of former instrument
- ~~8.6 — Coming into force~~
- [8.7](#) [Effective date](#)

Appendix A - Variable Insurance Contract Exemption

Appendix B - Control Block Distribution

**National Instrument 45-106**  
*Prospectus and Registration Exemptions*

**PART 1: DEFINITIONS AND INTERPRETATION**

**Definitions**

**1.1** In this Instrument

“**accredited investor**” means

- (a) a Canadian financial institution, or a Schedule III bank,
- (b) the Business Development Bank of Canada incorporated under the *Business Development Bank of Canada Act* (Canada),
- (c) a subsidiary of any person referred to in paragraphs (a) or (b), if the person owns all of the voting securities of the subsidiary, except the voting securities required by law to be owned by directors of that subsidiary,
- (d) a person registered under the securities legislation of a jurisdiction of Canada as an adviser or dealer, other than a person registered solely as a limited market dealer under one or both of the *Securities Act* (Ontario) or the *Securities Act* (Newfoundland and Labrador),
- (e) an individual registered or formerly registered under the securities legislation of a jurisdiction of Canada as a representative of a person referred to in paragraph (d),
- (f) the Government of Canada or a jurisdiction of Canada, or any crown corporation, agency or wholly owned entity of the Government of Canada or a jurisdiction of Canada,
- (g) a municipality, public board or commission in Canada and a metropolitan community, school board, the Comité de gestion de la taxe scolaire de l'île de Montréal or an intermunicipal management board in Québec<sup>2</sup>,
- (h) any national, federal, state, provincial, territorial or municipal government of or in any foreign jurisdiction, or any agency of that government,
- (i) a pension fund that is regulated by ~~either~~ the Office of the Superintendent of Financial Institutions (Canada) ~~or~~<sup>2</sup> a pension commission or similar regulatory authority of a jurisdiction of Canada,
- (j) an individual who, either alone or with a spouse, beneficially owns, ~~directly or indirectly,~~ financial assets having an aggregate realizable value that before taxes, but net of any related liabilities, exceeds \$1 000 000,
- (k) an individual whose net income before taxes exceeded \$200 000 in each of the 2 most recent calendar years or whose net income before taxes combined with that of a spouse exceeded \$300 000 in each of the 2 most recent calendar years and who, in either case, reasonably expects to exceed that net income level in the current calendar year,

- (l) an individual who, either alone or with a spouse, has net assets of at least \$5 000 000,
- (m) a person, other than an individual or investment fund, that has net assets of at least \$5 000 000 as shown on its most recently prepared financial statements,
- (n) an investment fund that distributes or has distributed its securities only to
  - (i) a person that is or was an accredited investor at the time of the distribution,
  - (ii) a person that acquires or acquired securities in the circumstances referred to in sections 2.10 [*Minimum amount investment*], ~~and~~ or 2.19 [*Additional investment in investment funds*], or
  - (iii) a person described in paragraph (i) or (ii) that acquires or acquired securities under section 2.18 [*Investment fund reinvestment*],
- (o) an investment fund that distributes or has distributed securities under a prospectus in a jurisdiction of Canada for which the regulator or, in Québec, the securities regulatory authority, has issued a receipt,
- (p) a trust company or trust corporation registered or authorized to carry on business under the *Trust and Loan Companies Act* (Canada) or under comparable legislation in a jurisdiction of Canada or a foreign jurisdiction, acting on behalf of a fully managed account managed by the trust company or trust corporation, as the case may be,
- (q) a person acting on behalf of a fully managed account managed by that person, if that person
  - (i) is registered or authorized to carry on business as an adviser or the equivalent under the securities legislation of a jurisdiction of Canada or a foreign jurisdiction, and
  - (ii) in Ontario, is purchasing a security that is not a security of an investment fund<sup>5, 2</sup>,
- (r) a registered charity under the ~~ITA~~ *Income Tax Act (Canada)* that, in regard to the trade, has obtained advice from an eligibility adviser or an adviser registered under the securities legislation of the jurisdiction of the registered charity to give advice on the securities being traded,
- (s) an entity organized in a foreign jurisdiction that is analogous to any of the entities referred to in paragraphs (a) to (d) or paragraph (i) in form and function,
- (t) a person in respect of which all of the owners of interests, direct, indirect or beneficial, except the voting securities required by law to be owned by directors, are persons that are accredited investors,
- (u) an investment fund that is advised by a person registered as an adviser or a person that is exempt from registration as an adviser, or

- (v) a person that is recognized or designated by the securities regulatory authority or, except in Ontario and Québec, the regulator as an accredited investor;

“AIF” means

- ~~(a) for financial years starting before January 1, 2004, a current AIF as defined in Multilateral Instrument 45-102 *Resale of Securities* that came into force on November 30, 2001, and~~
- ~~(b) for financial years starting on or after January 1, 2004,~~

(~~i~~a) an AIF as defined in ~~NI 51-102,~~ National Instrument 51-102 *Continuous Disclosure Obligations*,

(~~ii~~b) a prospectus filed in a jurisdiction, other than a prospectus filed under a CPC instrument, if the issuer has not filed or been required to file an AIF or annual financial statements under ~~NI 51-102,~~ National Instrument 51-102 *Continuous Disclosure Obligations*, or

(~~iii~~c) a QT circular if the issuer has not filed or been required to file annual financial statements under ~~NI~~ National Instrument 51-102 *Continuous Disclosure Obligations* subsequent to filing ~~its~~ a QT circular;

“**approved credit rating**” has the same meaning as in National Instrument 81-102 *Mutual Funds*;

“**approved credit rating organization**” has the same meaning as in National Instrument 81-102 *Mutual Funds*;

“**bank**” means a bank named in Schedule I or II of the *Bank Act* (Canada);

“**Canadian financial institution**” means

- (a) an association governed by the *Cooperative Credit Associations Act* (Canada) or a central cooperative credit society for which an order has been made under section 473(1) of that Act, or
- (b) a bank, loan corporation, trust company, trust corporation, insurance company, treasury branch, credit union, caisse populaire, financial services cooperative, or league that, in each case, is authorized by an enactment of Canada or a jurisdiction of Canada to carry on business in Canada or a jurisdiction of Canada;

~~“**control person**” has the same meaning as in securities legislation except in Manitoba, Newfoundland and Labrador, Northwest Territories, Nova Scotia, Nunavut and Prince Edward Island where control person means any person that holds or is one of a combination of persons that holds~~

- ~~(a) a sufficient number of any of the securities of an issuer so as to affect materially the control of the issuer, or~~

- ~~(b) more than 20% of the outstanding voting securities of an issuer except where there is evidence showing that the holding of those securities does not affect materially the control of the issuer;~~

**“CPC instrument”** means a rule ~~or regulation of a jurisdiction of Canada or a rule~~, regulation or policy of ~~an exchange in Canada~~ the TSX Venture Exchange Inc. that applies only to capital pool companies, and, in Quebec, includes Policy Statement 41-601Q, Capital Pool Companies;

**“debt security”** means any bond, debenture, note or similar instrument representing indebtedness, whether secured or unsecured;

**“director”** means

- (a) a member of the board of directors of a company or an individual who performs similar functions for a company, and
- (b) with respect to a person that is not a company, an individual who performs functions similar to those of a director of a company;

**“eligibility adviser”** means

- (a) a person that is registered as an investment dealer ~~or in an equivalent category of registration under the securities legislation of the jurisdiction of a purchaser~~ and authorized to give advice with respect to the type of security being distributed, and
- (b) in Saskatchewan or Manitoba, also means a lawyer who is a practicing member in good standing with a law society of a jurisdiction of Canada or a public accountant who is a member in good standing of an institute or association of chartered accountants, certified general accountants or certified management accountants in a jurisdiction of Canada provided that the lawyer or public accountant must not
  - (i) have a professional, business or personal relationship with the issuer, or any of its directors, executive officers, founders, or control persons, and
  - (ii) have acted for or been retained personally or otherwise as an employee, executive officer, director, associate or partner of a person that has acted for or been retained by the issuer or any of its directors, executive officers, founders or control persons within the previous 12 months;

**“eligible investor”** means

- (a) a person whose
  - (i) net assets, alone or with a spouse, in the case of an individual, exceed \$400 000,
  - (ii) net income before taxes exceeded \$75 000 in each of the 2 most recent calendar years and who reasonably expects to exceed that income level in the current calendar year, or

- (iii) net income before taxes, alone or with a spouse, in the case of an individual, exceeded \$125 000 in each of the 2 most recent calendar years and who reasonably expects to exceed that income level in the current calendar year,
- (b) a person of which a majority of the voting securities are beneficially owned by eligible investors or a majority of the directors are eligible investors,
- (c) a general partnership of which all of the partners are eligible investors,
- (d) a limited partnership of which the majority of the general partners are eligible investors,
- (e) a trust or estate in which all of the beneficiaries or a majority of the trustees or executors are eligible investors,
- (f) an accredited investor,
- (g) a person described in section 2.5 [*Family, friends and business associates*], or
- (h) a person that has obtained advice regarding the suitability of the investment and, if the person is resident in a jurisdiction of Canada, that advice has been obtained from an eligibility adviser;

**“executive officer”** means, for an issuer, an individual who is

- (a) a chair, vice-chair or president,
- (b) a vice-president in charge of a principal business unit, division or function including sales, finance or production, or
- (c) performing a policy-making function in respect of the issuer;

**“financial assets”** means

- (a) cash,
- (b) securities, or
- (c) a contract of insurance, a deposit or an evidence of a deposit that is not a security for the purposes of securities legislation;

**“founder”** means, in respect of an issuer, a person who,

- (a) acting alone, in conjunction, or in concert with one or more persons, directly or indirectly, takes the initiative in founding, organizing or substantially reorganizing the business of the issuer, and
- (b) at the time of the distribution or trade is actively involved in the business of the issuer;

**“fully managed account”** means an account of a client for which a person makes the investment decisions if that person has full discretion to trade in securities for the account without requiring the client’s express consent to a transaction;

**“investment fund”** has the same meaning as in National Instrument 81-106 *Investment Fund Continuous Disclosure*;

**“marketplace”** has the same meaning as in National Instrument 21-101 *Marketplace Operation*;

**“MD&A”** has the same meaning as in ~~NI 51-102~~;

~~“NI 43-101” means National Instrument 43-101 *Standards of Disclosure for Mineral Projects*;~~

~~“NI 45-102” means National Instrument 45-102 *Resale of Securities*; “NI 51-102” means National Instrument 51-102 *Continuous Disclosure Obligations*;~~

**“non-redeemable investment fund”** has the same meaning as in National Instrument 81-106 *Investment Fund Continuous Disclosure*;

**“person”** includes

- (a) an individual,
- (b) a corporation,
- (c) a partnership, trust, fund and an association, syndicate, organization or other organized group of persons, whether incorporated or not, and
- (d) an individual or other person in that person’s capacity as a trustee, executor, administrator or personal or other legal representative;

**“QT circular”** means an information circular or filing statement in respect of a qualifying transaction for a capital pool company [filed](#) under a CPC instrument;

**“qualifying issuer”** means a reporting issuer in a jurisdiction of Canada that

- (a) is a SEDAR filer,
- (b) has filed all documents required to be filed under the securities legislation of that jurisdiction, and
- (c) if not required to file an AIF, has filed in the jurisdiction,
  - (i) an AIF for its most recently completed financial year for which annual statements are required to be filed, and
  - (ii) copies of all material incorporated by reference in the AIF not previously filed;

**“related liabilities”** means

- (a) liabilities incurred or assumed for the purpose of financing the acquisition or ownership of financial assets, or
- (b) liabilities that are secured by financial assets;

~~“reporting issuer” means, in Northwest Territories, Nunavut and Prince Edward Island, an issuer that is a reporting issuer in a jurisdiction of Canada;~~

“RRIF” means a registered retirement income fund as defined in the [ITA/Income Tax Act \(Canada\)](#);

“RRSP” means a registered retirement savings plan as defined in the [ITA/Income Tax Act \(Canada\)](#);

“Schedule III bank” means an authorized foreign bank named in Schedule III of the *Bank Act* (Canada);

“SEDAR filer” means an issuer that is an electronic filer under National Instrument 13-101 *System for Electronic Document Analysis and Retrieval (SEDAR)*;

“self-directed RESP” means an educational savings plan registered under the [ITA/Income Tax Act \(Canada\)](#)

- (a) that is structured so that ~~contributions~~[a contribution](#) by a subscriber to the plan ~~are~~[is](#) deposited directly into an account in the name of the subscriber, and
- (b) under which the subscriber maintains control and direction over the plan ~~that enables the subscriber~~ to direct how the assets of the plan are to be held, invested or reinvested subject to compliance with the [ITA/Income Tax Act \(Canada\)](#).

“spouse” means, an individual who,

- (a) is married to another individual and is not living separate and apart within the meaning of the *Divorce Act* (Canada), from the other individual,
- (b) is living with another individual in a marriage-like relationship, including a marriage-like relationship between individuals of the same gender, or
- (c) in Alberta, is an individual referred to in paragraph (a) or (b), or is an adult interdependent partner within the meaning of the *Adult Interdependent Relationships Act* (Alberta);

“subsidiary” means an issuer that is controlled directly or indirectly by another issuer and includes a subsidiary of that subsidiary;

[“TFSA” means a tax-free savings account as described in the \*Income Tax Act \(Canada\)\*.](#)

### Interpretation of indirect interest

[1.2 For the purposes of paragraph 1.1\(t\), in British Columbia, an indirect interest means an economic interest in the person referred to in that paragraph.](#)

### **Affiliate**

~~1.2~~[1.3](#) For the purpose of this Instrument, an issuer is an affiliate of another issuer if

- (a) one of them is the subsidiary of the other, or
- (b) each of them is controlled by the same person.

## Control

**1.31.4** Except in Part 2, Division 4, for the purpose of this Instrument, a person (first person) is considered to control another person (second person) if

- (a) the first person ~~beneficially owns or~~ directly or indirectly, ~~beneficially owns or~~ exercises control or direction over securities of the second person carrying votes which, if exercised, would entitle the first person to elect a majority of the directors of the second person, unless that first person holds the voting securities only to secure an obligation,
- (b) the second person is a partnership, other than a limited partnership, and the first person holds more than 50% of the interests of the partnership, or
- (c) the second person is a limited partnership and the general partner of the limited partnership is the first person.

## Registration requirement

**1.41.5 (1)** An exemption in this Instrument from the dealer registration requirement, or from the prospectus requirement, that refers to a registered dealer is only available for a trade in a security if the dealer is registered in a category that permits the trade described in the exemption.

**(2)** ~~An~~ In this Instrument, an exemption from the dealer registration requirement is ~~deemed to be~~ an exemption from the underwriter registration requirement.

## Definition of distribution - Manitoba ~~and Yukon~~

**1.51.6** For the purpose of this Instrument, in Manitoba ~~and Yukon~~, “distribution” means a primary distribution to the public.

## Definition of trade – Québec

**1.61.7** For the purpose of this Instrument, in Québec, ~~“trade” includes~~ refers to any of the following activities:

- (a) ~~any of~~ the activities ~~referred to~~ described in the definition of ~~“dealer”~~ in section 5 of the Securities Act (Québec R.S.Q., c. V-1.1), including ~~distributing a security;~~ the following activities:
  - (~~b~~) the sale or disposition of a security ~~for valuable consideration~~ by onerous title, whether the terms of payment ~~are~~ be on margin, installment or otherwise, but does not include a transfer or the giving in guarantee of securities in connection with a debt or the purchase of a security, (i) — except as provided in paragraph (e), ~~a transfer, pledge or encumbrance of securities for the purpose of giving collateral for a debt made in good faith, or~~ b;
  - (ii) ~~the purchase of a security;~~ (e) — participation as a trader in any transaction in a security through the facilities of an exchange or a quotation and trade reporting system;

- (~~d~~iii) the receipt by a registrant of an order to buy or sell a security;
- (~~e~~b) a transfer, ~~pledge or encumbrance~~ or the giving in guarantee of securities of an issuer from the holdings of a control person ~~for the purpose of giving collateral for a debt made in good faith;~~
- (~~f~~) ~~entering into a derivative;~~(~~g~~) ~~any activity, advertisement, solicitation, conduct or negotiation directly or indirectly in furtherance of any of the activities referred to in paragraphs~~ (~~a~~) to (~~f~~) in connection with a debt.

## PART 2: PROSPECTUS EXEMPTIONS

### Division 1: Capital Raising Exemptions

#### Rights offering

Refer to Appendix E of ~~NI~~[National Instrument](#) 45-102 *Resale of Securities*. First trades are subject to a seasoning period on resale.

2.1 The prospectus requirement does not apply to a distribution by an issuer of a right granted by the issuer to purchase a security of its own issue to a security holder of the issuer if

- (a) the issuer has given the regulator or, in Québec, the securities regulatory authority, prior written notice stating the date, amount, nature and conditions of the distribution, including the approximate net proceeds to be derived by the issuer on the basis of the additional securities being fully taken up,
- (b) the regulator or, in Québec, the securities regulatory authority, has not objected in writing to the distribution within 10 days of receipt of the notice referred to in paragraph (a) or, if the regulator or securities regulatory authority objects to the distribution, the issuer has delivered to the regulator or securities regulatory authority information relating to the securities that is satisfactory to and accepted by the regulator or securities regulatory authority, and
- (c) the issuer has complied with the applicable requirements of National Instrument 45-101 *Rights Offerings*.

#### Reinvestment plan

Refer to Appendix E of ~~NI~~[National Instrument](#) 45-102 *Resale of Securities*. First trades are subject to a seasoning period on resale.

2.2 (1) Subject to subsections (3), (4) and (5), the prospectus requirement does not apply to the following distributions by an issuer, or by a trustee, custodian or administrator acting for or on behalf of the issuer, to a security holder of the issuer if the distributions are permitted by a plan of the issuer:

- (a) a distribution of a security of the issuer's own issue if a dividend or distribution out of earnings, surplus, capital or other sources payable in respect of the issuer's securities is applied to the purchase of the security, and
- (b) subject to subsection (2), a distribution of a security of the issuer's own issue if the security holder makes an optional cash payment to purchase the security of the issuer that trades on a marketplace.

(2) ~~The~~[Subsection \(1\) does not apply unless the](#) aggregate number of securities issued under the optional cash payment referred to in subsection (1)(b) ~~must~~[does](#) not exceed, in ~~any~~[the](#) financial year of the issuer during which the distribution takes place, 2% of the issued and outstanding securities of the class to which the plan relates as at the beginning of the financial year.

(3) A plan that permits ~~the distributions~~ a distribution described in subsection (1)(a) or (b) must be available to every security holder in Canada to which the dividend or distribution out of earnings, surplus, capital or other sources is available.

(4) ~~This section~~ Subsection (1) does not apply to a distribution of a security of an investment fund.

(5) Subject to section ~~8.4.1~~, 8.3.1, if the security distributed under a plan described in subsection (1) is of a different class or series than the class or series of the security to which the dividend or distribution is attributable, the issuer or the trustee, custodian or administrator must have provided to each participant that is eligible to receive a security under the plan either a description of the material attributes and characteristics of the security distributed under the plan or notice of a source from which the participant can obtain the information without charge.

### Accredited investor

Refer to Appendix D of ~~NI~~ National Instrument 45-102 *Resale of Securities*. First trades are subject to a restricted period on resale.

2.3 (1) The prospectus requirement does not apply to a distribution of a security if the purchaser purchases the security as principal and is an accredited investor.

(2) Subject to subsection (3), for the purpose of this section, a trust company or trust corporation described in paragraph (p) of the definition of “accredited investor” in section 1.1 [*Definitions*] is deemed to be purchasing as principal.

(3) Subsection (2) does not apply to a trust company or trust corporation registered under the laws of Prince Edward Island that is not registered or authorized under the *Trust and Loan Companies Act* (Canada) or under comparable legislation in another jurisdiction of Canada.

(4) For the purpose of this section, a person described in paragraph (q) of the definition of “accredited investor” in section 1.1 [*Definitions*] is deemed to be purchasing as principal.

(5) This section does not apply to a distribution of a security to a person if ~~that~~ the person ~~is~~ was created, or is used, solely to purchase or hold securities as an accredited investor ~~as~~ described in paragraph (m) of the definition of “accredited investor” in section 1.1 [*Definitions*].

### Private issuer

Refer to Appendix E of ~~NI~~ National Instrument 45-102 *Resale of Securities*. First trades are subject to a seasoning period on resale.

2.4 (1) In this section,

“private issuer” means an issuer

- (a) that is not a reporting issuer or an investment fund,
- (b) ~~whose~~ the securities of which, other than non-convertible debt securities,

- (i) are subject to restrictions on transfer that are contained in the issuer's constating documents or security holders' agreements, and
  - (ii) are beneficially owned, ~~directly or indirectly~~, by not more than 50 persons, not including employees and former employees of the issuer or its affiliates, provided that each person is counted as one beneficial owner unless the person is created or used solely to purchase or hold securities of the issuer in which case each beneficial owner or each beneficiary of the person, as the case may be, must be counted as a separate beneficial owner, and
- (c) that
- (i) has distributed its securities only to persons described in subsection (2), or
  - (ii) has completed a transaction and immediately following the completion of the transaction, its securities were beneficially owned, ~~directly or indirectly~~, only by persons described in subsection (2) and since the completion of the transaction has distributed its securities only to persons described in subsection (2).

(2) The prospectus requirement does not apply to a distribution of a security of a private issuer to a person who purchases the security as principal and is

- (a) a director, officer, employee, founder or control person of the issuer,
- (b) ~~an~~ a director, officer or employee of ~~the issuer or~~ an affiliate of the issuer,
- (c) a spouse, parent, grandparent, brother, sister, child or grandchild of a director, executive officer, founder or control person of the issuer,
- (d) a parent, grandparent, brother, sister, child or grandchild of the spouse of a director, executive officer, founder or control person of the issuer,
- (e) a close personal friend of a director, executive officer, founder or control person of the issuer,
- (f) a close business associate of a director, executive officer, founder or control person of the issuer,
- (g) a spouse, parent, grandparent, brother, sister, child or grandchild of the selling security holder or of the selling security holder's spouse,
- (h) a security holder of the issuer,
- (i) an accredited investor,
- (j) a person of which a majority of the voting securities are beneficially owned by, or a majority of the directors are, persons described in paragraphs (a) to (h),
- (k) a trust or estate of which all of the beneficiaries or a majority of the trustees or executors are persons described in paragraphs (a) to (h), or

- (l) a person that is not the public.

(3) Except for a distribution to an accredited investor, no commission or finder's fee may be paid to any director, officer, founder or control person of an issuer in connection with a distribution under subsection (2).

#### **Family, friends and business associates**

Refer to Appendix D of ~~NI~~[National Instrument](#) 45-102 *Resale of Securities*. First trades are subject to a restricted period on resale.

**2.5 (1)** Except in Ontario and subject to section 2.6 [*Family, friends and business associates -- Saskatchewan*], the prospectus requirement does not apply to a distribution of a security to a person who purchases the security as principal and is

- (a) a director, executive officer or control person of the issuer, or of an affiliate of the issuer,
- (b) a spouse, parent, grandparent, brother, sister, child or grandchild of a director, executive officer or control person of the issuer, or of an affiliate of the issuer,
- (c) a parent, grandparent, brother, sister, child or grandchild of the spouse of a director, executive officer or control person of the issuer or of an affiliate of the issuer,
- (d) a close personal friend of a director, executive officer or control person of the issuer, or of an affiliate of the issuer,
- (e) a close business associate of a director, executive officer or control person of the issuer, or of an affiliate of the issuer,
- (f) a founder of the issuer or a spouse, parent, grandparent, brother, sister, child, grandchild, close personal friend or close business associate of a founder of the issuer,
- (g) a parent, grandparent, brother, sister, child or grandchild of a spouse of a founder of the issuer,
- (h) a person of which a majority of the voting securities are beneficially owned by, or a majority of the directors are, persons described in paragraphs (a) to (g), or
- (i) a trust or estate of which all of the beneficiaries or a majority of the trustees or executors are persons described in paragraphs (a) to (g).

(2) No commission or finder's fee may be paid to any director, officer, founder, or control person of an issuer or an affiliate of the issuer in connection with a distribution under subsection (1).

#### **Family, friends and business associates - Saskatchewan**

**2.6 (1)** In Saskatchewan, section 2.5 [*Family, friends and business associates*] does not apply unless the person making the distribution obtains a signed risk acknowledgement from the purchaser in the required form for a distribution to

- (a) a person described in section 2.5(1) (d) or (e) [*Family, friends and business associates*],
- (b) a close personal friend or close business associate of a founder of the issuer, or
- (c) a person described in section 2.5(1)(h) or (i) [*Family, friends and business associates*] if the distribution is based in whole or in part on a close personal friendship or close business association.

(2) The person making the distribution must retain the required form referred to in subsection (1) for 8 years after the distribution.

#### **Founder, control person and family - Ontario**

**Refer to Appendix D of [NI National Instrument 45-102 Resale of Securities](#). First trades are subject to a restricted period on resale.**

2.7 In Ontario, the prospectus requirement does not apply to a distribution to a person who purchases the security as principal and is

- (a) a founder of the issuer,
- (b) an affiliate of a founder of the issuer,
- (c) a spouse, parent, brother, sister, grandparent, [grandchild](#) or child of an executive officer, director or founder of the issuer, or
- (d) a person that is a control person of the issuer.

#### **Affiliates**

**Refer to Appendix D of [NI National Instrument 45-102 Resale of Securities](#). First trades are subject to a restricted period on resale.**

2.8 The prospectus requirement does not apply to a distribution by an issuer of a security of its own issue to an affiliate of the issuer that is purchasing as principal.

#### **Offering memorandum**

**Refer to Appendix D of [NI National Instrument 45-102 Resale of Securities](#). First trades are subject to a restricted period on resale.**

2.9 (1) In British Columbia, New Brunswick, Nova Scotia and Newfoundland and Labrador, the prospectus requirement does not apply to a distribution by an issuer of a security of its own issue to a purchaser if

- (a) the purchaser purchases the security as principal, and

- (b) at the same time or before the purchaser signs the agreement to purchase the security, the issuer
  - (i) delivers an offering memorandum to the purchaser in compliance with subsections (5) to (~~11~~13), and
  - (ii) obtains a signed risk acknowledgement from the purchaser in compliance with subsection (~~12~~15).

(2) In Alberta, Manitoba, Northwest Territories, Nunavut, Prince Edward Island, Québec ~~and~~, Saskatchewan and Yukon, the prospectus requirement does not apply to a distribution by an issuer of a security of its own issue to a purchaser if

- (a) the purchaser purchases the security as principal,
- (b) the purchaser is an eligible investor or the acquisition cost to the purchaser does not exceed \$10 000,
- (c) at the same time or before the purchaser signs the agreement to purchase the security, the issuer
  - (i) delivers an offering memorandum to the purchaser in compliance with subsections (5) to (~~11~~13), and
  - (ii) obtains a signed risk acknowledgement from the purchaser in compliance with subsection (~~12~~15), and
- (d) if the issuer is an investment fund, the investment fund is
  - (i) a non-redeemable investment fund, or
  - (ii) a mutual fund that is a reporting issuer.

(3) In Alberta, Manitoba, Northwest Territories, Nunavut, Prince Edward Island, Québec ~~and~~, Saskatchewan and Yukon, this section does not apply to a distribution of a security to a person described in paragraph (a) of the definition of "eligible investor" in section 1.1 [Definitions] if that person ~~is~~was created ~~or is used~~, solely to purchase or hold securities in reliance on the exemption from the prospectus requirement set out in subsection (2).

(4) No commission or finder's fee may be paid to any person, other than a registered dealer, in connection with a distribution to a purchaser in the Northwest Territories, Nunavut ~~and~~, Saskatchewan and Yukon under subsection (2).

(5) An offering memorandum delivered under this section must be in the required form.

(6) If the securities legislation where the purchaser is resident does not provide a comparable right, an offering memorandum delivered under this section must provide the purchaser with a contractual right to cancel the agreement to purchase the security by delivering a notice to the issuer not later than midnight on the 2<sup>nd</sup> business day after the purchaser signs the agreement to purchase the security.

(7) If the securities legislation where the purchaser is resident does not provide statutory rights of action in the event of a misrepresentation in an offering memorandum delivered under this section, the offering memorandum must contain a contractual right of action against the issuer for rescission or damages that

- (a) is available to the purchaser if the offering memorandum, or any information or documents incorporated or deemed to be incorporated by reference into the offering memorandum, contains a misrepresentation, without regard to whether the purchaser relied on the misrepresentation,
- (b) is enforceable by the purchaser delivering a notice to the issuer
  - (i) in the case of an action for rescission, within 180 days after the purchaser signs the agreement to purchase the security, or
  - (ii) in the case of an action for damages, before the earlier of
    - A) 180 days after the purchaser first has knowledge of the facts giving rise to the cause of action, or
    - B) 3 years after the date the purchaser signs the agreement to purchase the security,
- (c) is subject to the defence that the purchaser had knowledge of the misrepresentation,
- (d) in the case of an action for damages, provides that the amount recoverable
  - (i) must not exceed the price at which the security was offered, and
  - (ii) does not include all or any part of the damages that the issuer proves does not represent the depreciation in value of the security resulting from the misrepresentation, and
- (e) is in addition to, and does not detract from, any other right of the purchaser.

(8) An offering memorandum delivered under this section must contain a certificate that states the following:

“This offering memorandum does not contain a misrepresentation.”

(9) ~~A~~If the issuer is a company, a certificate under subsection (8) must be signed

- (a) by the issuer’s chief executive officer and chief financial officer or, if the issuer does not have a chief executive officer or chief financial officer, ~~a person~~an individual acting in that capacity,
- (b) on behalf of the directors of the issuer, by
  - (i) ~~by~~ any 2 directors who are authorized to sign, other than the persons referred to in paragraph (a), or
  - (ii) ~~by~~ all the directors of the issuer, and

(c) by each promoter of the issuer.

**(10)** If the issuer is a trust, a certificate under subsection (8) must be signed by

(a) the individuals who perform functions for the issuer similar to those performed by the chief executive officer and the chief financial officer of a company, and

(b) each trustee and the manager of the issuer.

**(10.1)** If a trustee or the manager that is signing the certificate of the issuer is

(a) an individual, the individual must sign the certificate,

(b) a company, the certificate must be signed

(i) by the chief executive officer and the chief financial officer of the trustee or the manager, and

(ii) on behalf of the board of directors of the trustee or the manager, by

(A) any two directors of the trustee or the manager, other than the persons referred to in subparagraph (i), or

(B) all of the directors of the trustee or the manager,

(c) a limited partnership, the certificate must be signed by each general partner of the limited partnership as described in subsection (11.1) in relation to an issuer that is a limited partnership, or

(d) not referred to in paragraphs (a), (b) or (c), the certificate may be signed by any person or company with authority to act on behalf of the trustee or the manager.

**(10.2)** Despite subsections (10) and (10.1), if the issuer is an investment fund and the declaration of trust, trust indenture or trust agreement establishing the investment fund delegates the authority to do so, or otherwise authorizes an individual or company to do so, the certificate may be signed by the individual or company to whom the authority is delegated or that is authorized to sign the certificate.

**(10.3)** Despite subsections (10) and (10.1), if the trustees of an issuer, other than an investment fund, do not perform functions for the issuer similar to those performed by the directors of a company, the trustees are not required to sign the certificate of the issuer if at least two individuals who perform functions for the issuer similar to those performed by the directors of a company sign the certificate.

**(11)** If the issuer is a limited partnership, a certificate under subsection (8) must be signed by

(a) each individual who performs a function for the issuer similar to any of those performed by the chief executive officer or the chief financial officer of a company, and

(b) each general partner of the issuer.

**(11.1)** If a general partner of the issuer is

- (a) an individual, the individual must sign the certificate.
- (b) a company, the certificate must be signed
  - (i) by the chief executive officer and the chief financial officer of the general partner, and
  - (ii) on behalf of the board of directors of the general partner, by
    - (A) any two directors of the general partner, other than the persons referred to in subparagraph (i), or
    - (B) all of the directors of the general partner.
- (c) a limited partnership, the certificate must be signed by each general partner of the limited partnership and, for greater certainty, this subsection applies to each general partner required to sign.
- (d) a trust, the certificate must be signed by the trustees of the general partner as described in subsection 10 in relation to an issuer that is a trust, or
- (e) not referred to in paragraphs (a) to (d), the certificate may be signed by any person or company with authority to act on behalf of the general partner.

(12) If an issuer is not a company, trust or limited partnership, a certificate under subsection (8) must be signed by the persons that, in relation to the issuer, are in a similar position or perform a similar function to any of the persons referred to in subsections (9), (10), (10.1), (10.2), (10.3), (11) and (11.1).

(13) A certificate under subsection (8) must be true

- (a) at the date the certificate is signed, and
- (b) at the date the offering memorandum is delivered to the purchaser.

~~(14)~~ If a certificate under subsection (8) ceases to be true after it is delivered to the purchaser, the issuer cannot accept an agreement to purchase the security from the purchaser unless

- (a) the purchaser receives an update of the offering memorandum,
- (b) the update of the offering memorandum contains a newly dated certificate signed in compliance with subsection (9), (10), (10.1), (10.2), (10.3), (11) or (11.1) and
- (c) the purchaser re-signs the agreement to purchase the security.

~~(15)~~ A risk acknowledgement under subsection (1) or (2) must be in the required form and an issuer relying on ~~either of those subsections~~ subsection (1) or (2) must retain the signed risk acknowledgment for 8 years after the distribution.

~~(16)~~ The issuer must

- (a) hold in trust all consideration received from the purchaser in connection with a distribution of a security under subsection (1) or (2) until midnight on the 2<sup>nd</sup> business day after the purchaser signs the agreement to purchase the security, and
- (b) return all consideration to the purchaser promptly if the purchaser exercises the right to cancel the agreement to purchase the security described under subsection (6).

~~(1417)~~ The issuer must file a copy of an offering memorandum delivered under this section and any update of a previously filed offering memorandum with the securities regulatory authority on or before the 10<sup>th</sup> day after the distribution under the offering memorandum or update of the offering memorandum.

~~(1518)~~ If a qualifying issuer uses a form of offering memorandum that allows the qualifying issuer to incorporate previously filed information into the offering memorandum by reference, the qualifying issuer is exempt from the requirement under ~~NI~~[National Instrument](#) 43-101 [Standards of Disclosure for Mineral Projects](#) to file a technical report to support scientific or technical information about the qualifying issuer's mineral project in the offering memorandum or incorporated by reference into the offering memorandum if the information about the mineral project is contained in a previously filed technical report under ~~NI 43-101~~[National Instrument 43-101 Standards of Disclosure for Mineral Projects](#).

#### Minimum amount investment

Refer to Appendix D of ~~NI~~[National Instrument](#) 45-102 *Resale of Securities*. First trades are subject to a restricted period on resale.

**2.10 (1)** The prospectus requirement does not apply to a distribution of a security to a person if

- (a) that person purchases as principal,
- (b) the security has an acquisition cost to the purchaser of not less than \$150 000 paid in cash at the time of the distribution, and
- (c) the distribution is of a security of a single issuer.

**(2)** ~~This section~~[Subsection \(1\)](#) does not apply to a distribution of a security to a person if ~~that~~[the](#) person ~~is~~[was](#) created, or ~~is~~[is](#) used, solely to purchase or hold securities in reliance on ~~the~~[this](#) exemption from the prospectus requirement set out in subsection (1).

### Division 2: Transaction Exemptions

#### Business combination and reorganization

Refer to Appendix E of ~~NI~~[National Instrument](#) 45-102 *Resale of Securities*. First trades are subject to a seasoning period on resale.

**2.11** The prospectus requirement does not apply to a distribution of a security in connection with

- (a) an amalgamation, merger, reorganization or arrangement that is under a statutory procedure,

- (b) an amalgamation, merger, reorganization or arrangement that
  - (i) is described in an information circular made pursuant to ~~NI~~[National Instrument 51-102 \*Continuous Disclosure Obligations\*](#) or in a similar disclosure record and the information circular or similar disclosure record is delivered to each security holder whose approval of the amalgamation, merger, reorganization or arrangement is required before it can proceed, and
  - (ii) is approved by the security holders referred to in subparagraph (i), or
- (c) a dissolution or winding-up of the issuer.

#### Asset acquisition

**Refer to Appendix D of ~~NI~~[National Instrument 45-102 \*Resale of Securities\*](#). First trades are subject to a restricted period on resale.**

**2.12** The prospectus requirement does not apply to a distribution by an issuer of a security of its own issue to a person as consideration for the acquisition, directly or indirectly, of the assets of the person, if those assets have a fair value of not less than \$150 000.

#### Petroleum, natural gas and mining properties

**Refer to Appendix D of ~~NI~~[National Instrument 45-102 \*Resale of Securities\*](#). First trades are subject to a restricted period on resale.**

**2.13** The prospectus requirement does not apply to a distribution by an issuer of a security of its own issue as consideration for the acquisition, directly or indirectly, of petroleum, natural gas or mining properties or any interest in them.

#### Securities for debt

**Refer to Appendix D of ~~NI~~[National Instrument 45-102 \*Resale of Securities\*](#). First trades are subject to a restricted period on resale.**

**2.14** The prospectus requirement does not apply to a distribution by a reporting issuer of a security of its own issue to a creditor to settle a bona fide debt of that reporting issuer.

#### Issuer acquisition or redemption

**This provision is not cited in any Appendix of ~~NI~~[National Instrument 45-102 \*Resale of Securities\*](#).**

**2.15** The prospectus requirement does not apply to a distribution of a security to the issuer of the security.

## Take-over bid and issuer bid

Refer to section 2.11 or Appendix E of [NI National Instrument 45-102 Resale of Securities](#). First trades are subject to a seasoning period on resale unless the requirements of section 2.11 of [NI National Instrument 45-102](#) are met.

**2.16** The prospectus requirement does not apply to a distribution of a security in connection with a take-over bid in a jurisdiction of Canada or an issuer bid in a jurisdiction of Canada.

## Offer to acquire to security holder outside local jurisdiction

Refer to Appendix E of [NI National Instrument 45-102 Resale of Securities](#). First trades are subject to a seasoning period on resale.

**2.17** The prospectus requirement does not apply to a distribution by a security holder outside the local jurisdiction to a person in the local jurisdiction if the distribution would have been in connection with a take-over bid or issuer bid made by that person were it not for the fact that the security holder is outside of the local jurisdiction.

## Division 3: Investment Fund Exemptions

### Investment fund reinvestment

Refer to Appendix E of [NI National Instrument 45-102 Resale of Securities](#). First trades are subject to a seasoning period on resale.

**2.18 (1)** Subject to subsections (3), (4), (5) and (6), the prospectus requirement does not apply to the following distributions by an investment fund, [and the investment fund manager of the fund](#), to a security holder of the investment fund if the distributions are permitted by a plan of the investment fund:

- (a) a distribution of a security of the investment fund's own issue if a dividend or distribution out of earnings, surplus, capital or other sources payable in respect of the investment fund's securities is applied to the purchase of the security that is of the same class or series as the securities to which the dividend or distribution out of earnings, surplus, capital or other sources is attributable, and
- (b) subject to subsection (2), a distribution of a security of the investment fund's own issue if the security holder makes an optional cash payment to purchase the security of the investment fund that is of the same class or series of securities described in paragraph (a) that trade on a marketplace.

**(2)** The aggregate number of securities issued under the optional cash payment referred to in subsection (1) (b) must not exceed, in any financial year of the investment fund during which the distribution takes place, 2% of the issued and outstanding securities of the class to which the plan relates as at the beginning of the financial year.

(3) A plan that permits the distributions described in subsection (1) must be available to every security holder in Canada to which the dividend or distribution out of earnings, surplus, capital or other sources is available.

(4) ~~No sales~~ A person must not charge ~~is payable on a fee for~~ a distribution described in subsection (1).

(5) An investment fund that is a reporting issuer and in continuous distribution must set out in its current prospectus:

- (a) details of any deferred or contingent sales charge or redemption fee that is payable at the time of the redemption of the security,
- (b) any right that the security holder has to make an election to receive cash instead of securities on the payment of a dividend or making of a distribution by the investment fund, and
- (c) instructions on how the right referred to in paragraph (b) can be exercised.

(6) An investment fund that is a reporting issuer and is not in continuous distribution must provide the information required by subsection (5) in its prospectus, annual information form or a material change report.

#### Additional investment in investment funds

**Refer to Appendix D of ~~NI~~ National Instrument 45-102 *Resale of Securities*. First trades are subject to a restricted period on resale.**

2.19 The prospectus requirement does not apply to a distribution by an investment fund, or the investment fund manager of the fund, of a security of ~~its~~ the investment fund's own issue to a security holder of the ~~issuer~~ investment fund if

- (a) the security holder initially acquired securities of the investment fund as principal for an acquisition cost of not less than \$150 000 paid in cash at the time of the distribution,
- (b) the ~~subsequent~~ distribution is ~~for of~~ a security of the same class or series as the ~~initial distribution~~ securities initially acquired, as described in paragraph (a), and
- (c) the security holder, as at the date of the ~~subsequent~~ distribution, holds securities of the investment fund that have
  - (i) an acquisition cost of not less than \$150 000, or
  - (ii) a net asset value of not less than \$150 000.

#### Private investment club

**Refer to Appendix E of ~~NI~~ National Instrument 45-102 *Resale of Securities*. First trades are subject to a seasoning period on resale.**

**2.20** The prospectus requirement does not apply to a distribution of a security of an investment fund if the investment fund

- (a) has no more than 50 beneficial security holders,
- (b) does not seek and has never sought to borrow money from the public,
- (c) does not and has never distributed its securities to the public,
- (d) does not pay or give any remuneration for investment management or administration advice in respect of trades in securities, except normal brokerage fees, and
- (e) for the purpose of financing the operations of the investment fund, requires security holders to make contributions in proportion to the value of the securities held by them.

**Private investment fund - loan and trust pools**

Refer to Appendix E of ~~NI~~[National Instrument](#) 45-102 *Resale of Securities*. First trades are subject to a seasoning period on resale.

**2.21 (1)** Subject to subsection (2), the prospectus requirement does not apply to a distribution of a security of an investment fund if the investment fund

- (a) is administered by a trust company or trust corporation that is registered or authorized by an enactment of Canada or a jurisdiction of Canada to carry on business in Canada or a jurisdiction of Canada,
- (b) has no promoter or [investment fund](#) manager other than the trust company or trust corporation referred to in paragraph (a), and
- (c) co-mingles the money of different estates and trusts for the purpose of facilitating investment.

**(2)** ~~Despite subsection (1), a~~[A](#) trust company or trust corporation registered under the laws of Prince Edward Island that is not registered under the *Trust and Loan Companies Act* (Canada) or under comparable legislation in another jurisdiction of Canada is not a trust company or trust corporation for the purpose of ~~subsections~~[subparagraph](#) (1)(a).

**Division 4: Employee, Executive Officer, Director and Consultant Exemptions**

**Definitions**

**2.22** In this Division and in Division 4 of Part 3 of this Instrument

“**associate**”, when used to indicate a relationship with a person, means

- (a) an issuer of which the person beneficially owns or controls, directly or indirectly, voting securities entitling the person to more than 10% of the voting rights attached to outstanding voting securities of the issuer,
- (b) any partner of the person,
- (c) any trust or estate in which the person has a substantial beneficial interest or in respect of which the person serves as trustee or executor or in a similar capacity, or
- (d) in the case of an individual, a relative of that individual, including
  - (i) a spouse of that individual, or
  - (ii) a relative of that individual's spouse
 if the relative has the same home as that individual;

**“associated consultant”** means, for an issuer, a consultant of the issuer or of a related entity of the issuer if

- (a) the consultant is an associate of the issuer or of a related entity of the issuer, or
- (b) the issuer or a related entity of the issuer is an associate of the consultant;

**“compensation”** means an issuance of securities in exchange for services provided or to be provided and includes an issuance of securities for the purpose of providing an incentive;

**“consultant”** means, for an issuer, a person, other than an employee, executive officer, or director of the issuer or of a related entity of the issuer, that

- (a) is engaged to provide services to the issuer or a related entity of the issuer, other than services provided in relation to a distribution,
- (b) provides the services under a written contract with the issuer or a related entity of the issuer, and
- (c) spends or will spend a significant amount of time and attention on the affairs and business of the issuer or a related entity of the issuer

and includes

- (d) for an individual consultant, a corporation of which the individual consultant is an employee or shareholder, and a partnership of which the individual consultant is an employee or partner; and
- (e) for a consultant that is not an individual, an employee, executive officer, or director of the consultant, provided that the individual employee, executive officer, or director spends or will spend a significant amount of time and attention on the affairs and business of the issuer or a related entity of the issuer.

**“holding entity”** means a person that is controlled by an individual;

**“investor relations activities”** means activities or communications, by or on behalf of an issuer or a security holder of the issuer, that promote or could reasonably be expected to promote the purchase or sale of securities of the issuer, but does not include

- (a) the dissemination of information or preparation of records in the ordinary course of the business of the issuer
  - (i) to promote the sale of products or services of the issuer, or
  - (ii) to raise public awareness of the issuerthat cannot reasonably be considered to promote the purchase or sale of securities of the issuer,
- (b) activities or communications necessary to comply with the requirements of
  - (i) securities legislation of any jurisdiction of Canada,
  - (ii) the securities laws of any foreign jurisdiction governing the issuer, or
  - (iii) any exchange or market on which the issuer’s securities trade, or
- (c) activities or communications necessary to follow securities directions of any jurisdiction of Canada;

**“investor relations person”** means a person that is a registrant or that provides services that include investor relations activities;

**“issuer bid requirements”** means the requirements under securities legislation that apply to an issuer bid;

**“listed issuer”** means an issuer, any of the securities of which

- (a) are listed and not suspended, or the equivalent, from trading on
  - ~~(i) the Toronto Stock Exchange,~~
  - (i) TSX Inc.,
  - (ii) TSX Venture Exchange Inc.,
  - ~~(iii) the American Stock Exchange LLC,~~
  - (iii) NYSE Amex Equities,
  - (iv) The New York Stock Exchange, ~~Inc.,~~
  - (v) the London Stock Exchange ~~Limited,~~ or
- (b) are quoted on the Nasdaq Stock Market;

**“permitted assign”** means, for a person that is an employee, executive officer, director or consultant of an issuer or of a related entity of the issuer,

- (a) a trustee, custodian, or administrator acting on behalf of, or for the benefit of the person,
- (b) a holding entity of the person,
- (c) ~~an~~ RRSP ~~or a~~ RRIF or TFSA of the person,
- (d) a spouse of the person,
- (e) a trustee, custodian, or administrator acting on behalf of, or for the benefit of the spouse of the person,
- (f) a holding entity of the spouse of the person, or
- (g) ~~an~~ RRSP ~~or a~~ RRIF or TFSA of the spouse of the person;

**“plan”** means a plan or program established or maintained by an issuer providing for the acquisition of securities of the issuer by persons described in section 2.24(1) [*Employee, executive officer, director and consultant*] as compensation;

**“related entity”** means, for an issuer, a person that controls or is controlled by the issuer or that is controlled by the same person that controls the issuer;

**“related person”** means, for an issuer,

- (a) a director or executive officer of the issuer or of a related entity of the issuer,
- (b) an associate of a director or executive officer of the issuer or of a related entity of the issuer, or
- (c) a permitted assign of a director or executive officer of the issuer or of a related entity of the issuer;

**“security holder approval”** means an approval for the issuance of securities of an issuer as compensation or under a plan

- (a) given by a majority of the votes cast at a meeting of security holders of the issuer other than votes attaching to securities beneficially owned by related persons to whom securities may be issued as compensation or under that plan, or
- (b) evidenced by a resolution signed by all the security holders entitled to vote at a meeting, if the issuer is not required to hold a meeting; and

**“support agreement”** includes an agreement to provide assistance in the maintenance or servicing of indebtedness of the borrower and an agreement to provide consideration for the purpose of maintaining or servicing indebtedness of the borrower.

## **Interpretation**

**2.23 (1)** In this Division, a person (first person) is considered to control another person (second person) if the first person, directly or indirectly, has the power to direct the management and policies of the second person by virtue of

- (a) ownership of or direction over voting securities in the second person,
- (b) a written agreement or indenture,
- (c) being the general partner or controlling the general partner of the second person, or
- (d) being a trustee of the second person.

**(2)** In this Division, participation in a distribution is considered voluntary if

- (a) in the case of an employee or the employee's permitted assign, the employee or the employee's permitted assign is not induced to participate in the distribution by expectation of employment or continued employment of the employee with the issuer or a related entity of the issuer,
- (b) in the case of an executive officer or the executive officer's permitted assign, the executive officer or the executive officer's permitted assign is not induced to participate in the distribution by expectation of appointment, employment, continued appointment or continued employment of the executive officer with the issuer or a related entity of the issuer,
- (c) in the case of a consultant or the consultant's permitted assign, the consultant or the consultant's permitted assign is not induced to participate in the distribution by expectation of engagement of the consultant to provide services or continued engagement of the consultant to provide services to the issuer or a related entity of the issuer, and
- (d) in the case of an employee of a consultant, the individual is not induced by the issuer, a related entity of the issuer, or the consultant to participate in the distribution by expectation of employment or continued employment with the consultant.

#### **Employee, executive officer, director and consultant**

Refer to Appendix E of [NINational Instrument](#) 45-102 *Resale of Securities*. First trades are subject to a seasoning period on resale.

**2.24 (1)** Subject to section 2.25 [*Unlisted reporting issuer exception*], the prospectus requirement does not apply to a distribution

- (a) by an issuer in a security of its own issue, or
- (b) by a control person of an issuer of a security of the issuer or of an option to acquire a security of the issuer,

with

- (c) an employee, executive officer, director or consultant of the issuer,
- (d) an employee, executive officer, director or consultant of a related entity of the issuer, or
- (e) a permitted assign of a person referred to in paragraphs (c) or (d)

if participation in the distribution is voluntary.

(2) For the purposes of subsection (1), a person referred to in paragraph (c), (d) or (e) includes a trustee, custodian or administrator acting as agent for that person for the purpose of facilitating a trade.

### **Unlisted reporting issuer exception**

**2.25 (1)** For the purpose of this section, “**unlisted reporting issuer**” means a reporting issuer in a jurisdiction of Canada that is not a listed issuer.

(2) Subject to subsection (3), section 2.24 [*Employee, executive officer, director and consultant*] does not apply to a distribution to an employee or consultant of the unlisted reporting issuer who is an investor relations person of the issuer, an associated consultant of the issuer, an executive officer of the issuer, a director of the issuer, or a permitted assign of those persons if, after the distribution,

- (a) the number of securities, calculated on a fully diluted basis, reserved for issuance under options granted to
  - (i) related persons, exceeds 10% of the outstanding securities of the issuer, or
  - (ii) a related person, exceeds 5% of the outstanding securities of the issuer, or
- (b) the number of securities, calculated on a fully diluted basis, issued within 12 months to
  - (i) related persons, exceeds 10% of the outstanding securities of the issuer, or
  - (ii) a related person and the associates of the related person, exceeds 5% of the outstanding securities of the issuer.

(3) Subsection (2) does not apply to a distribution if the unlisted reporting issuer

- (a) obtains security holder approval, and
- (b) before obtaining security holder approval, provides security holders with the following information in sufficient detail to permit security holders to form a reasoned judgment concerning the matter:
  - (i) the eligibility of employees, executive officers, directors, and consultants to be issued or granted securities as compensation or under a plan;
  - (ii) the maximum number of securities that may be issued, or in the case of options, the number of securities that may be issued on exercise of the options, as compensation or under a plan;

- (iii) particulars relating to any financial assistance or support agreement to be provided to participants by the issuer or any related entity of the issuer to facilitate the purchase of securities as compensation or under a plan, including whether the assistance or support is to be provided on a full-, part-, or non-recourse basis;
- (iv) in the case of options, the maximum term and the basis for the determination of the exercise price;
- (v) particulars relating to the options or other entitlements to be granted as compensation or under a plan, including transferability; and
- (vi) the number of votes attaching to securities that, to the issuer's knowledge at the time the information is provided, will not be included for the purpose of determining whether security holder approval has been obtained.

**Distributions among current or former employees, executive officers, directors, or consultants of non-reporting issuer**

Refer to Appendix E of ~~NI~~[National Instrument](#) 45-102 *Resale of Securities*. First trades are subject to a seasoning period on resale.

**2.26 (1)** Subject to subsection (2), the prospectus requirement does not apply to a distribution of a security of an issuer by

- (a) a current or former employee, executive officer, director, or consultant of the issuer or related entity of the issuer, or
- (b) a permitted assign of a person referred to in paragraph (a),

to

- (c) an employee, executive officer, director, or consultant of the issuer or a related entity of the issuer, or
- (d) a permitted assign of the employee, executive officer, director, or consultant.

**(2)** The exemption in subsection (1) is only available if

- (a) participation in the distribution is voluntary,
- (b) the issuer of the security is not a reporting issuer in any jurisdiction of Canada, and
- (c) the price of the security being distributed is established by a generally applicable formula contained in a written agreement among some or all of the security holders of the issuer to which the transferee is or will become a party.

## Permitted transferees

**Refer to Appendix E of ~~NI~~[National Instrument 45-102 Resale of Securities](#). First trades are subject to a seasoning period on resale.**

**2.27 (1)** Subject to section 2.28, the prospectus requirement does not apply to a distribution of a security of an issuer acquired by a person described in section 2.24(1) [*Employee, executive officer, director and consultant*] under a plan of the issuer if the distribution

- (a) is between
  - (i) a person who is an employee, executive officer, director or consultant of the issuer or a related entity of the issuer, and
  - (ii) the permitted assign of that person,or
- (b) is between permitted assigns of that person.

**(2)** Subject to section 2.28, the prospectus requirement does not apply to a distribution of a security of an issuer by a trustee, custodian or administrator acting on behalf, or for the benefit, of employees, executive officers, directors or consultants of the issuer or a related entity of the issuer, to

- (a) an employee, executive officer, director or consultant of the issuer or a related entity of the issuer, or
- (b) a permitted assign of a person referred to in paragraph (a),

if the security was acquired from

- (c) an employee, executive officer, director or consultant of the issuer or a related entity of the issuer, or
- (d) the permitted assign of a person referred to in paragraph (c).

**(3)** For the purposes of the exemptions in subsection (1) and paragraphs (2) (c) and (d), all references to employee, executive officer, director, or consultant include a former employee, executive officer, director, or consultant.

## Limitation re: permitted transferees

**2.28** The exemption from the prospectus requirement under subsection 2.27(1) or (2) is only available if the security was acquired

- (a) by a person described in section 2.24(1) [*Employee, executive officer, director, and consultant*] under any exemption that makes the resale of the security subject to section 2.6 of ~~NI 45-102~~,[National Instrument 45-102 Resale of Securities](#), or

- (b) in Manitoba, ~~and the Yukon,~~ by a person described in section 2.24(1) [*Employee, executive officer, director, and consultant*].

### **Issuer bid**

**2.29** The issuer bid requirements do not apply to the acquisition by an issuer of a security of its own issue that was acquired by a person described in section 2.24(1) [*Employee, executive officer, director, and consultant*] if

- (a) the purpose of the acquisition by the issuer is to
- (i) fulfill withholding tax obligations, or
  - (ii) provide payment of the exercise price of a stock option,
- (b) the acquisition by the issuer is made in accordance with the terms of a plan that specifies how the value of the securities acquired by the issuer is determined,
- (c) in the case of securities acquired as payment of the exercise price of a stock option, the date of exercise of the option is chosen by the option holder, and
- (d) the aggregate number of securities acquired by the issuer within a 12 month period under this section does not exceed 5% of the outstanding securities of the class or series at the beginning of the period.

### **Division 5: Miscellaneous Exemptions**

#### **Isolated distribution by issuer**

**Refer to Appendix D of ~~NI~~[National Instrument 45-102 Resale of Securities](#). First trades are subject to a restricted period.**

**2.30** The prospectus requirement does not apply to a distribution by an issuer of a security of its own issue if the distribution is an isolated distribution and is not made

- (a) in the course of continued and successive transactions of a like nature, and
- (b) by a person whose usual business is trading in securities.

#### **Dividends and distributions**

**Subsection (1) is cited in Appendix E of ~~NI~~[National Instrument 45-102 Resale of Securities](#). First trades are subject to a seasoning period on resale.**

**Subsection (2) is cited in Appendix D and Appendix E of ~~NI~~[National Instrument 45-102](#). Resale restriction is determined by the exemption under which the previously issued security was first acquired.**

**2.31 (1)** The prospectus requirement does not apply to a distribution by an issuer of a security of its own issue to a security holder of the issuer as a dividend or distribution out of earnings, surplus, capital or other sources.

**(2)** The prospectus requirement does not apply to a distribution by an issuer to a security holder of the issuer of a security of a reporting issuer as an in specie dividend or distribution out of earnings or surplus.

#### **Distribution to lender by control person for collateral**

**This provision is not cited in any Appendix of ~~NI~~[National Instrument](#) 45-102 *Resale of Securities*. Trades by a lender, pledgee, mortgagee or other encumbrancer to realize on a debt are regulated by section 2.8 of ~~NI~~[National Instrument](#) 45-102.**

**2.32** The prospectus requirement does not apply to a distribution of a security of an issuer to a lender, pledgee, mortgagee or other encumbrancer from the holdings of a control person of the issuer for the purpose of giving collateral for a bona fide debt of the control person.

#### **Acting as underwriter**

**Refer to Appendix F of ~~NI~~[National Instrument](#) 45-102 *Resale of Securities*. First trades are a distribution**

**2.33** The prospectus requirement does not apply to a distribution of a security between a person and a purchaser acting as an underwriter or between or among persons acting as underwriters.

#### **Specified debt**

**This provision is not cited in any Appendix of ~~NI~~[National Instrument](#) 45-102 *Resale of Securities*. These securities are free trading.**

**2.34 (1)** In this section, “**permitted supranational agency**” means

- (a) the African Development Bank, established by the Agreement Establishing the African Development Bank which came into force on September 10, 1964, that Canada became a member of on December 30, 1982;
- (b) the Asian Development Bank, established under a resolution adopted by the United Nations Economic and Social Commission for Asia and the Pacific in 1965;
- (c) the Caribbean Development Bank, established by the Agreement Establishing the Caribbean Development Bank which came into force on January 26, 1970, as amended, that Canada is a founding member of;
- (d) the European Bank for Reconstruction and Development, established by the Agreement Establishing the European Bank for Reconstruction and Development and approved by the *European Bank for Reconstruction and Development Agreement Act* (Canada), that Canada is a founding member of;

- (e) the Inter-American Development Bank, established by the Agreement establishing the Inter-American Development Bank which became effective December 30, 1959, as amended from time to time, that Canada is a member of;
- (f) the International Bank for Reconstruction and Development, established by the Agreement for an International Bank for Reconstruction and Development approved by the *Bretton Woods and Related Agreements Act* (Canada); and
- (g) the International Finance Corporation, established by Articles of Agreement approved by the *Bretton Woods and Related Agreements Act* (Canada).

(2) The prospectus requirement does not apply to a distribution of

- (a) a debt security ~~(a) — of issued by~~ or guaranteed by the Government of Canada or the government of a jurisdiction of Canada,
- (b) ~~of a debt security issued by~~ or guaranteed by a government of a foreign jurisdiction if the debt security has an approved credit rating from an approved credit rating organization,
- (c) ~~of a debt security issued by~~ or guaranteed by ~~any~~ municipal corporation in Canada, or secured by or payable out of rates or taxes levied under the law of a jurisdiction of Canada on property in the jurisdiction and ~~to be collected~~ collectable by or through the municipality in which the property is situated,
- (d) ~~of a debt security issued by~~ or guaranteed by a Canadian financial institution or a Schedule III bank, other than debt securities that are subordinate in right of payment to deposits held by the issuer or guarantor of those debt securities,
- (d.1) in Ontario, a debt security issued by or guaranteed by a loan corporation, trust company, trust corporation, insurance company, treasury branch, credit union, caisse populaire, financial services cooperative, or league that, in each case, is authorized by an enactment of a jurisdiction of Canada other than Ontario to carry on business in a jurisdiction of Canada, other than debt securities that are subordinate in right of payment to deposits held by the issuer or guarantor of those debt securities,
- (e) ~~of a debt security issued by~~ the Comité de gestion de la taxe scolaire de l'île de Montréal, or
- (f) ~~of a debt security issued by~~ or guaranteed by a permitted supranational agency if the debt securities are payable in the currency of Canada or the United States of America.

(3) Paragraphs (2)(a), (c) and (d) do not apply in Ontario.

**In Ontario, paragraphs 73(1)(a) and (b) of the *Securities Act* (Ontario) provide similar exemptions to the exemptions in paragraphs (2)(a), (c) and (d).**

#### Short-term debt

**This provision is not cited in any Appendix of NI National Instrument 45-102 *Resale of Securities*. These securities are free trading.**

2.35 The prospectus requirement does not apply to a distribution of a negotiable promissory note or commercial paper maturing not more than one year from the date of issue, if the note or commercial paper distributed

- (a) is not convertible or exchangeable into or accompanied by a right to purchase another security other than a security described in this section, and
- (b) has an approved credit rating from an approved credit rating organization.

### Mortgages

This provision is not cited in any Appendix of ~~NI~~ [National Instrument 45-102 Resale of Securities](#). These securities are free trading.

2.36 (1) In this section, “**syndicated mortgage**” means a mortgage in which 2 or more persons participate, directly or indirectly, as a lender in a debt obligation that is secured by ~~a~~ [the](#) mortgage.

(2) ~~Subject~~ [Except in Ontario, and subject](#) to subsection (3), the prospectus requirement does not apply to a distribution of a mortgage on real property in a jurisdiction [of Canada](#) by a person who is registered or licensed, or exempted from registration or licensing, under mortgage brokerage or mortgage dealer legislation of that jurisdiction.

(3) In Alberta, British Columbia, Manitoba, Québec and Saskatchewan, subsection (2) does not apply to a [distribution of a](#) syndicated mortgage.

[In Ontario, paragraph 73\(1\)\(a\) of the Securities Act \(Ontario\) provides a similar exemption.](#)

### Personal property security legislation

This provision is not cited in any Appendix of ~~NI~~ [National Instrument 45-102 Resale of Securities](#). These securities are free trading.

2.37 ~~The~~ [Except in Ontario, the](#) prospectus requirement does not apply to a distribution ~~of~~ [to a person, other than an individual, in](#) a security evidencing indebtedness secured by or under a security agreement ~~provided for under,~~ [secured in accordance with](#) personal property security legislation of a jurisdiction ~~providing~~ [of Canada that provides](#) for the granting of security in personal property ~~if the security is not offered for sale to an individual.~~

[In Ontario, paragraph 73\(1\)\(a\) of the Securities Act \(Ontario\) provides a similar exemption.](#)

### Not for profit issuer

This provision is not cited in any Appendix of ~~NI~~ [National Instrument 45-102 Resale of Securities](#). These securities are free trading.

**2.38** The prospectus requirement does not apply to a distribution by an issuer that is organized exclusively for educational, benevolent, fraternal, charitable, religious or recreational purposes and not for profit in a security of its own issue if

- (a) no part of the net earnings benefit any security holder of the issuer, and
- (b) no commission or other remuneration is paid in connection with the sale of the security.

**Variable insurance contract**

**This provision is not cited in any Appendix of ~~NI~~ [National Instrument 45-102 Resale of Securities](#). These securities are free trading.**

**2.39 (1)** In this section,

- (a) “**contract**” “**group insurance**”, “**insurance company**”, “**life insurance**” and “**policy**” have the respective meanings assigned to them in the legislation for a jurisdiction referenced in Appendix A.
- (b) “**variable insurance contract**” means a contract of life insurance under which the interest of the purchaser is valued for purposes of conversion or surrender by reference to the value of a proportionate interest in a specified portfolio of assets.

**(2)** The prospectus requirement does not apply to a distribution of a variable insurance contract by an insurance company if the variable insurance contract is

- (a) a contract of group insurance,
- (b) a whole life insurance contract providing for the payment at maturity of an amount not less than 75% of the premium paid up to age 75 years for a benefit payable at maturity,
- (c) an arrangement for the investment of policy dividends and policy proceeds in a separate and distinct fund to which contributions are made only from policy dividends and policy proceeds, or
- (d) a variable life annuity.

**RRSP/RRIF/[TFSA](#)**

**Refer to Appendix D and Appendix E of ~~NI~~ [National Instrument 45-102 Resale of Securities](#). The resale restriction is determined by the exemption under which the security was first acquired.**

**2.40** The prospectus requirement does not apply to a distribution of a security between

- (a) an individual or an associate of the individual, and
- (b) ~~an~~ [RRSP](#) ~~or~~ [RRIF](#) ~~or~~ [TFSA](#)

- (i) established for or by the individual, or
- (ii) under which the individual is a beneficiary.

### Schedule III banks and cooperative associations - evidence of deposit

This provision is not cited in any Appendix of ~~NI~~[National Instrument 45-102 Resale of Securities](#). These securities are free trading.

2.41 ~~The~~[Except in Ontario, the](#) prospectus requirement does not apply to a distribution of an evidence of deposit issued by a Schedule III bank or an association governed by the *Cooperative Credit Associations Act* (Canada).

[In Ontario, clause \(e\) of the definition of “security” in subsection 1\(1\) of the Securities Act \(Ontario\) excludes these evidences of deposit from the definition of “security”.](#)

### Conversion, exchange, or exercise

Subsection (1)(a) is cited in Appendix D and Appendix E of ~~NI~~[National Instrument 45-102 Resale of Securities](#). Resale restriction is determined by the exemption under which the previously issued security was first acquired.

Subsection (1)(b) is cited in Appendix E of ~~NI~~[National Instrument 45-102 Resale of Securities](#). First trades are subject to a seasoning period on resale, unless the requirements of section 2.10 of NI 45-102 are met.

2.42 (1) The prospectus requirement does not apply to a distribution by an issuer if

- (a) the issuer distributes a security of its own issue to a security holder of the issuer in accordance with the terms and conditions of a security previously issued by that issuer, or
- (b) subject to subsection (2), the issuer distributes a security of a reporting issuer held by it to a security holder of the issuer in accordance with the terms and conditions of a security previously issued by that issuer.

~~(2) For a distribution under subsection (1)(b),~~

[\(2\) Subsection \(1\)\(b\) does not apply unless](#)

- (a) the issuer ~~must give~~[has given](#) the regulator or, in Québec, the securities regulatory authority, prior written notice stating the date, amount, nature and conditions of the distribution, and
- (b) the regulator or, in Québec, the securities regulatory authority, ~~must~~[has not object](#)[objected](#) in writing to the distribution within 10 days of receipt of the notice referred to in paragraph (a) or, if the regulator or securities regulatory authority objects to the distribution, the issuer must deliver to the regulator or securities regulatory authority

information relating to the securities that is satisfactory to and accepted by the regulator or securities regulatory authority.

### Self-directed registered educational savings plans

This provision is not cited in any Appendix of ~~NI~~ National Instrument 45-102 *Resale of Securities*. These securities are free trading.

2.43 The prospectus requirement does not apply to a distribution of a self-directed RESP to a subscriber if

- (a) the distribution is conducted by
  - (i) a ~~mutual fund dealer or a person who is registered as a salesperson, partner or officer~~ dealing representative of a mutual fund dealer ~~and~~ who is acting on behalf of the mutual fund dealer, ~~or~~
  - (ii) a Canadian financial institution, ~~or, in Ontario, a financial intermediary or a person who is an officer, salesperson or employee of a Canadian financial institution or, in Ontario, a financial intermediary and who is acting on behalf of the Canadian financial institution or, in Ontario, the~~
  - (iii) in Ontario, a financial intermediary, and
- (b) the self-directed RESP restricts its investments in securities to securities in which the person who ~~distributed~~ distributes the self-directed RESP is permitted to distribute.

## PART 3: REGISTRATION EXEMPTIONS

### Application

~~3.0 — On • [being six months after the coming into force of National Instrument 31-103 *Registration Requirements*], Part 3 does not apply in any jurisdiction except British Columbia and Manitoba.~~

~~3.01 — On • [being six months after the coming into force of National Instrument 31-103 *Registration Requirements*] in British Columbia and Manitoba, Part 3 does not apply to any person who is registered in any jurisdiction.~~

### Removal of exemptions – market intermediaries

~~3.02~~ 3.0 (1) Subject to subsection (2), in Ontario and Newfoundland and Labrador, the exemptions from the dealer registration requirement under the following sections are not available for a market intermediary except for a trade in a security with a registered dealer that is an affiliate of the market intermediary:

- (a) section 3.1 [*Rights offering*];
- (b) section 3.3 [*Accredited investor*];

- (c) section 3.4 [*Private issuer*];
- (d) section 3.7 [*Founder, control person and family - Ontario*];
- (e) section 3.10 [*Minimum amount investment*];
- (f) section 3.11 [*Business combination and reorganization*];
- (g) section 3.12 [*Asset acquisition*];
- (h) section 3.14 [*Securities for debt*];
- (i) section 3.15 [*Issuer acquisition or redemption*];
- (j) section 3.16 [*Take-over bid and issuer bid*];
- (k) section 3.17 [*Offer to acquire to security holder outside local jurisdiction*];
- (l) section 3.19 [*Additional investment in investment funds*];
- (m) section 3.21 [*Private investment fund - loan and trust pools*];
- (n) section 3.29 [*Isolated trade*];
- (o) section 3.30 [*Isolated trade by issuer*];
- (p) section 3.31 [*Dividends and distributions*];
- (q) section 3.33 [*Acting as underwriter*];
- (r) section 3.34 [*Specified debt*];
- (s) section 3.35 [*Short-term debt*];
- (t) section 3.39 [*Variable insurance contract*];
- (u) section 3.42 [*Conversion, exchange, or exercise*];
- (v) section 3.44 [*Registered dealer*].

(2) Subsection (1) does not apply in respect of a trade in a security by a lawyer or accountant if the trade is incidental to the principal business of that lawyer or accountant.

**Person or company not in the business of trading**

~~3.03 In British Columbia and in New Brunswick, notwithstanding section 3.0 or section 3.01, a person or company may trade a security without registration if the person or company~~

- ~~(a) — is not engaged in the business of trading securities or exchange contracts as a principal or agent; and~~

~~(b) — does not hold himself or itself out as engaging in the business of trading in securities or exchanges contracts as a principal or agent.~~

## Division 1: Capital Raising Exemptions

### Rights offering

**3.1** The dealer registration requirement does not apply in respect of a trade by an issuer in a right granted by the issuer to purchase a security of its own issue to a security holder of the issuer if

- (a) the issuer has given the regulator or, in Québec, the securities regulatory authority, prior written notice stating the date, amount, nature and conditions of the trade, including the approximate net proceeds to be derived by the issuer on the basis of the additional securities being fully taken up,
- (b) the regulator or, in Québec, the securities regulatory authority, has not objected in writing to the trade within 10 days of receipt of the notice referred to in paragraph (a) or, if the regulator or securities regulatory authority objects to the trade, the issuer has delivered to the regulator or securities regulatory authority information relating to the securities that is satisfactory to and accepted by the regulator or securities regulatory authority, and
- (c) the issuer has complied with the applicable requirements of National Instrument 45-101 *Rights Offerings*.

### Reinvestment plan

**3.2 (1)** Subject to subsections (3), (4) and (5), the dealer registration requirement does not apply in respect of the following trades by an issuer, or by a trustee, custodian or administrator acting for or on behalf of the issuer, to a security holder of the issuer if the trades are permitted by a plan of the issuer:

- (a) a trade in a security of the issuer's own issue if a dividend or distribution out of earnings, surplus, capital or other sources payable in respect of the issuer's securities is applied to the purchase of the security, and
- (b) subject to subsection (2), a trade in a security of the issuer's own issue if the security holder makes an optional cash payment to purchase the security of the issuer that trades on a marketplace.

**(2)** ~~The~~Subsection (1) does not apply unless the aggregate number of securities issued under the optional cash payment referred to in subsection (1)(b) ~~must~~does not exceed, in ~~any~~the financial year of the issuer during which the trade takes place, 2% of the issued and outstanding securities of the class to which the plan relates as at the beginning of the financial year.

**(3)** A plan that permits the trades described in subsection (1)(a) or (b) must be available to every security holder in Canada to which the dividend or distribution out of earnings, surplus, capital or other sources is available.

**(4)** ~~This section~~Subsection (1) does not apply to a trade in a security of an investment fund.

**(5)** Subject to section ~~8.4.1~~8.3.1, if the security traded under a plan described in subsection (1) is of a different class or series than the class or series of the security to which the dividend or distribution is

attributable, the issuer or the trustee, custodian or administrator must have provided to each participant that is eligible to receive a security under the plan either a description of the material attributes and characteristics of the security traded under the plan or notice of a source from which the participant can obtain the information without charge.

### Accredited investor

**3.3 (1)** The dealer registration requirement does not apply in respect of a trade in a security if the purchaser purchases the security as principal and is an accredited investor.

(2) Subject to subsection (3), for the purpose of this section, a trust company or trust corporation described in paragraph (p) of the definition of “accredited investor” in section 1.1 [*Definitions*] is deemed to be purchasing as principal.

(3) Subsection (2) does not apply to a trust company or trust corporation registered under the laws of Prince Edward Island that is not registered or authorized under the *Trust and Loan Companies Act* (Canada) or under comparable legislation in another jurisdiction of Canada.

(4) For the purpose of this section, a person described in paragraph (q) of the definition of “accredited investor” in section 1.1 [*Definitions*] is deemed to be purchasing as principal.

(5) This section does not apply to a trade in a security to a person if ~~that~~the person ~~is~~was created, or is used, solely to purchase or hold securities as an accredited investor as described in paragraph (m) of the definition of “accredited investor” in section 1.1 [*Definitions*].

### Private issuer

**3.4 (1)** In this section,

“private issuer” means an issuer

- (a) that is not a reporting issuer or an investment fund,
- (b) ~~whose~~the securities of which, other than non-convertible debt securities,
  - (i) are subject to restrictions on transfer that are contained in the issuer’s constituting documents or security holders’ agreements, and
  - (ii) are beneficially owned, ~~directly or indirectly~~, by not more than 50 persons, not including employees and former employees of the issuer or its affiliates, provided that each person is counted as one beneficial owner unless the person is created or used solely to purchase or hold securities of the issuer in which case each beneficial owner or each beneficiary of the person, as the case may be, must be counted as a separate beneficial owner, and
- (c) that
  - (i) has distributed its securities only to persons described in subsection (2), or
  - (ii) has completed a transaction and immediately following the completion of the transaction, its securities were beneficially owned, ~~directly or indirectly~~, only by

persons described in subsection (2) and since the completion of the transaction has distributed its securities only to persons described in subsection (2).

(2) The dealer registration requirement does not apply in respect of a trade in a security of a private issuer to a person who purchases the security as principal and is

- (a) a director, officer, employee, founder or control person of the issuer,
- (b) ~~an~~ a director, officer or employee of ~~the issuer or~~ an affiliate of the issuer,
- (c) a spouse, parent, grandparent, brother, sister, child or grandchild of a director, executive officer, founder or control person of the issuer,
- (d) a parent, grandparent, brother, sister, child or grandchild of the spouse of a director, executive officer, founder or control person of the issuer,
- (e) a close personal friend of a director, executive officer, founder or control person of the issuer,
- (f) a close business associate of a director, executive officer, founder or control person of the issuer,
- (g) a spouse, parent, grandparent, brother, sister, child or grandchild of the selling security holder or of the selling security holder's spouse,
- (h) a security holder of the issuer,
- (i) an accredited investor,
- (j) a person of which a majority of the voting securities are beneficially owned by, or a majority of the directors are, persons described in paragraphs (a) to ~~(h)~~, or
- (k) a trust or estate of which all of the beneficiaries or a majority of the trustees or executors are persons described in paragraphs (a) to ~~(h)~~, or
- (l) a person that is not the public.

(3) Except for a trade to an accredited investor, no commission or finder's fee may be paid to any director, officer, founder or control person of an issuer in connection with a trade under subsection (2).

### **Family, friends and business associates**

**3.5 (1)** Except in Ontario and subject to section 3.6 [*Family, friends and business associates - Saskatchewan*], the dealer registration requirement does not apply in respect of a trade in a security to a person who purchases the security as principal and is

- (a) a director, executive officer or control person of the issuer, or of an affiliate of the issuer,
- (b) a spouse, parent, grandparent, brother, sister, child or grandchild of a director, executive officer or control person of the issuer, or of an affiliate of the issuer,

- (c) a parent, grandparent, brother, sister, child or grandchild of the spouse of a director, executive officer or control person of the issuer or of an affiliate of the issuer,
- (d) a close personal friend of a director, executive officer or control person of the issuer, or of an affiliate of the issuer,
- (e) a close business associate of a director, executive officer or control person of the issuer, or of an affiliate of the issuer,
- (f) a founder of the issuer or a spouse, parent, grandparent, brother, sister, child, grandchild, close personal friend or close business associate of a founder of the issuer,
- (g) a parent, grandparent, brother, sister, child or grandchild of a spouse of a founder of the issuer,
- (h) a person of which a majority of the voting securities are beneficially owned by, or a majority of the directors are, persons described in paragraphs (a) to (g), or
- (i) a trust or estate of which all of the beneficiaries or a majority of the trustees or executors are persons described in paragraphs (a) to (g).

(2) No commission or finder's fee may be paid to any director, officer, founder, or control person of an issuer or an affiliate of the issuer in connection with a trade under subsection (1).

#### **Family, friends and business associates - Saskatchewan**

**3.6 (1)** In Saskatchewan, section 3.5 [*Family, friends and business associates*] does not apply unless the person making the trade obtains a signed risk acknowledgement from the purchaser in the required form for a trade to

- (a) a person described in section 3.5(1) (d) or (e) [*Family, friends and business associates*],
- (b) a close personal friend or close business associate of a founder of the issuer, or
- (c) a person described in section 3.5(1)(h) or (i) [*Family, friends and business associates*] if the trade is based in whole or in part on a close personal friendship or close business association.

(2) The person making the trade must retain the required form referred to in subsection (1) for 8 years after the trade.

#### **Founder, control person and family - Ontario**

**3.7** In Ontario, the dealer registration requirement does not apply in respect of a trade in a security to a person who purchases the security as principal and is

- (a) a founder of the issuer,
- (b) an affiliate of a founder of the issuer,
- (c) a spouse, parent, brother, sister, grandparent, grandchild or child of an executive officer, director or founder of the issuer, or

- (d) a person that is a control person of the issuer.

### **Affiliates**

**3.8** The dealer registration requirement does not apply in respect of a trade by an issuer in a security of its own issue to an affiliate of the issuer that is purchasing as principal.

### **Offering memorandum**

**3.9 (1)** In British Columbia, New Brunswick, Nova Scotia and Newfoundland and Labrador, the dealer registration requirement does not apply in respect of a trade by an issuer in a security of its own issue to a purchaser if

- (a) the purchaser purchases the security as principal, and
- (b) at the same time or before the purchaser signs the agreement to purchase the security, the issuer
  - (i) delivers an offering memorandum to the purchaser in compliance with subsections (5) to (~~11~~13), and
  - (ii) obtains a signed risk acknowledgement from the purchaser in compliance with subsection (~~12~~15).

**(2)** In Alberta, Manitoba, Northwest Territories, Nunavut, Prince Edward Island, Québec ~~and~~, Saskatchewan and Yukon, the dealer registration requirement does not apply in respect of a trade by an issuer in a security of its own issue to a purchaser if

- (a) the purchaser purchases the security as principal,
- (b) the purchaser is an eligible investor or the acquisition cost to the purchaser does not exceed \$10 000,
- (c) at the same time or before the purchaser signs the agreement to purchase the security, the issuer
  - (i) delivers an offering memorandum to the purchaser in compliance with subsections (5) to (~~11~~13), and
  - (ii) obtains a signed risk acknowledgement from the purchaser in compliance with subsection (~~12~~15), and
- (d) if the issuer is an investment fund, the investment fund is
  - (i) a non-redeemable investment fund, or
  - (ii) a mutual fund that is a reporting issuer.

**(3)** In Alberta, Manitoba, Northwest Territories, Nunavut, Prince Edward Island, Québec ~~and~~, Saskatchewan and Yukon, this section does not apply to a trade in a security to a person described in paragraph (a) of the definition of “eligible investor” in section 1.1 [*Definitions*] if that person ~~is~~ was

created, or is used, solely to purchase or hold securities in reliance on an exemption from the dealer registration requirement set out in subsection (2).

(4) No commission or finder's fee may be paid to any person, other than a registered dealer, in connection with a trade to a purchaser in Northwest Territories, Nunavut ~~and~~, Saskatchewan and Yukon under subsection (2).

(5) An offering memorandum delivered under this section must be in the required form.

(6) If the securities legislation where the purchaser is resident does not provide a comparable right, an offering memorandum delivered under this section must provide the purchaser with a contractual right to cancel the agreement to purchase the security by delivering a notice to the issuer not later than midnight on the 2<sup>nd</sup> business day after the purchaser signs the agreement to purchase the security.

(7) If the securities legislation where the purchaser is resident does not provide statutory rights of action in the event of a misrepresentation in an offering memorandum delivered under this section, the offering memorandum must contain a contractual right of action against the issuer for rescission or damages that

- (a) is available to the purchaser if the offering memorandum, or any information or documents incorporated or deemed to be incorporated by reference into the offering memorandum, contains a misrepresentation, without regard to whether the purchaser relied on the misrepresentation,
- (b) is enforceable by the purchaser delivering a notice to the issuer
  - (i) in the case of an action for rescission, within 180 days after the purchaser signs the agreement to purchase the security, or
  - (ii) in the case of an action for damages, before the earlier of
    - A) 180 days after the purchaser first has knowledge of the facts giving rise to the cause of action, or
    - B) 3 years after the date the purchaser signs the agreement to purchase the security,
- (c) is subject to the defence that the purchaser had knowledge of the misrepresentation,
- (d) in the case of an action for damages, provides that the amount recoverable
  - (i) must not exceed the price at which the security was offered, and
  - (ii) does not include all or any part of the damages that the issuer proves does not represent the depreciation in value of the security resulting from the misrepresentation, and
- (e) is in addition to, and does not detract from, any other right of the purchaser.

(8) An offering memorandum delivered under this section must contain a certificate that states the following:

“This offering memorandum does not contain a misrepresentation.”

(9) ▲If the issuer is a company, a certificate under subsection (8) must be signed

- (a) by the issuer’s chief executive officer and chief financial officer or, if the issuer does not have a chief executive officer or chief financial officer, ~~a person~~an individual acting in that capacity,
- (b) on behalf of the directors of the issuer by,
  - (i) ~~by~~ any 2 directors who are authorized to sign, other than the persons referred to in paragraph (a), or
  - (ii) ~~by~~ all the directors of the issuer; and
- (c) by each promoter of the issuer.

(10) If the issuer is a trust, a certificate under subsection (8) must be signed by

- (a) the individuals who perform functions for the issuer similar to those performed by the chief executive officer and the chief financial officer of a company, and
- (b) each trustee and the manager of the issuer.

(10.1) If a trustee or the manager that is signing the certificate of the issuer is

- (a) an individual, the individual must sign the certificate.
- (b) a company, the certificate must be signed
  - (i) by the chief executive officer and the chief financial officer of the trustee or the manager, and
  - (ii) on behalf of the board of directors of the trustee or the manager, by
    - (A) any two directors of the trustee or the manager, other than the persons referred to in subparagraph (i), or
    - (B) all of the directors of the trustee or the manager.
- (c) a limited partnership, the certificate must be signed by each general partner of the limited partnership as described in subsection (11.1) in relation to an issuer that is a limited partnership, or
- (d) not referred to in paragraphs (a), (b) or (c), the certificate may be signed by any person or company with authority to act on behalf of the trustee or the manager.

(10.2) Despite subsections (10) and (10.1), if the issuer is an investment fund and the declaration of trust, trust indenture or trust agreement establishing the investment fund delegates the authority to do so, or otherwise authorizes an individual or company to do so, the certificate may be signed by the individual or company to whom the authority is delegated or that is authorized to sign the certificate.

(10.3) Despite subsections (10) and (10.1), if the trustees of an issuer, other than an investment fund, do not perform functions for the issuer similar to those performed by the directors of a company, the trustees are not required to sign the certificate of the issuer provided that at least two individuals who do perform functions for the issuer similar to those performed by the directors of a company sign the certificate.

(11) If the issuer is a limited partnership, a certificate under subsection (8) must be signed by

- (a) each individual who performs a function for the issuer similar to any of those performed by the chief executive officer or the chief financial officer of a company, and
- (b) each general partner of the issuer.

(11.1) If a general partner of the issuer is

- (a) an individual, the individual must sign the certificate,
- (b) a company, the certificate must be signed
  - (i) by the chief executive officer and the chief financial officer of the general partner, and
  - (ii) on behalf of the board of directors of the general partner, by
    - (A) any two directors of the general partner, other than the persons referred to in subparagraph (i), or
    - (B) all of the directors of the general partner.
- (c) a limited partnership, the certificate must be signed by each general partner of the limited partnership and, for greater certainty, this subsection applies to each general partner required to sign,
- (d) a trust, the certificate must be signed by the trustees of the general partner as described in subsection 10 in relation to an issuer that is a trust, or
- (e) not referred to in paragraphs (a) to (d), the certificate may be signed by any person or company with authority to act on behalf of the general partner.

(12) If an issuer is not a company, trust or limited partnership, a certificate under subsection (8) must be signed by the persons that, in relation to the issuer, are in a similar position or perform a similar function to any of the persons referred to in subsections (9), (10), (10.1), (10.2), (10.3), (11) and (11.1).

(13) A certificate under subsection (8) must be true

- (a) at the date the certificate is signed, and
- (b) at the date the offering memorandum is delivered to the purchaser.

~~(14)~~ (14) If a certificate under subsection (8) ceases to be true after it is delivered to the purchaser, the issuer cannot accept an agreement to purchase the security from the purchaser unless

- (a) the purchaser receives an update of the offering memorandum,
- (b) the update of the offering memorandum contains a newly dated certificate signed in compliance with subsection (9), [\(10\)](#), [\(10.1\)](#), [\(10.2\)](#), [\(10.3\)](#), [\(11\)](#) or [\(11.1\)](#), and
- (c) the purchaser re-signs the agreement to purchase the security.

~~(12)~~[15](#) A risk acknowledgement under subsection (1) or (2) must be in the required form and an issuer relying on subsection (1) or (2) must retain the signed risk acknowledgment for 8 years after the trade.

~~(13)~~[16](#) The issuer must

- (a) hold in trust all consideration received from the purchaser in connection with a trade in a security under subsection (1) or (2) until midnight on the 2<sup>nd</sup> business day after the purchaser signs the agreement to purchase the security, and
- (b) return all consideration to the purchaser promptly if the purchaser exercises the right to cancel the agreement to purchase the security described under subsection (6).

~~(14)~~[17](#) The issuer must file a copy of an offering memorandum delivered under this section and any update of a previously filed offering memorandum with the securities regulatory authority on or before the 10<sup>th</sup> day after the distribution under the offering memorandum or update of the offering memorandum.

~~(15)~~[18](#) If a qualifying issuer uses a form of offering memorandum that allows the qualifying issuer to incorporate previously filed information into the offering memorandum by reference, the qualifying issuer is exempt from the requirement under ~~NI~~[National Instrument](#) 43-101 [Standards of Disclosure for Mineral Projects](#) to file a technical report to support scientific or technical information about the qualifying issuer's mineral project in the offering memorandum or incorporated by reference into the offering memorandum if the information about the mineral project is contained in a previously filed technical report under ~~NI 43-101~~[National Instrument 43-101 Standards of Disclosure for Mineral Projects](#).

### Minimum amount investment

**3.10 (1)** The dealer registration requirement does not apply in respect of a trade in a security to a person if

- (a) that person purchases as principal,
- (b) the security has an acquisition cost to the purchaser of not less than \$150 000 paid in cash at the time of the trade, and
- (c) the trade is in a security of a single issuer.

**(2)** ~~This section~~[Subsection \(1\)](#) does not apply to a trade in a security to a person if ~~that~~[the](#) person ~~is~~[was](#) created, or ~~is~~[is](#) used, solely to purchase or hold securities in reliance on this exemption from the dealer registration requirement [set out in subsection \(1\)](#).

## Division 2: Transaction Exemptions

### Business combination and reorganization

**3.11** The dealer registration requirement does not apply in respect of a trade in a security in connection with

- (a) an amalgamation, merger, reorganization or arrangement that is under a statutory procedure,
- (b) an amalgamation, merger, reorganization or arrangement that
  - (i) is described in an information circular made pursuant to ~~NI~~[National Instrument 51-102 \*Continuous Disclosure Obligations\*](#) or in a similar disclosure record and the information circular or similar disclosure record is delivered to each security holder whose approval of the amalgamation, merger, reorganization or arrangement is required before it can proceed, and
  - (ii) is approved by the security holders referred to in subparagraph (i), or
- (c) a dissolution or winding-up of the issuer.

#### **Asset acquisition**

**3.12** The dealer registration requirement does not apply in respect of a trade by an issuer in a security of its own issue to a person as consideration for the acquisition, directly or indirectly, of the assets of the person, if those assets have a fair value of not less than \$150 000.

#### **Petroleum, natural gas and mining properties**

**3.13** The dealer registration requirement does not apply in respect of a trade by an issuer in a security of its own issue as consideration for the acquisition, directly or indirectly, of petroleum, natural gas or mining properties or any interest in them.

#### **Securities for debt**

**3.14** The dealer registration requirement does not apply in respect of a trade by a reporting issuer in a security of its own issue to a creditor to settle a bona fide debt of that reporting issuer.

#### **Issuer acquisition or redemption**

**3.15** The dealer registration requirement does not apply in respect of a trade in a security to the issuer of the security.

#### **Take-over bid and issuer bid**

**3.16** The dealer registration requirement does not apply in respect of a trade in a security in connection with a take-over bid in a jurisdiction of Canada or an issuer bid in a jurisdiction of Canada.

#### **Offer to acquire to security holder outside local jurisdiction**

**3.17** The dealer registration requirement does not apply in respect of a trade by a security holder outside the local jurisdiction to a person in the local jurisdiction if the trade would have been in connection with a take-over bid or issuer bid made by that person were it not for the fact that the security holder is outside of the local jurisdiction.

### Division 3: Investment Fund Exemptions

#### Investment fund reinvestment

**3.18 (1)** Subject to subsections (3), (4), (5) and (6), the dealer registration requirement does not apply in respect of the following trades by an investment fund, and the investment fund manager of the fund, to a security holder of the investment fund if the trades are permitted by a plan of the investment fund:

- (a) a trade in a security of the investment fund's own issue if a dividend or distribution out of earnings, surplus, capital or other sources payable in respect of the investment fund's securities is applied to the purchase of the security that is of the same class or series as the securities to which the dividend or distribution out of earnings, surplus, capital or other sources is attributable, and
- (b) subject to subsection (2), a trade in a security of the investment fund's own issue if the security holder makes an optional cash payment to purchase the security of the investment fund that is of the same class or series of securities described in paragraph (a) that trade on a marketplace.

(2) The aggregate number of securities issued under the optional cash payment referred to in subsection (1) (b) must not exceed, in any financial year of the investment fund during which the trade takes place, 2% of the issued and outstanding securities of the class to which the plan relates as at the beginning of the financial year.

(3) A plan that permits the trades described in subsection (1) must be available to every security holder in Canada to which the dividend or distribution out of earnings, surplus, capital or other sources is available.

(4) ~~No sales~~ A person must not charge ~~is payable on~~ a fee for a trade described in subsection (1).

(5) An investment fund that is a reporting issuer and in continuous distribution must set out in its current prospectus:

- (a) details of any deferred or contingent sales charge or redemption fee that is payable at the time of the redemption of the security,
- (b) any right that the security holder has to make an election to receive cash instead of securities on the payment of a dividend or making of a distribution by the investment fund, and

(c) instructions on how the right referred to in paragraph (b) can be exercised.

(6) An investment fund that is a reporting issuer and is not in continuous distribution must provide the information required by subsection (5) in its prospectus, annual information form or a material change report.

#### Additional investment in investment funds

**3.19** The dealer registration requirement does not apply in respect of a trade by an investment fund, or the investment fund manager of the fund, in a security of ~~its~~ the investment fund's own issue ~~to~~ with a security holder of the ~~issuer~~ investment fund if

- (a) the security holder initially acquired securities of the investment fund as principal for an acquisition cost of not less than \$150 000 paid in cash at the time of the trade ,
- (b) the ~~subsequent~~ trade is ~~for~~in respect of a security of the same class or series as the ~~initial trade~~securities initially acquired, as described in paragraph (a), and
- (c) the security holder, as at the date of the ~~subsequent~~ trade, holds securities of the investment fund that have
  - (i) an acquisition cost of not less than \$150 000, or
  - (ii) a net asset value of not less than \$150 000.

### **Private investment club**

**3.20** The dealer registration requirement does not apply in respect of a trade in a security of an investment fund if the investment fund

- (a) has no more than 50 beneficial security holders,
- (b) does not seek and has never sought to borrow money from the public,
- (c) does not and has never distributed its securities to the public,
- (d) does not pay or give any remuneration for investment management or administration advice in respect of trades in securities, except normal brokerage fees, and
- (e) for the purpose of financing the operations of the investment fund, requires security holders to make contributions in proportion to the value of the securities held by them.

### **Private investment fund - loan and trust pools**

**3.21 (1)** ~~The~~Subject to subsection (2), the dealer registration requirement does not apply in respect of a trade in a security of an investment fund if the investment fund

- (a) is administered by a trust company or trust corporation that is registered or authorized by an enactment of Canada or a jurisdiction of Canada to carry on business in Canada or a jurisdiction of Canada,
- (b) has no promoter or investment fund manager other than the trust company or trust corporation referred to in paragraph (a), and
- (c) co-mingles the money of different estates and trusts for the purpose of facilitating investment.

**(2)** ~~Despite subsection (1), a~~ trust company or trust corporation registered under the laws of Prince Edward Island that is not registered under the *Trust and Loan Companies Act* (Canada) or under comparable legislation in another jurisdiction of Canada is not a trust company or trust corporation for the purpose of subparagraph (1)(a).

(3) The investment fund manager registration requirement does not apply to a trust company or trust corporation that administers an investment fund referred to in subsection (1)(a).

#### **Division 4: Employee, Executive Officer, Director and Consultant Exemptions**

##### **Definitions**

**3.22** The definitions in Division 4 of Part 2 of this Instrument have the same meaning in this Division.

##### **Interpretation**

**3.23 (1)** In this Division, a person (first person) is considered to control another person (second person) if the first person, directly or indirectly, has the power to direct the management and policies of the second person by virtue of

- (a) ownership of or direction over voting securities in the second person,
- (b) a written agreement or indenture,
- (c) being the general partner or controlling the general partner of the second person, or
- (d) being a trustee of the second person.

**(2)** In this Division, participation in a trade is considered voluntary if

- (a) in the case of an employee or the employee's permitted assign, the employee or the employee's permitted assign is not induced to participate in the trade by expectation of employment or continued employment of the employee with the issuer or a related entity of the issuer,
- (b) in the case of an executive officer or the executive officer's permitted assign, the executive officer or the executive officer's permitted assign is not induced to participate in the trade by expectation of appointment, employment, continued appointment or continued employment of the executive officer with the issuer or a related entity of the issuer,
- (c) in the case of a consultant or the consultant's permitted assign, the consultant or the consultant's permitted assign is not induced to participate in the trade by expectation of engagement of the consultant to provide services or continued engagement of the consultant to provide services to the issuer or a related entity of the issuer, and
- (d) in the case of an employee of a consultant, the individual is not induced by the issuer, a related entity of the issuer, or the consultant to participate in the trade by expectation of employment or continued employment with the consultant.

##### **Employee, executive officer, director and consultant**

**3.24 (1)** Subject to section 3.25 [*Unlisted reporting issuer exception*], the dealer registration requirement does not apply in respect of

- (a) a trade by an issuer in a security of its own issue, or
- (b) a trade by a control person of an issuer in a security of the issuer or in an option to acquire a security of the issuer,

with

- (c) an employee, executive officer, director or consultant of the issuer,
- (d) an employee, executive officer, director or consultant of a related entity of the issuer, or
- (e) a permitted assign of a person referred to in paragraphs (c) or (d)

if participation in the trade is voluntary.

(2) For the purposes of subsection (1), a person referred to in paragraph (c), (d) or (e) includes a trustee, custodian or administrator acting as agent for that person for the purpose of facilitating a trade.

(3) The dealer registration requirement does not apply in respect of an act by a related entity of an issuer in furtherance of a trade referred to in subsection (1).

#### **Unlisted reporting issuer exception**

**3.25 (1)** For the purpose of this section, “**unlisted reporting issuer**” means a reporting issuer in a jurisdiction of Canada that is not a listed issuer.

(2) Subject to subsection (3), section 3.24 [*Employee, executive officer, director and consultant*] does not apply to a trade to an employee or consultant of the unlisted reporting issuer who is an investor relations person of the issuer, an associated consultant of the issuer, an executive officer of the issuer, a director of the issuer, or a permitted assign of those persons if, after the trade,

- (a) the number of securities, calculated on a fully diluted basis, reserved for issuance under options granted to
  - (i) related persons, exceeds 10% of the outstanding securities of the issuer, or
  - (ii) a related person, exceeds 5% of the outstanding securities of the issuer, or
- (b) the number of securities, calculated on a fully diluted basis, issued within 12 months to
  - (i) related persons, exceeds 10% of the outstanding securities of the issuer, or
  - (ii) a related person and the associates of the related person, exceeds 5% of the outstanding securities of the issuer.

(3) Subsection (2) does not apply to a trade if the unlisted reporting issuer

- (a) obtains security holder approval, and

- (b) before obtaining security holder approval, provides security holders with the following information in sufficient detail to permit security holders to form a reasoned judgment concerning the matter:
- (i) the eligibility of employees, executive officers, directors, and consultants to be issued or granted securities as compensation or under a plan;
  - (ii) the maximum number of securities that may be issued, or in the case of options, the number of securities that may be issued on exercise of the options, as compensation or under a plan;
  - (iii) particulars relating to any financial assistance or support agreement to be provided to participants by the issuer or any related entity of the issuer to facilitate the purchase of securities as compensation or under a plan, including whether the assistance or support is to be provided on a full-, part-, or non-recourse basis;
  - (iv) in the case of options, the maximum term and the basis for the determination of the exercise price;
  - (v) particulars relating to the options or other entitlements to be granted as compensation or under a plan, including transferability; and
  - (vi) the number of votes attaching to securities that, to the issuer's knowledge at the time the information is provided, will not be included for the purpose of determining whether security holder approval has been obtained.

**Trades among current or former employees, executive officers, directors, or consultants of non-reporting issuer**

**3.26 (1)** Subject to subsection (2), the dealer registration requirement does not apply in respect of a trade in a security of an issuer by

- (a) a current or former employee, executive officer, director, or consultant of the issuer or related entity of the issuer, or
- (b) a permitted assign of a person referred to in paragraph (a),

to

- (c) an employee, executive officer, director, or consultant of the issuer or a related entity of the issuer, or
- (d) a permitted assign of the employee, executive officer, director, or consultant.

**(2)** The exemption in subsection (1) is only available if

- (a) participation in the trade is voluntary,
- (b) the issuer of the security is not a reporting issuer in any jurisdiction of Canada, and

- (c) the price of the security being traded is established by a generally applicable formula contained in a written agreement among some or all of the security holders of the issuer to which the transferee is or will become a party.

### **Permitted transferees**

**3.27 (1)** The dealer registration requirement does not apply in respect of a trade in a security of an issuer acquired by a person described in section 3.24(1) [*Employee, executive officer, director and consultant*] under a plan of the issuer if the trade

- (a) is between
  - (i) a person who is an employee, executive officer, director or consultant of the issuer or a related entity of the issuer, and
  - (ii) the permitted assign of that person,or
- (b) is between permitted assigns of that person.

**(2)** The dealer registration requirement does not apply in respect of a trade in a security of an issuer by a trustee, custodian or administrator acting on behalf, or for the benefit, of employees, executive officers, directors or consultants of the issuer or a related entity of the issuer, to

- (a) an employee, executive officer, director or consultant of the issuer or a related entity of the issuer, or
- (b) a permitted assign of a person referred to in paragraph (a),

if the security was acquired from

- (c) an employee, executive officer, director or consultant of the issuer or a related entity of the issuer, or
- (d) the permitted assign of a person referred to in paragraph (c).

**(3)** For the purposes of the exemptions in subsection (1) and paragraphs (2) (c) and (d), all references to employee, executive officer, director, or consultant include a former employee, executive officer, director, or consultant.

### **Resale - non-reporting issuer**

**3.28** The dealer registration requirement does not apply in respect of the resale of a security that was acquired under this Division or by a person described in section 3.24(1) [*Employee, executive officer, director, and consultant*] if the conditions in section 2.14 of [NI National Instrument 45-102 Resale of Securities](#) are satisfied.

## **Division 5: Miscellaneous Exemptions**

### **Isolated trade**

**3.29** The dealer registration requirement does not apply in respect of a trade in a security by a person if the trade is an isolated trade and is not made

- (a) by the issuer of the security,
- (b) in the course of continued and successive transactions of a like nature, and
- (c) by a person whose usual business is trading in securities.

#### **Isolated trade by issuer**

**3.30** The dealer registration requirement does not apply in respect of a trade by an issuer in a security of its own issue if the trade is an isolated trade and is not made

- (a) in the course of continued and successive transactions of a like nature, and
- (b) by a person whose usual business is trading in securities.

#### **Dividends and distributions**

**3.31 (1)** The dealer registration requirement does not apply in respect of a trade by an issuer in a security of its own issue to a security holder of the issuer as a dividend or distribution out of earnings, surplus, capital or other sources.

**(2)** The dealer registration requirement does not apply in respect of a trade by an issuer to a security holder of the issuer in a security of a reporting issuer as an in specie dividend or distribution out of earnings or surplus.

#### **Trade to lender by control person for collateral**

**3.32** The dealer registration requirement does not apply in respect of a trade in a security of an issuer to a lender, pledgee, mortgagee or other encumbrancer from the holdings of a control person of the issuer for the purpose of giving collateral for a bona fide debt of the control person.

#### **Acting as underwriter**

**3.33** The dealer registration requirement does not apply in respect of a trade in a security between a person and a purchaser acting as an underwriter or between or among persons acting as underwriters.

#### **Specified debt**

**3.34 (1)** In this section, “**permitted supranational agency**” means

- (a) the African Development Bank, established by the Agreement Establishing the African Development Bank which came into force on September 10, 1964, that Canada became a member of on December 30, 1982;
- (b) the Asian Development Bank, established under a resolution adopted by the United Nations Economic and Social Commission for Asia and the Pacific in 1965;

- (c) the Caribbean Development Bank, established by the Agreement Establishing the Caribbean Development Bank which came into force on January 26, 1970, as amended, that Canada is a founding member of;
- (d) the European Bank for Reconstruction and Development, established by the Agreement Establishing the European Bank for Reconstruction and Development and approved by the *European Bank for Reconstruction and Development Agreement Act* (Canada), that Canada is a founding member of;
- (e) the Inter-American Development Bank, established by the Agreement establishing the Inter-American Development Bank which became effective December 30, 1959, as amended from time to time, that Canada is a member of;
- (f) the International Bank for Reconstruction and Development, established by the Agreement for an International Bank for Reconstruction and Development approved by the *Bretton Woods and Related Agreements Act* (Canada); and
- (g) the International Finance Corporation, established by Articles of Agreement approved by the *Bretton Woods and Related Agreements Act* (Canada).

(2) The dealer registration requirement does not apply in respect of a trade in

- (a) a debt security ~~(a)~~ ~~—~~ ~~issued by~~ or guaranteed by the Government of Canada or the government of a jurisdiction of Canada,
- (b) ~~a debt security issued by~~ or guaranteed by a government of a foreign jurisdiction if the debt security has an approved credit rating from an approved credit rating organization,
- (c) ~~a debt security issued by~~ or guaranteed by ~~any~~ municipal corporation in Canada, or secured by or payable out of rates or taxes levied under the law of a jurisdiction of Canada on property in the jurisdiction and ~~to be collected~~ collectable by or through the municipality in which the property is situated,
- (d) ~~a debt security issued by~~ or guaranteed by a Canadian financial institution or a Schedule III bank, other than debt securities that are subordinate in right of payment to deposits held by the issuer or guarantor of those debt securities,
- (e) ~~a debt security issued by~~ the Comité de gestion de la taxe scolaire de l'île de Montréal, or
- (f) ~~a debt security issued by~~ or guaranteed by a permitted supranational agency if the debt securities are payable in the currency of Canada or the United States of America.

(3) Paragraphs (2)(a) and (c) do not apply in Ontario.

<p><u>In Ontario, paragraphs 35(1)1 and 35(1)2 of the <i>Securities Act</i> (Ontario) provide similar exemptions as the exemptions in paragraphs (2)(a) and (c).</u></p>
--

**Short-term debt**

**3.35** The dealer registration requirement does not apply in respect of a trade in a negotiable promissory note or commercial paper maturing not more than one year from the date of issue, if the note or commercial paper traded

- (a) is not convertible or exchangeable into or accompanied by a right to purchase another security other than a security described in this section, and
- (b) has an approved credit rating from an approved credit rating organization.

### **Mortgages**

**3.36 (1)** In this section, “**syndicated mortgage**” means a mortgage in which 2 or more persons participate, directly or indirectly, as a lender in a debt obligation that is secured by ~~a~~the mortgage.

**(2)** ~~Subject~~Except in Ontario, and subject to subsection (3), the dealer registration requirement does not apply in respect of a trade in a mortgage on real property in a jurisdiction of Canada by a person who is registered or licensed, or exempted from registration or licensing, under mortgage brokerage or mortgage dealer legislation of that jurisdiction.

**(3)** In Alberta, British Columbia, Manitoba, Québec and Saskatchewan, subsection (2) does not apply ~~to~~in respect of a trade in a syndicated mortgage.

[In Ontario, subsection 35\(4\) of the Securities Act \(Ontario\) provides a similar exemption.](#)

### **Personal property security legislation**

**3.37** ~~The~~Except in Ontario, the dealer registration requirement does not apply in respect of a trade to a person, other than an individual, in a security evidencing indebtedness secured by or under a security agreement ~~provided for under,~~ secured in accordance with personal property security legislation of a jurisdiction ~~providing~~of Canada that provides for the granting of security in personal property ~~if the security is not offered for sale to an individual.~~

[In Ontario, subsection 35\(2\) of the Securities Act \(Ontario\) provides a similar exemption.](#)

### **Not for profit issuer**

**3.38** The dealer registration requirement does not apply in respect of a trade by an issuer that is organized exclusively for educational, benevolent, fraternal, charitable, religious or recreational purposes and not for profit in a security of its own issue if

- (a) no part of the net earnings benefit any security holder of the issuer, and
- (b) no commission or other remuneration is paid in connection with the sale of the security.

## Variable insurance contract

3.39 (1) In this section,

- (a) “contract” “group insurance”, “insurance company”, “life insurance” and “policy” have the respective meanings assigned to them in the legislation for a jurisdiction referenced in Appendix A.
- (b) “variable insurance contract” means a contract of life insurance under which the interest of the purchaser is valued for purposes of conversion or surrender by reference to the value of a proportionate interest in a specified portfolio of assets.

(2) The dealer registration requirement does not apply in respect of a trade in a variable insurance contract by an insurance company if the variable insurance contract is

- (a) a contract of group insurance,
- (b) a whole life insurance contract providing for the payment at maturity of an amount not less than 75% of the premium paid up to age 75 years for a benefit payable at maturity,
- (c) an arrangement for the investment of policy dividends and policy proceeds in a separate and distinct fund to which contributions are made only from policy dividends and policy proceeds, or
- (d) a variable life annuity.

## RRSP/RRIF/TESA

3.40 The dealer registration requirement does not apply in respect of a trade in a security between

- (a) an individual or an associate of the individual, and
- (b) ~~an~~ RRSP ~~or~~, RRIF ~~or~~ TESA
  - (i) established for or by the individual, or
  - (ii) under which the individual is a beneficiary.

## Schedule III banks and cooperative associations - evidence of deposit

3.41 ~~The~~ Except in Ontario, the dealer registration requirement does not apply in respect of a trade in an evidence of deposit issued by a Schedule III bank or an association governed by the *Cooperative Credit Associations Act* (Canada).

In Ontario, clause (e) of the definition of “security” in subsection 1(1) of the *Securities Act* (Ontario) excludes these evidences of deposit from the definition of “security”.

## Conversion, exchange, or exercise

3.42 (1) The dealer registration requirement does not apply in respect of a trade by an issuer if

- (a) the issuer trades a security of its own issue to a security holder of the issuer in accordance with the terms and conditions of a security previously issued by that issuer, or
- (b) subject to subsection (2), the issuer trades a security of a reporting issuer held by it to a security holder of the issuer in accordance with the terms and conditions of a security previously issued by that issuer.

~~(2) For a trade under subsection (1)(b),~~

(2) Subsection (1)(b) does not apply unless

- (a) the issuer ~~must give~~has given the regulator or, in Québec, the securities regulatory authority, prior written notice stating the date, amount, nature and conditions of the trade, and
- (b) the regulator or, in Québec, the securities regulatory authority, ~~must~~has not ~~object~~objected in writing to the trade within 10 days of receipt of the notice referred to in paragraph (a) or, if the regulator or securities regulatory authority objects to the trade, the issuer must deliver to the regulator or securities regulatory authority information relating to the securities that is satisfactory to and accepted by the regulator or securities regulatory authority.

## Self-directed registered educational savings plans

3.43 The dealer registration requirement does not apply to a trade in a self-directed RESP to a subscriber if

- (a) the trade is made by
  - (i) a ~~mutual fund dealer or a person who is registered as a salesperson, partner or officer~~dealing representative of a mutual fund dealer ~~and~~ who is acting on behalf of the mutual fund dealer, ~~or~~
  - (ii) a Canadian financial institution, ~~or, in Ontario, a financial intermediary or a person who is an officer, salesperson or employee of a Canadian financial institution or, in Ontario, a financial intermediary and who is acting on behalf of the Canadian financial institution or, in Ontario, the~~
  - (iii) in Ontario, a financial intermediary, and
- (b) the self-directed RESP restricts its investments in securities to securities in which the person who ~~traded~~trades the self-directed RESP is permitted to trade.

## Registered dealer

3.44 The dealer registration requirement does not apply in respect of a trade by a person acting solely through an agent who is a registered dealer.

## Exchange contract

**3.45 (1)** In Alberta, British Columbia, Québec and Saskatchewan, the dealer registration requirement does not apply in respect of the following trades in exchange contracts:

- (a) a trade by a person acting solely through a registered dealer;
- (b) subject to subsection (2) and (3), a trade resulting from an unsolicited order placed with an individual who is not a resident of and does not carry on business in the jurisdiction;
- (c) a trade that may occasionally be transacted by employees of a registered dealer if the employees
  - (i) do not usually trade in exchange contracts, and
  - (ii) have been designated by the regulator or, in Québec, the securities regulatory authority, as “non-trading” employees, either individually or as a class.

**(2)** An individual referred to in subsection (1)(b) must not

- (a) advertise or engage in promotional activity that is directed to persons in the jurisdiction during the 6 months preceding the trade, and
- (b) pay any commission or finder’s fee to any person in the jurisdiction in connection with the trade.

**(3)** Subsection (1)(b) does not apply in Saskatchewan.

### **Estates, bankruptcies, and liquidations**

**3.46** The dealer registration requirement does not apply in respect of a trade by a person acting under the authority of

- (a) a direction, order or judgment of a court,
- (b) a will, or
- (c) any law of a jurisdiction

in the course of enforcing legal obligations or administering the affairs of another person.

### **Employees of registered dealer**

**3.47** The dealer registration requirement does not apply in respect of a trade by an employee of a registered dealer in a security if the employee does not usually trade in securities and has been designated [or accepted](#) by the regulator or, in Québec, the securities regulatory authority, as a “non-trading” employee, either individually or as a class.

### **Small security holder selling and purchase arrangements**

**3.48 (1)** For the purposes of this section

“exchange” means

~~(a) the Toronto Stock Exchange,~~  
(a) TSX Inc.,

- (b) the TSX Venture Exchange Inc., or
- (c) an exchange that
  - (i) has a policy that is substantially similar to the policy of the ~~Toronto Stock Exchange~~TSX Inc., and
  - (ii) is designated by the securities regulatory authority for the purpose of this section;

“policy” means

- (a) in the case of the ~~Toronto Stock Exchange, Policy Statement on Small Shareholder Selling and Purchase Arrangements~~TSX Inc., sections 638 and 639 [Odd lot selling and purchase arrangements] of the TSX Company Manual as amended from time to time,
- (b) in the case of the TSX Venture Exchange Inc., Policy 5.7 Small Shareholder Selling and Purchase Arrangements as amended from time to time, or
- (c) in the case of an exchange referred to in paragraph (c) of the definition of “exchange”, the rule, policy or other similar instrument of the exchange on small shareholder selling and purchase arrangements ~~and every successor to that rule, policy or other similar instrument published by that exchange as amended from time to time.~~

(2) The dealer registration requirement does not apply in respect of a trade by an issuer or its agent, in securities of the issuer that are listed on an exchange if

- (a) the trade is an act in furtherance of participation by the holders of the securities in an arrangement that is in accordance with the policy of that exchange,
- (b) the issuer and its agent do not provide advice to a security holder about the security holder’s participation in the arrangement referred to in paragraph (a), other than a description of the arrangement’s operation, procedures for participation in the arrangement, or both,
- (c) the trade is made in accordance with the policy of that exchange, without resort to an exemption from, or variation of, the significant subject matter of the policy, and
- (d) at the time of the trade after giving effect to a purchase under the arrangement, the market value of the maximum number of securities that a security holder is permitted to hold in order to be eligible to participate in the arrangement is not more than \$25 000.

(3) For the purposes of subsection (2)(c), an exemption from, or variation of, the maximum number of securities that a security holder is permitted to hold under a policy in order to be eligible to participate in the arrangement provided for in the policy is not an exemption from, or variation of, the significant subject matter of the policy.

## Adviser

**3.49** The adviser registration requirement does not apply to

- (a) the following persons if performance of services as an adviser are incidental to their principal business or occupation:
  - (i) a Canadian financial institution and a Schedule III bank;
  - (ii) the Business Development Bank of Canada continued under the *Business Development Bank of Canada Act* (Canada);
  - (iii) a société d'entraide économique or the Fédération des sociétés d'entraide économique du Québec governed by the Act respecting the sociétés d'entraide économique (Québec);
  - (iv) a lawyer, accountant, engineer or teacher, or, in Québec, a notary, if that individual
    - A) does not recommend securities of an issuer in which that individual has an interest, and
    - B) does not receive remuneration for the performance of services as an adviser separate from remuneration received by that individual for practicing in their professions;
  - (v) a registered dealer or any partner, officer or employee of a registered dealer;

or

- (b) a publisher or a writer for a newspaper, news magazine or business or financial journal or periodical, however delivered, that is of general and regular paid circulation, and only available to subscribers for value, or purchasers of it, if the publisher or writer
  - (i) gives advice only through the written publication,
  - (ii) has no interest either directly or indirectly in any of the securities on which that individual gives advice, and
  - (iii) receives no commission or other consideration for giving the advice other than for acting in that person's capacity as a publisher or writer.

## Investment dealer acting as portfolio manager

**3.50 (1)** Subject to subsection (2), the adviser registration requirement does not apply to a registered investment dealer who manages the investment portfolios of its clients through discretionary authority granted by the clients if the investment dealer ~~follows the following rules and policies made by the Investment Dealers Association of Canada for portfolio managers, as amended from time to time:~~

- ~~(a) — Regulation 1300 *Supervision of Accounts*;~~

- ~~(b) Part VII Discretionary and Managed Account Supervision of Policy 2 Minimum Standards for Retail Account Supervision;~~
- ~~(c) Policy 4 Minimum Standards for Institutional Account Opening, Operation and Supervision; and~~ ~~(d) Part I Proficiency Requirements of Policy 6 Proficiency and Education~~ is a member of the Investment Industry Regulatory Organization of Canada and the advising activities are conducted in accordance with the rules of the Investment Industry Regulatory Organization of Canada.

(2) Any partner, director, officer or employee of a registered investment dealer referred to in subsection (1) who manages an investment portfolio for the registered investment dealer must be registered under the securities legislation of the jurisdiction to trade in securities.

## PART 4: CONTROL BLOCK DISTRIBUTIONS

### Control block distributions

4.1 (1) In this Part,

“**control block distribution**” means a trade to which the provisions of securities legislation listed in Appendix B apply; ~~“NI 62-103” means National Instrument 62-103 The Early Warning System and Related Take-over Bid and Insider Reporting Issues.~~

(2) Terms defined or interpreted in ~~NI 62-103~~ National Instrument 62-103 The Early Warning System and Related Take-over Bid and Insider Reporting Issues and used in this Part have the same meaning as is assigned to them in that Instrument.

(3) The prospectus requirement does not apply to a control block distribution by an eligible institutional investor of a reporting issuer’s securities if

- (a) the eligible institutional investor
  - (i) has filed the reports required under the early warning requirements or files the reports required under Part 4 of ~~NI 62-103~~ National Instrument 62-103 The Early Warning System and Related Take-over Bid and Insider Reporting Issues,
  - (ii) does not have knowledge of any material fact or material change with respect to the reporting issuer that has not been generally disclosed,
  - (iii) does not receive in the ordinary course of its business and investment activities knowledge of any material fact or material change with respect to the reporting issuer that has not been generally disclosed, and
  - (iv) either alone or together with any joint actors, does not possess effective control of the reporting issuer,
- (b) there are no directors or officers of the reporting issuer who were, or could reasonably be seen to have been, selected, nominated or designated by the eligible institutional investor or any joint actor,

- (c) the control block distribution is made in the ordinary course of business or investment activity of the eligible institutional investor,
- (d) securities legislation would not require the securities to be held for a specified period of time if the trade was not a control block distribution,
- (e) no unusual effort is made to prepare the market or to create a demand for the securities, and
- (f) no extraordinary commission or consideration is paid in respect of the control block distribution.

(4) An eligible institutional investor that makes a distribution in reliance on subsection (3) must file a letter within 10 days after the distribution that describes the date and size of the distribution, the market on which it was made and the price at which the securities being distributed were sold.

### **Trades Distributions by a control person after a take-over bid**

4.2 (1) Subject to subsection (2), the prospectus requirement does not apply to a ~~trade~~distribution in a security from the holdings of a control person acquired under a take-over bid for which a take-over bid circular was issued and filed if

- (a) the issuer whose securities are being acquired under the take-over bid has been a reporting issuer for at least 4 months at the date of the take-over bid,
- (b) the intention to make the ~~trade~~distribution is disclosed in the take-over bid circular issued in respect of the take-over bid,
- (c) the ~~trade~~distribution is made within the period beginning on the date of the expiry of the bid and ending 20 days after that date,
- (d) a notice of intention to distribute securities in Form 45-102F1 *Notice of Intention to Distribute Securities under Section 2.8 of NI 45-102 Resale of Securities* under ~~NI~~National Instrument 45-102 *Resale of Securities* is filed before the ~~trade~~distribution,
- (e) an insider report of the ~~trade~~distribution in Form 55-102F2 *Insider Report* or Form 55-102F6 *Insider Report*, as applicable, under National Instrument 55-102 *System for Electronic Disclosure by Insiders (SEDI)* is filed within 3 days after the completion of the ~~trade~~distribution,
- (f) no unusual effort is made to prepare the market or to create a demand for the security, and
- (g) no extraordinary commission or consideration is paid in respect of the ~~trade~~distribution.

(2) A control person referred to in subsection (1) is not required to comply with subsection (1) (b) if

- (a) another person makes a competing take-over bid for securities of the issuer for which the take-over bid circular is issued, and

- (b) the control person sells those securities to that other person for a consideration that is not greater than the consideration offered by that other person under its take-over bid.

## **PART 5: OFFERINGS BY TSX VENTURE EXCHANGE OFFERING DOCUMENT**

### **Application and interpretation**

**5.1 (1)** This Part does not apply in Ontario.

**(2)** In this Part

**“exchange policy”** means Exchange Policy 4.6 - *Public Offering by Short Form Offering Document* and Exchange Form 4H - *Short Form Offering Document*, of the TSX Venture Exchange as amended from time to time;

**“gross proceeds”** means the gross proceeds that are required to be paid to the issuer for listed securities distributed under a TSX Venture exchange offering document;

**“listed security”** means a security of a class listed on the TSX Venture Exchange;

~~**“NI 51-101”** means National Instrument 51-101 *Standards of Disclosure for Oil and Gas Activities*;~~

**“prior exchange offering”** means a distribution of securities by an issuer under a TSX Venture exchange offering document that was completed during the 12-month period immediately preceding the date of the TSX Venture exchange offering document;

**“subsequently triggered report”** means a material change report that must be filed no later than 10 days after a material change under securities legislation as a result of a material change that occurs after the date the TSX Venture exchange offering document is certified but before a purchaser enters into an agreement of purchase and sale;

**“TSX Venture Exchange”** means the TSX Venture Exchange Inc.;

**“TSX Venture exchange offering document”** means an offering document that complies with the exchange policy;

**“warrant”** means a warrant of an issuer distributed under a TSX Venture exchange offering document that entitles the holder to acquire a listed security or a portion of a listed security of the same issuer.

### **TSX Venture Exchange offering**

Refer to Appendix D of ~~NI~~[National Instrument 45-102 Resale of Securities](#). These securities are free trading unless the security is acquired by

- (i) a purchaser that, at the time the security was acquired, was an insider or promoter of the issuer of the security, an underwriter of the issuer, or a member of the underwriter's professional group, or
- (ii) any other purchaser in excess of \$40 000 for the portion of the securities in excess of \$40 000.

The first trade by purchasers under (i) and (ii) are subject to a restricted period.

5.2 The prospectus requirement does not apply to a distribution by an issuer in a security of its own issue if

- (a) the issuer has filed an AIF in a jurisdiction of Canada,
- (b) the issuer is a SEDAR filer,
- (c) the issuer is a reporting issuer in a jurisdiction of Canada and has filed ~~with the securities regulatory authority of that~~ [in a jurisdiction of Canada](#)
  - (i) a TSX Venture exchange offering document,
  - (ii) all documents required to be filed under the securities legislation of that jurisdiction, and
  - (iii) any subsequently triggered report,
- (d) the distribution is of listed securities or units consisting of listed securities and warrants,
- (e) the issuer has filed with the TSX Venture Exchange a TSX Venture exchange offering document in respect of the distribution, that
  - (i) incorporates by reference the following documents of the issuer filed with the securities regulatory authority in any jurisdiction of Canada:
    - A) the AIF,
    - B) the most recent annual financial statements and the MD&A relating to those financial statements,
    - C) all unaudited interim financial statements and the MD&A relating to those financial statements, filed after the date of the AIF but before or on the date of the TSX Venture exchange offering document,
    - D) all material change reports filed after the date of the AIF but before or on the date of the TSX Venture exchange offering document, and
    - E) all documents required under ~~NI 43-101 and NI 51-101~~[National Instrument 43-101 Standards of Disclosure for Mineral Projects and](#)

National Instrument 51-101 Standards of Disclosure for Oil and Gas Activities filed on or after the date of the AIF but before or on the date of the TSX Venture exchange offering document,

- (ii) deems any subsequently triggered report required to be delivered to a purchaser under this Part to be incorporated by reference,
  - (iii) grants to purchasers contractual rights of action in the event of a misrepresentation, as required by the exchange policy,
  - (iv) grants to purchasers contractual rights of withdrawal, as required by the exchange policy, and
  - (v) contains all the certificates required by the exchange policy,
- (f) the distribution is conducted in accordance with the exchange policy,
- (g) the issuer or the underwriter delivers the TSX Venture exchange offering document and any subsequently triggered report to each purchaser
- (i) before the issuer or the underwriter enters into the written confirmation of purchase and sale resulting from an order or subscription for securities being distributed under the TSX Venture exchange offering document, or
  - (ii) not later than midnight on the 2nd business day after the agreement of purchase and sale is entered into,
- (h) the listed securities issued under the TSX Venture exchange offering document, when added to the listed securities of the same class issued under prior exchange offerings, do not exceed:
- (i) the number of securities of the same class outstanding immediately before the issuer distributes securities of the same class under the TSX Venture exchange offering document, or
  - (ii) the number of securities of the same class outstanding immediately before a prior exchange offering,
- (i) the gross proceeds under the TSX Venture exchange offering document, when added to the gross proceeds from prior exchange offerings do not exceed \$2 million,
- (j) no purchaser acquires more than 20% of the securities distributed under the TSX Venture exchange offering document, and
- (k) no more than 50% of the securities distributed under the TSX Venture exchange offering document are subject to section 2.5 of ~~NI 45-102~~ National Instrument 45-102 Resale of Securities.

#### **Underwriter obligations**

**5.3** An underwriter that qualifies as a “sponsor” under TSX Venture Exchange Policy 2.2 - *Sponsorship and Sponsorship Requirements* as amended from time to time must sign the TSX Venture exchange offering document and comply with TSX Venture Exchange Appendix 4A - *Due Diligence Report* in connection with the distribution.

## **PART 6: REPORTING REQUIREMENTS**

### **Report of exempt distribution**

**6.1 (1)** Subject to subsection (2) and section 6.2 [*When report not required*], issuers that distribute their own securities and underwriters that distribute securities they acquired under section 2.33 must file a report if they make the distribution under one or more of the following exemptions:

- (a) section 2.3 [*Accredited investor*];
- (b) section 2.5 [*Family, friends and business associates*];
- (c) subsection 2.9 (1) or (2) [*Offering memorandum for Alberta, B.C., Manitoba, New Brunswick, Nova Scotia, Newfoundland and Labrador, Northwest Territories, Nunavut, Prince Edward Island, Québec, ~~and~~ Saskatchewan and Yukon*];
- (d) section 2.10 [*Minimum amount investment*];
- (e) section 2.12 [*Asset acquisition*];
- (f) section 2.13 [*Petroleum, natural gas and mining properties*];
- (g) section 2.14 [*Securities for debt*];
- (h) section 2.19 [*Additional investment in investment funds*];
- (i) section 2.30 [*Isolated distribution by issuer*];
- (j) section 5.2 [*TSX Venture Exchange offering*].

**(2)** The issuer or underwriter must file the report in the jurisdiction where the distribution takes place no later than 10 days after the distribution.

### **When report not required**

**6.2 (1)** An issuer is not required to file a report under section 6.1(a) [*Report of exempt distribution*] for a distribution of a debt security of its own issue or, concurrently with the distribution of the debt security, an equity security of its own issue, to a Canadian financial institution or a Schedule III bank.

**(2)** An investment fund is not required to file a report under section 6.1 [*Report of exempt distribution*] for a distribution under section 2.3 [*Accredited investor*], section 2.10 [*Minimum amount*] or section 2.19 [*Additional investment in investment funds*] if the investment fund files the report not later than 30 days after the financial year-end of the investment fund.

### **Required form of report of exempt distribution**

**6.3 (1)** The required form of report under section 6.1 [*Report of exempt distribution*] is Form 45-106F1.

(2) Except in Manitoba, an issuer that makes a distribution under an exemption from a prospectus requirement not provided for in this Instrument is exempt from the requirements in securities legislation to file a report of exempt trade or exempt distribution in the required form if the issuer files a report of exempt distribution in accordance with Form 45-106F1.

#### **Required form of offering memorandum**

**6.4 (1)** The required form of offering memorandum under section 2.9 or section 3.9 [*Offering memorandum*] is Form 45-106F2.

(2) Despite subsection (1), a qualifying issuer may prepare an offering memorandum in accordance with Form 45-106F3.

#### **Required form of risk acknowledgement**

**6.5 (1)** The required form of risk acknowledgement under subsection 2.9(12) or subsection 3.9(12) [*Offering memorandum*] is Form 45-106F4.

(2) In Saskatchewan, the required form of risk acknowledgement under section 2.6 or section 3.6 [*Family, friends and business associates*] is Form 45-106F5.

#### **Reporting requirements in British Columbia**

~~**6.6 (1)** In British Columbia, a person that relies on a registration exemption in this Instrument must:~~

~~(a) — file an initial notice in the required form;~~

~~(b) — file an annual notice in the required form; and~~

~~(c) — obtain a signed risk acknowledgement from the purchaser of the security in the required form.~~

~~(2) The person relying on the registration exemption must retain the signed risk acknowledgment for 8 years after the trade.~~

~~(3) In British Columbia, the required forms under subsection 6.6(1) are the forms specified by the regulator under section 182 of the *Securities Act* (British Columbia).~~

## **PART 7: EXEMPTION**

### **Exemption**

**7.1 (1)** Subject to subsection (2), the regulator (or the securities regulatory authority) may grant an exemption to this Instrument, in whole or in part, subject to such conditions or restrictions as may be imposed in the exemption.

(2) In Ontario, only the regulator may grant an exemption and only from Part 6, in whole or in part, subject to such conditions or restrictions as may be imposed in the exemption.

(3) Except in Ontario, an exemption referred to in subsection (1) is granted under the statute referred to in Appendix B of National Instrument 14-101 *Definitions* opposite the name of the local jurisdiction.

## PART 8: TRANSITIONAL, COMING INTO FORCE

### **Additional investment - investment funds** – exemption from prospectus requirement

**8.1** The prospectus requirement does not apply to a distribution by an investment fund in a security of its own issue to a purchaser that initially acquired the security as principal before this Instrument came into force if

- (~~1~~a) the security was initially acquired under any of the following provisions:
- (i) in Alberta, sections 86(e) and 131(1)(d) of the *Securities Act* (Alberta) as they existed prior to their repeal by sections 9(a) and 13 of the *Securities Amendment Act* (Alberta), 2003 SA c.32 and sections 66.2 and 122.2 of the *Alberta Securities Commission Rules (General)*;
  - (ii) in British Columbia, sections 45(2) (5) and (22), and 74(2) (4) and (19) of the *Securities Act* (British Columbia),
  - (iii) in Manitoba, sections 19(3) and 58(1)(a) of the *Securities Act* (Manitoba) and section 90 of the *Securities Regulation* MR 491/88R;
  - (iv) in New Brunswick, section 2.8 of *Local Rule 45-501 Prospectus and Registration Exemptions*;
  - (v) in Newfoundland and Labrador, sections 36(1)(e) and 73(1)(d) of the *Securities Act* (Newfoundland and Labrador);
  - (vi) in Nova Scotia, sections 41(1)(e) and 77(1)(d) of the *Securities Act* (Nova Scotia);
  - (vii) in Northwest Territories, section 3(c) and (z) of *Blanket Order No. 1*;
  - (viii) in Nunavut, section 3(c) and (z) of *Blanket Order No. 1*;
  - (ix) in Ontario, sections 35(1)5 and 72(1)(d) of the *Securities Act* (Ontario) and section 2.12 of *Ontario Securities Commission Rule 45-501 Exempt Distributions* that came into force on January 12, 2004;
  - (x) in Prince Edward Island, section 2(3)(d) of the *Securities Act* (Prince Edward Island) and *Prince Edward Island Local Rule 45-512 -Exempt Distributions - Exemption for Purchase of Mutual Fund Securities*;
  - (xi) in Québec, section 51 and 155.1(2) of the *Securities Act* (Québec);
  - (xii) in Saskatchewan, sections 39(1)(e) and 81(1)(d) of the *The Securities Act, 1988* (Saskatchewan).

(b) the distribution is of a security of the same class or series as the initial distribution, and

(c) the security holder, as at the date of the distribution, holds securities of the investment fund that have

(i) an acquisition cost of not less than the minimum amount prescribed by securities legislation referred to in paragraph (a) under which the initial distribution was conducted, or

(ii) a net asset value of not less than the minimum amount prescribed by securities legislation referred to in paragraph (a) under which the initial distribution was conducted.

### **Additional investment - investment funds – exemption from registration requirement**

**8.1.1 (1) After March 27, 2010, this section 8.1.1 does not apply in any jurisdiction.**

**(2)** The dealer registration requirement does not apply in respect of a trade by an investment fund in a security of its own issue to a purchaser that initially acquired the security as principal before this Instrument came into force if

- (a) the security was initially acquired under any of the following provisions:
  - (i) in Alberta, sections 86(e) and 131(1)(d) of the *Securities Act* (Alberta) as they existed prior to their repeal by sections 9(a) and 13 of the *Securities Amendment Act* (Alberta), 2003 SA c.32 and sections 66.2 and 122.2 of the *Alberta Securities Commission Rules (General)*;
  - (ii) in British Columbia, sections 45(2) (5) and (22), and 74(2) (4) and (19) of the *Securities Act* (British Columbia),
  - (iii) in Manitoba, sections 19(3) and 58(1)(a) of the *Securities Act* (Manitoba) and section 90 of the *Securities Regulation* MR 491/88R;
  - (iv) in New Brunswick, section 2.8 of Local Rule 45-501 *Prospectus and Registration Exemptions*;
  - (v) in Newfoundland and Labrador, sections 36(1)(e) and 73(1)(d) of the *Securities Act* (Newfoundland and Labrador);
  - (vi) in Nova Scotia, sections 41(1)(e) and 77(1)(d) of the *Securities Act* (Nova Scotia);
  - (vii) in Northwest Territories, section 3(c) and (z) of Blanket Order No. 1;
  - (viii) in Nunavut, section 3(c) and (z) of Blanket Order No. 1;
  - (ix) in Ontario, sections 35(1)5 and 72(1)(d) of the *Securities Act* (Ontario) and section 2.12 of Ontario Securities Commission Rule 45-501 *Exempt Distributions* that came into force on January 12, 2004;

- (x) in Prince Edward Island, section 2(3)(d) of the *Securities Act* (Prince Edward Island) and Prince Edward Island Local Rule 45-512 -Exempt Distributions - Exemption for Purchase of Mutual Fund Securities;
  - (xi) in Québec, section 51 and 155.1(2) of the *Securities Act* (Québec);
  - (xii) in Saskatchewan, sections 39(1)(e) and 81(1)(d) of the *The Securities Act, 1988* (Saskatchewan).
- (b) the trade is for a security of the same class or series as the initial trade, and
  - (c) the security holder, as at the date of the trade, holds securities of the investment fund that have
    - (i) an acquisition cost of not less than the minimum amount prescribed by securities legislation referred to in paragraph (a) under which the initial trade was conducted, or
    - (ii) a net asset value of not less than the minimum amount prescribed by securities legislation referred to in paragraph (a) under which the initial trade was conducted.

~~(2) The prospectus requirement does not apply to a distribution of a security in the circumstances referred to in subsection (1).~~

#### **Definition of “accredited investor” - investment fund**

**8.2** An investment fund that distributed its securities to persons pursuant to any of the following provisions is an investment fund under paragraph (n)(ii) of the definition of “accredited investor”:

- (a) in Alberta, sections 86(e) and 131(1)(d) of the *Securities Act* (Alberta) as they existed prior to their repeal by sections 9(a) and 13 of the *Securities Amendment Act* (Alberta), 2003 SA c.32 and sections 66.2 and 122.2 of the *Alberta Securities Commission Rules (General)*;
- (b) in British Columbia, sections 45(2) (5) and (22), and 74(2) (4) and (19) of the *Securities Act* (British Columbia),
- (c) in Manitoba, sections 19(3) and 58(1)(a) of the *Securities Act* (Manitoba) and section 90 of the *Securities Regulation MR 491/88R*;
- (d) in New Brunswick, section 2.8 of Local Rule 45-501 *Prospectus and Registration Exemptions*;
- (e) in Newfoundland and Labrador, sections 36(1)(e) and 73(1)(d) of the *Securities Act* (Newfoundland and Labrador);
- (f) in Nova Scotia, sections 41(1)(e) and 77(1)(d) of the *Securities Act* (Nova Scotia);
- (g) in Northwest Territories, section 3(c) and (z) of Blanket Order No. 2;

- (h) in Nunavut, section 3(c) and (z) of Blanket Order No. 3;
- (i) in Ontario, sections 35(1)5 and 72(1)(d) of the *Securities Act* (Ontario) and section 2.12 of Ontario Securities Commission Rule 45-501 *Exempt Distributions* that came into force on January 12, 2004 ;
- (j) in Prince Edward Island, section 2(3)(d) of the *Securities Act* (Prince Edward Island) and Prince Edward Island Local Rule 45-512 *-Exempt Distributions - Exemption for Purchase of Mutual Fund Securities*;
- (k) in Québec, section 51 and 155.1(2) of the *Securities Act* (Québec);
- (l) in Saskatchewan, sections 39(1)(e) and 81(1)(d) of the *The Securities Act, 1988* (Saskatchewan).

**~~Transition – MI 45-103/MI 45-105/ OSC Rule 45-501~~**

**~~8.3 (1) In this section,~~**

~~“MI 45-103” means Multilateral Instrument 45-103 *Capital Raising Exemptions* that came into force on June 6, 2003;~~

~~“MI 45-105” means Multilateral Instrument 45-105 *Trades to Employees, Senior Officers, Directors and Consultants* that came into force on August 15, 2003;~~

~~“2004 OSC Rule 45-501” means the Ontario Securities Commission Rule 45-501 *Exempt Distributions* that came into force on January 12, 2004.~~

~~(2) The dealer registration requirement or the prospectus requirement does not apply in respect of a trade in a security if the trade complies with and is completed in accordance with the requirements of MI 45-103, MI 45-105, or 2004 OSC Rule 45-501 by November 30, 2005.~~

**Transition - Closely-held issuer – exemption from prospectus requirement**

**8.48.3 (1) In this section,**

“2001 OSC Rule 45-501” means the Ontario Securities Commission Rule 45-501 *Exempt Distributions* that came into force on November 30, 2001;

“2004 OSC Rule 45-501” means the Ontario Securities Commission Rule 45-501 *Exempt Distributions* that came into force on January 12, 2004;

“closely-held issuer” has the same meaning as in 2004 OSC Rule 45-501;

(2) The prospectus requirement does not apply to a distribution of a security that was previously distributed by a closely-held issuer under section 2.1 of 2001 OSC Rule 45-501, or under section 2.1 of 2004 OSC Rule 45-501, to a person who purchases the security as principal and is

(a) a director, officer, employee, founder or control person of the issuer,

(b) a spouse, parent, grandparent, brother, sister or child of a director, executive officer, founder or control person of the issuer,

- (c) a parent, grandparent, brother, sister or child of the spouse of a director, executive officer, founder or control person of the issuer,
- (d) a close personal friend of a director, executive officer, founder or control person of the issuer,
- (e) a close business associate of a director, executive officer, founder or control person of the issuer,
- (f) a spouse, parent, grandparent, brother, sister or child of the selling security holder or of the selling security holder's spouse,
- (g) a security holder of the issuer,
- (h) an accredited investor,
- (i) a person of which a majority of the voting securities are beneficially owned by, or a majority of the directors are, persons described in paragraphs (a) to (h),
- (j) a trust or estate of which all of the beneficiaries or a majority of the trustees or executors are persons described in paragraphs (a) to (h), or
- (k) a person that is not the public.

### **Transition - Closely-held issuer – exemption from registration requirement**

**8.3.1 (1) After March 27, 2010, this section 8.3.1 does not apply in any jurisdiction.**

**(2)** In this section,

“**2001 OSC Rule 45-501**” means the Ontario Securities Commission Rule 45-501 *Exempt Distributions* that came into force on November 30, 2001;

“**2004 OSC Rule 45-501**” means the Ontario Securities Commission Rule 45-501 *Exempt Distributions* that came into force on January 12, 2004;

“**closely-held issuer**” has the same meaning as in 2004 OSC Rule 45-501;

**(2.3)** The dealer registration requirement does not apply in respect of a trade in a security that was previously distributed by a closely-held issuer under section 2.1 of 2001 OSC Rule 45-501 or under section 2.1 of 2004 OSC Rule 45-501 to a person who purchases the security as principal and is

- (a) a director, officer, employee, founder or control person of the issuer,
- (b) a spouse, parent, grandparent, brother, sister or child of a director, executive officer, founder or control person of the issuer,
- (c) a parent, grandparent, brother, sister or child of the spouse of a director, executive officer, founder or control person of the issuer,

- (d) a close personal friend of a director, executive officer, founder or control person of the issuer,
- (e) a close business associate of a director, executive officer, founder or control person of the issuer,
- (f) a spouse, parent, grandparent, brother, sister or child of the selling security holder or of the selling security holder's spouse,
- (g) a security holder of the issuer,
- (h) an accredited investor,
- (i) a person of which a majority of the voting securities are beneficially owned by, or a majority of the directors are, persons described in paragraphs (a) to (h),
- (j) a trust or estate of which all of the beneficiaries or a majority of the trustees or executors are persons described in paragraphs (a) to (h), or
- (k) a person that is not the public.

~~(3) The prospectus requirement does not apply to a distribution of a security in the circumstances referred to in subsection (2).~~

#### **Transition – reinvestment plan**

~~8.4.18.4~~ Despite subsection 2.2(5) or 3.2(5), if an issuer's reinvestment plan was established before ~~•~~ [September 28, 2009](#), and provides for the distribution of a security that is of a different class or series than [the class or series of](#) the security to which the dividend or distribution is attributable, the issuer or the trustee, custodian or administrator of the plan must provide to each person who is already a participant the description of the material attributes and characteristics of the securities traded under the plan or notice of a source from which the participant can obtain the information not later than 140 days after the next financial year end of the issuer ending on or after ~~•~~ [September 28, 2009](#).

#### **Application of Part 3 of this instrument**

~~8.5~~ [On March 27, 2010, Part 3 does not apply in any jurisdiction.](#)

#### **Repeal of former instrument**

~~8.58.6~~ National Instrument 45-106 *Prospectus and Registration Exemptions* which came into force on September 14, 2005 is repealed on ~~•~~ [September 28, 2009](#).

#### **Effective date**

~~8.6~~ ~~This~~ [8.7\(1\) Except in Ontario, this](#) Instrument comes into force on ~~•~~ [September 28, 2009](#).

[\(2\) In Ontario, this Instrument comes into force on the later of the following:](#)

- [\(a\) \\_\\_\\_\\_\\_ September 28, 2009;](#)

(b) the day on which sections 5 and 11, subsection 12(1) and section 13 of Schedule 26 of the Budget Measures Act, 2009 are proclaimed in force.

**Appendix A**  
to  
**National Instrument 45-106 *Prospectus and Registration Exemptions***  
**Variable insurance contract exemption**  
(section 2.39 ~~and 3.39~~)

**JURISDICTION**

**LEGISLATION REFERENCE**

ALBERTA

“contract of insurance”, “group insurance”, “life insurance”, and “policy” have the respective meanings assigned to them under the *Insurance Act* (Alberta) and the regulations under that Act.

“insurance company” means an insurer as defined in the *Insurance Act* (Alberta) that is licensed under that Act.

BRITISH COLUMBIA

“contract”, “group insurance”, ~~“life insurance”~~, and “policy” have the respective meanings assigned to them under the *Insurance Act* (British Columbia) and the regulations under that Act.

“life insurance” has the respective meaning assigned to it under the *Financial Institutions Act* (British Columbia) and the regulations under that Act.

“insurance company” means an insurance company, or an extraprovincial insurance corporation, authorized to carry on insurance business under the *Financial Institutions Act* (British Columbia).

MANITOBA

“contract of insurance”, “group insurance”, “life insurance”, and “policy” have the respective meanings assigned to them under the *Insurance Act* (Manitoba) and the regulations under that Act.

“insurance company” means an insurer as defined in the *Insurance Act* (Manitoba) that is licensed under that Act.

NEW BRUNSWICK

“contract of insurance”, “group insurance”, “life insurance”, and “policy” have the respective meanings assigned to them under the *Insurance Act* (New Brunswick) and the regulations under that Act.

“insurance company” means an insurer as defined in the *Insurance Act* (New Brunswick) that is licensed under that Act.

NORTHWEST TERRITORIES

“contract”, “group insurance”, “life insurance”, and “policy” have the respective meanings assigned to them under the *Insurance Act* (Northwest Territories).

“insurance company” means an insurer as defined in the Insurance Act (Northwest Territories) that is licensed under that Act.

NOVA SCOTIA

“contract”, “group insurance”, “life insurance”, and “policy” have the respective meanings assigned to them under the *Insurance Act* (Nova Scotia) and the regulations under that Act.

“insurance company” has the same meaning as in section 3(1)(a) of the *General Securities Rules* (Nova Scotia).

ONTARIO

“contract”, “group insurance”, ~~“life insurance”~~ and “policy” have the respective meanings assigned to them in section 1 and 171 of the *Insurance Act* (Ontario).

“life insurance” has the respective meaning assigned to it in Schedule 1 by Order of the Superintendent of Financial Services.

“insurance company” has the same meaning as in section 1(2) of the *General Regulation* (Ont. Reg. 1015).

QUÉBEC

“contract of insurance”, “group insurance”, “life insurance”, and “policy” have the respective meanings assigned to them under the Civil Code of Québec.

“insurance company” means an insurer holding a license under the Act respecting insurance (R.S.Q., c. A-32).

PRINCE EDWARD ISLAND

“contract”, “group insurance”, “insurer”, “life insurance and “policy” have the respective meanings assigned to them in sections 1 and 174 of the *Insurance Act* (Prince Edward Island).

“insurance company” means an insurance company licensed under the *Insurance Act* (R.S.P.E.I. 1988, Cap. I-4),

SASKATCHEWAN

“contract”, “life insurance” and “policy” have the respective meanings assigned to them in section 2 of *The Saskatchewan Insurance Act* (Saskatchewan).

“group insurance” has the respective meaning assigned to it in section 133 of *The Saskatchewan Insurance Act* (Saskatchewan).

“insurance company” means an issuer licensed under *The Saskatchewan Insurance Act* (Saskatchewan).

YUKON

“contract”, “group”, “life insurance” and “policy” have the

respective meanings assigned to them under the *Insurance Act (Yukon)* and the regulations made under that Act.

“insurance company” means an insurer as defined in the *Insurance Act (Yukon)* that is licensed under that Act.

**Appendix B**  
**to**  
**National Instrument 45-106 *Prospectus and Registration Exemptions***  
**Control Block Distributions**  
**(PART 4)**

**JURISDICTION**

**SECURITIES LEGISLATION REFERENCE**

ALBERTA

Section 1(p)(iii) of the *Securities Act* (Alberta)

BRITISH COLUMBIA

Paragraph (c) of the definition of “distribution” contained in section 1 of the *Securities Act* (British Columbia)

MANITOBA

Section 1(b) of the definition of “primary distribution to the public” contained in subsection 1(1) of the *Securities Act* (Manitoba)

NEW BRUNSWICK

Paragraph (c) of the definition of “distribution” contained in section 1(1) of the *Securities Act* (New Brunswick)

NEWFOUNDLAND AND  
LABRADOR

Section 2(1)(1)(iii) of the *Securities Act* (Newfoundland and Labrador)

[NORTHWEST TERRITORIES](#)

[Paragraph \(c\) of the definition of “distribution” in subsection 1\(1\) of the \*Securities Act\* \(Northwest Territories\)](#)

NOVA SCOTIA

Section 2(1)(1)(iii) of the *Securities Act* (Nova Scotia)

ONTARIO

Paragraph (c) of the definition of “distribution” contained in subsection 1(1) of the *Securities Act* (Ontario)

PRINCE EDWARD ISLAND

Section 1(f)(iii) of the *Securities Act* (Prince Edward Island)

QUÉBEC

Paragraph 9 of the definition of “distribution” contained section 5 of the *Securities Act* (Québec)

SASKATCHEWAN

Section 2(1)(r)(iii) of *The Securities Act, 1988* (Saskatchewan)

[YUKON](#)

[Paragraph \(c\) of the definition of “distribution” in subsection 1\(1\) of the \*Securities Act\* \(Yukon\)](#)

**~~Proposed Amended and Restated~~**  
**Form 45-106F1**  
***Report of Exempt Distribution***

This is the form required under section 6.1 of National Instrument 45-106 for a report of exempt distribution.

**Issuer/underwriter information**

**Item 1:** State the full name of the issuer of the security distributed and the address and telephone number of its head office. If the issuer of the security distributed is an investment fund, state the name of the fund as the issuer, and provide the full name of the manager of the investment fund and the address and telephone number of the head office of the manager. Include the former name of the issuer if its name has changed since last report. If an underwriter is completing this form, also state the full name of the underwriter and the address and telephone number of the head office of the underwriter.

**Item 2:** State whether the issuer is or is not a reporting issuer and, if reporting, each of the jurisdictions in which it is reporting.

**Item 3:** Indicate the industry of the issuer by checking the appropriate box next to one of the industries listed below.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| <input type="checkbox"/> Bio-tech                       | Mining   |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Financial Services             | <input type="checkbox"/> exploration/development |
| <input type="checkbox"/> investment companies and funds | <input type="checkbox"/> production              |
| <input type="checkbox"/> mortgage investment companies  | <input type="checkbox"/> Oil and gas             |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Forestry                       | <input type="checkbox"/> Real estate             |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Hi-tech                        | <input type="checkbox"/> Utilities               |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Industrial                     | <input type="checkbox"/> Other (describe)        |
- 

**Details of distribution**

**Item 4:** Complete Schedule I to this report. Schedule I is designed to assist in completing the remainder of this report.

**Item 5:** State the distribution date. If the report is being filed for securities distributed on more than one distribution date, state all distribution dates.

**Item 6:** For each security distributed:

- (a) describe the type of security,
- (b) state the total number of securities distributed. If the security is convertible or exchangeable, describe the type of underlying security, the terms of exercise or conversion and any expiry date; and
- (c) state the exemption(s) relied on.

**Item 7:** Complete the following table for each Canadian and foreign jurisdiction where purchasers of the securities reside. Do not include in this table, securities issued as payment for commissions or finder's fees disclosed under item 8, below.

Each jurisdiction where purchasers reside	Number of purchasers	Price per security (Canadian \$) <sup>1</sup>	Total dollar value raised from purchasers in the jurisdiction (Canadian \$)
<b>Total number of Purchasers</b>			
<b>Total dollar value of distribution in all jurisdictions (Canadian \$)</b>			

**Note 1:** If securities are issued at different prices list the highest and lowest price the securities were sold for.

**Commissions and finder’s fees**

**Item 8:** Complete the following table by providing information for each person who has received or will receive compensation in connection with the distribution(s). Compensation includes commissions, discounts or other fees or payments of a similar nature. Do not include payments for services incidental to the distribution, such as clerical, printing, legal or accounting services.

If the securities being issued as compensation are or include convertible securities, such as warrants or options, please add a footnote describing the terms of the convertible securities, including the term and exercise price. Do not include the exercise price of any convertible security in the total dollar value of the compensation unless the securities have been converted.

Full name and address of the person being compensated	Compensation paid or to be paid (cash and/or securities)				Total dollar value of compensation (Canadian \$)
	Cash (Canadian \$)	Securities			
		Number and type of securities issued	Price per security	Exemption relied on and date of distribution	

**Item 9:** If a distribution is made in Ontario, please include the attached “Authorization of Indirect Collection of Personal Information for Distributions in Ontario”. The “Authorization of Indirect Collection of Personal Information for Distributions in Ontario” is only required to be filed with the Ontario Securities Commission.

**Certificate**

On behalf of the [issuer/underwriter], I certify that the statements made in this report are true.

Date: \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_  
Name of [issuer/underwriter] (please print)

\_\_\_\_\_

Print name, title and telephone number of person signing

---

Signature

*Instruction*

*The person filing the form must complete the bracketed information by deleting the inappropriate word.*

**Item 10:** State the name, title and telephone number of the person who may be contacted with respect to any questions regarding the contents of this report, if different than the person signing the certificate.

**IT IS AN OFFENCE TO MAKE A MISREPRESENTATION IN THIS REPORT.**

## **Notice - Collection and use of personal information**

The personal information required under this form is collected on behalf of and used by the securities regulatory authorities or, where applicable, the regulators under the authority granted in securities legislation for the purposes of the administration and enforcement of the securities legislation.

If you have any questions about the collection and use of this information, contact the securities regulatory authority or, where applicable, the regulator in the jurisdiction(s) where the form is filed, at the address(es) listed at the end of this report.

## **Authorization of Indirect Collection of Personal Information for Distributions in Ontario**

The attached Schedule I contains personal information of purchasers and details of the distribution(s). The issuer/underwriter hereby confirms that each purchaser listed in Schedule I of this report who is resident in Ontario

- (a) has been notified by the issuer/underwriter
  - (i) of the delivery to the Ontario Securities Commission of the information pertaining to the person as set out in Schedule I,
  - (ii) that this information is being collected indirectly by the Ontario Securities Commission under the authority granted to it in securities legislation,
  - (iii) that this information is being collected for the purposes of the administration and enforcement of the securities legislation of Ontario, and
  - (iv) of the title, business address and business telephone number of the public official in Ontario, as set out in this report, who can answer questions about the Ontario Securities Commission's indirect collection of the information, and
- (b) has authorized the indirect collection of the information by the Ontario Securities Commission.

## Schedule I

Complete the following table.

For reports filed under sub-section 6.1(1)(j) (TSX Venture Exchange offering) of National Instrument 45-106 the following table only needs to list the total number of purchasers by jurisdiction instead of including the name, residential address and telephone number of each purchaser.

Do not include in this table, securities issued as payment of commissions or finder's fees disclosed under item 8 of this report.

**The information in this schedule will not be placed on the public file of any securities regulatory authority or, where applicable, regulator.** However, freedom of information legislation in certain jurisdictions may require the securities regulatory authority or, where applicable, regulator to make this information available if requested.

Full name, residential address and telephone number of purchaser	Number and type of securities purchased	Total purchase price (Canadian \$)	Exemption relied on	Date of distribution

## Instructions:

1. [References to a purchaser in this report are to the beneficial owner of the securities.](#)
2. ~~1.~~ File this report and the applicable fee in each jurisdiction in which a distribution is made at the addresses listed at the end of this report. If the distribution is made in more than one jurisdiction, the issuer/underwriter must complete a single report identifying all purchasers and file that report in each of the jurisdictions in which the distribution is made. Filing fees associated with the filing of the report are not affected by identifying all purchasers in a single report.
3. ~~2.~~ If the space provided for any answer is insufficient, additional sheets may be used and must be cross-referenced to the relevant part and properly identified and signed by the person whose signature appears on the report.
4. ~~3.~~ One report may be used for multiple distributions occurring within 10 days of each other provided that the report is filed on or before the 10<sup>th</sup> day following the first of such distributions.
5. [The information in items 5, 6, and 7 must reconcile with the information in Schedule I of Form 45-106F1. All dollar amounts must be in Canadian dollars.](#)
6. ~~4.~~ In order to determine the applicable fee, consult the securities legislation of each jurisdiction in which a distribution is made.
7. ~~5.~~ This report must be filed in English or in French. In Québec, the issuer/underwriter must comply with linguistic obligations and rights prescribed by Québec law.

## Securities Regulatory Authorities and Regulators

### **British Columbia Securities Commission**

P.O. Box 10142, Pacific Centre  
701 West Georgia Street  
Vancouver, British Columbia V7Y 1L2  
Telephone: (604) 899-6500  
Toll free in British Columbia and Alberta 1-800-373-6393  
Facsimile: (604) 899-6506

### **Alberta Securities Commission**

4th Floor, 300 – 5th Avenue SW  
Calgary, Alberta T2P 3C4  
Telephone: (403) 297-6454  
Facsimile: (403) 297-6156

### **Saskatchewan Financial Services Commission**

Suite 601 - 1919 Saskatchewan Drive  
Regina, Saskatchewan S4P 4H2  
Telephone: (306) 787-5879  
Facsimile: (306) 787-5899

### **The Manitoba Securities Commission**

500 – 400 St Mary Avenue  
Winnipeg, Manitoba R3C 4K5  
Telephone: (204) 945-2548  
Toll free in Manitoba 1-800-655-5244  
Facsimile: (204) 945-0330

### **Ontario Securities Commission**

Suite 1903, Box 55  
20 Queen Street West  
Toronto, Ontario M5H 3S8  
Telephone: (416) 593- 8314  
Toll free in Canada: 1-877-785-1555  
Facsimile: (416) 593-8122  
Public official contact regarding indirect collection of information:  
Administrative ~~Assistant to the Director of Corporate Finance~~ [Support Clerk](#)  
Telephone (416) 593-~~8086~~[3684](#)

**Autorité des marchés financiers**

800, Square Victoria, 22e étage

C.P. 246, Tour de la Bourse

Montréal, Québec H4Z 1G3

Telephone: (514) 395-0337

Or 1-877-525-0337

[Facsimile: \(514\) 873-6155 \(For filing purposes only\)](tel:5148736155)

[Facsimile: \(514\) 864-6381 \(For privacy requests only\)](tel:5148646381)

**New Brunswick Securities Commission**

85 Charlotte Street, Suite 300 Saint John, New Brunswick E2L 2J2

Telephone: (506) 658-3060

Toll Free in New Brunswick 1-866-933-2222

Facsimile: (506) 658-3059

**Nova Scotia Securities Commission**

2nd Floor, Joseph Howe Building

1690 Hollis Street

Halifax, Nova Scotia B3J 3J9

Telephone: (902) 424-7768

Facsimile: (902) 424-4625

**Prince Edward Island Securities Office**

95 Rochford Street, P.O. Box 2000

Charlottetown, Prince Edward Island C1A 7N8

Telephone: (902) 368-4569

Facsimile: (902) 368-5283

**Securities Commission of Newfoundland and Labrador**

P.O. Box 8700 2nd Floor, West Block Confederation Building

St. John's, Newfoundland and Labrador A1B 4J6

Telephone: (709) 729-4189

Facsimile: (709) 729-6187

**Government of Yukon**

Department of Community Services

Law Centre, 3rd Floor

2130 Second Avenue

Whitehorse, YT Y1A 5H6

Telephone: (867) 667-5314

Facsimile: (867) 393-6251

**Government of Northwest Territories**

Department of Justice

Securities Registry

1st Floor Stuart M. Hodgson Building

5009 – 49th Street

Yellowknife, Northwest Territories X1A 2L9

Telephone: (867) 920-3318

Facsimile: (867) 873-0243

**Government of Nunavut**

Department of Justice

Legal Registries Division

P.O. Box 1000 – Station 570

1st Floor, Brown Building

Iqaluit, Nunavut X0A 0H0

Telephone: (867) 975-6190

Facsimile: (867) 975-6194

## Appendix D-3

### Form 45-106F2

### *Offering Memorandum for Non-Qualifying Issuers*

**Date:** [Insert the date from the certificate page.]

#### **The Issuer**

Name:

Head office:      Address:

Phone #:

E-mail address:

Fax #:

Currently listed or quoted? [If no, state in bold type: “**These securities do not trade on any exchange or market**”. If yes, state where, e.g., TSX/TSX Venture Exchange.]

Reporting issuer? [Yes/No. If yes, state where.]

SEDAR filer? [Yes/No]

#### **The Offering**

Securities offered:

Price per security:

Minimum/Maximum offering: [If there is no minimum, state ~~“\$0” as the~~ in bold type: “**There is no minimum.**” and also state in bold type: “**You may be the only purchaser.**”]

State in bold type: Funds available under the offering may not be sufficient to accomplish our proposed objectives.

Minimum subscription amount: [State the minimum amount each investor must invest, or state “There is no minimum subscription amount an investor must invest.”]

Payment terms:

Proposed closing date(s):

Income tax consequences: There are important tax consequences to these securities. See item 6. [If income tax consequences are not material, delete this item.]

Selling agent? [Yes/No. If yes, state “See item 7”. The name of the selling agent may also be stated.]

#### **Resale restrictions**

State: “You will be restricted from selling your securities for [4 months and a day/an indefinite period]. See item ~~11~~.10.”

#### **Purchaser's rights**

State: “You have 2 business days to cancel your agreement to purchase these securities. If there is a misrepresentation in this offering memorandum, you have the right to sue either for damages or to cancel the agreement. See item ~~12~~.11.”

State in bold type:

**“No securities regulatory authority [or regulator](#) has assessed the merits of these securities or reviewed this offering memorandum. Any representation to the contrary is an offence. This is a risky investment. See item [9.8](#).”**

[All of the above information must appear on a single cover page.]

**Item 1: Use of Available Funds**

**1.1 Funds** - Using the following table, disclose the funds available as a result of the offering. If the issuer plans to combine additional sources of funding with the available funds from the offering to achieve its principal capital-raising purpose, please provide details about each additional source of funding. If there is no minimum offering, state “\$0” as the minimum.

Disclose also the amount of any working capital deficiency, if any, of the issuer as at a date not more than 30 days prior to the date of the offering memorandum. If the working capital deficiency will not be eliminated by the use of available funds, state how the issuer intends to eliminate or manage the deficiency.

		Assuming min. offering	Assuming max. offering
A.	Amount to be raised by this offering	\$	\$
B.	Selling commissions and fees	\$	\$
C.	Estimated offering costs (e.g., legal, accounting, audit.)	\$	\$
D.	Available funds: $D = A - (B+C)$	\$	\$
E.	Additional sources of funding required	\$	\$
F.	<b>Total: <math>D+E</math></b> Working capital deficiency	\$	\$
G.	<b>Total: <math>H = (D+E) - F</math></b>	\$	\$

**1.2 Use of Available Funds** - Using the following table, provide a detailed breakdown of how the issuer will use the available funds. If any of the available funds will be paid to a related party, disclose in a note to the table the name of the related party, the relationship to the issuer, and the amount. If the issuer has a working capital deficiency, disclose the portion, if any, of the available funds to be applied against the working capital deficiency. If more than 10% of the available funds will be used by the issuer to pay debt and the issuer incurred the debt within the two preceding financial years, describe why the debt was incurred.

Description of intended use of available funds listed in order of priority	Assuming min. offering	Assuming max. offering
	\$	\$
	\$	\$
Total: Equal to <b>F</b> in the Funds table above	\$	\$

**1.3 Reallocation** - The available funds must be used for the purposes disclosed in the offering memorandum. The board of directors can reallocate the proceeds to other uses only for sound business reasons. If the available funds may be reallocated, include the following statement:

“We intend to spend the available funds as stated. We will reallocate funds only for sound business reasons.”

~~1.4 Working Capital Deficiency—State the amount of any working capital deficiency of the issuer as at a date not more than 30 days prior to the date of the offering memorandum. If the working capital deficiency will not be eliminated by the use of available funds, state how the issuer intends to eliminate or manage the deficiency.~~

## **Item 2: Business of [name of issuer or other term used to refer to issuer]**

**2.1 Structure** - State the business structure (e.g., partnership, corporation or trust), the statute and the province, state or other jurisdiction under which the issuer is incorporated, continued or organized, and the date of incorporation, continuance or organization.

**2.2 Our Business** - Describe the issuer's business. The disclosure must provide sufficient information to enable a prospective purchaser to make an informed investment decision. For a non-resource issuer this disclosure may include principal products or services, operations, market, marketing plans and strategies and a discussion of the issuer's current and prospective competitors. For a resource issuer this will require a description of principal properties (including interest held) and a summary of material information including, if applicable: the stage of development, reserves, geology, operations, production and mineral reserves or mineral resources being explored or developed. ~~Generally, this description should not exceed 2 pages.~~ A resource issuer disclosing scientific or technical information for a mineral project must follow General Instruction A.8 of this Form. A resource issuer ~~who discloses~~ disclosing information about its oil and gas activities must follow General Instruction A.9 of this Form.

**2.3 Development of Business** - Describe (generally, in one or two paragraphs) the general development of the issuer's business over at least its two most recently completed financial years and any subsequent period. Include the major events that have occurred or conditions that have influenced (favourably or unfavourably) the development of the issuer.

**2.4 Long Term Objectives** - ~~Disclose~~ Describe each significant event that must occur to accomplish the issuer's long term objectives, state the specific time period in which each event is expected to occur, and the costs related to each event.

### **2.5 Short Term Objectives and How We Intend to Achieve Them**

- (a) Disclose the issuer's objectives for the next 12 months.

- (b) Using the following table, disclose how the issuer intends to meet those objectives for the next 12 months.

What we must do and how we will do it	Target completion date or, if not known, number of months to complete	Our cost to complete
		\$
		\$

### **2.6 Insufficient Funds**

If applicable, disclose that the funds available as a result of the offering either may not or will not be sufficient to accomplish all of the issuer's proposed objectives and there is no assurance that alternative financing will be available. If alternative financing has been arranged, disclose the amount, source and all outstanding conditions that must be satisfied.

### **2.7 Material Agreements** - Disclose the key terms of all material agreements

- (a) to which the issuer is currently a party, or
- (b) with a related party

including the following information:

- (i) if the agreement is with a related party, the name of the related party and the relationship,
- (ii) a description of any asset, property or interest acquired, disposed of, leased, under option, etc.,
- (iii) a description of any service provided,
- (iv) purchase price and payment terms (e.g., paid in instalments, cash, securities or work commitments),
- (v) the principal amount of any debenture or loan, the repayment terms, security, due date and interest rate,
- (vi) the date of the agreement,
- (vii) the amount of any finder's fee or commission paid or payable to a related party in connection with the agreement, ~~and~~
- (viii) any material outstanding obligations under the agreement, and

- (ix) [for any transaction involving the purchase of assets by or sale of assets to the issuer from a related party, state the cost of the assets to the related party, and the cost of the assets to the issuer.](#)

**Item 3: Interests of Directors, Management, Promoters and Principal Holders**

**3.1 Compensation and Securities Held** - Using the following table, provide the specified information about each director, officer and promoter of the issuer and each person who, directly or indirectly, beneficially owns or controls 10% or more of any class of voting securities of the issuer (a “principal holder”). If the principal holder is not an individual, state in a note to the table the name of any person that, directly or indirectly, beneficially owns or controls more than 50% of the voting rights of the principal holder. If the issuer has not completed its first financial year, then include compensation paid since inception. Compensation includes any form of remuneration including cash, shares and options.

Name and municipality of principal residence	Positions held (e.g., director, officer, promoter and/or principal holder) and the date of obtaining that position	Compensation paid by issuer or related party in the most recently completed financial year and the compensation anticipated to be paid in the current financial year	Number, type and percentage of securities of the issuer held after completion of min. offering	Number, type and percentage of securities of the issuer held after completion of max. offering

**3.2 Management Experience** - Using the following table, disclose the principal occupations of the directors and executive officers over the past five years. In addition, for each individual, describe any relevant experience in a business similar to the issuer's.

Name	Principal occupation and related experience

**3.3 Penalties, Sanctions and Bankruptcy**

- (a) Disclose any penalty or sanction (including the reason for it and whether it is currently in effect) that has been in effect during the last 10 years, [or any cease trade order that has been in effect for a period of more than 30 consecutive days during the past 10 years](#) against
- (i) a director, executive officer or control person of the issuer, or

- (ii) an issuer of which a person referred to in (i) above was a director, executive officer or control person at the time.
- (b) Disclose any declaration of bankruptcy, voluntary assignment in bankruptcy, proposal under any bankruptcy or insolvency legislation, proceedings, arrangement or compromise with creditors or appointment of a receiver, receiver manager or trustee to hold assets, that has been in effect during the last 10 years with regard to any
- (i) director, executive officer or control person of the issuer, or
  - (ii) issuer of which a person referred to in (i) above was a director, executive officer or control person at that time.

[3.4 Loans - Disclose the principal amount of any debenture or loan, the repayment terms, security, due date and interest rate due to or from the directors, management, promoters and principal holders as at a date not more than 30 days prior to the date of the offering memorandum.](#)

**Item 4: Capital Structure**

**4.1 Share Capital** - Using the following table, provide the required information about outstanding securities of the issuer (including options, warrants and other securities convertible into shares). If necessary, notes to the table may be added to describe the material terms of the securities.

Description of security	Number authorized to be issued	Price per security	Number outstanding as at [a date not more than 30 days prior to the offering memorandum date]	Number outstanding after min. offering	Number outstanding after max. offering

**4.2 Long Term Debt** - Using the following table, provide the required information about outstanding long term debt of the issuer. Disclose the current portion of the long-term debt due within 12 months of the date of the offering memorandum. If the securities being offered are debt securities, add a column to the table disclosing the amount of debt that will be outstanding after both the minimum and maximum offering. If the debt is owed to a related party, indicate that in a note to the table and identify the related party.

Description of long term debt (including whether secured)	Interest rate	Repayment terms	Amount outstanding at [a date not more than 30 days prior to the offering memorandum date]
			\$
			\$

**4.3 Prior Sales** - If the issuer has issued any securities of the class being offered under the offering memorandum (or convertible or exchangeable into the class being offered under the offering memorandum) within the last 12 months, use the following table to provide the information specified. If securities were issued in exchange for assets or services, describe in a note to the table the assets or services that were provided.

Date of issuance	Type of security issued	Number of securities issued	Price per security	Total funds received

**Item 5: Securities Offered**

**5.1 Terms of Securities**- Describe the material terms of the securities being offered, including:

- (a) voting rights or restrictions on voting,
- (b) conversion or exercise price and date of expiry,
- (c) rights of redemption or retraction, and
- (d) interest rates or dividend rates.

**5.2 Subscription Procedure**

- (a) Describe how a purchaser can subscribe for the securities and the method of payment.
- (b) State that the consideration will be held in trust and the period that it will be held (refer at least to the mandatory two day period).
- (c) Disclose any conditions to closing, e.g., receipt of additional funds from other sources. If there is a minimum offering, disclose when consideration will be returned to

purchasers if the minimum is not met, and whether the issuer will pay the purchasers interest on consideration.

## **Item 6: Income Tax Consequences and RRSP Eligibility**

**6.1** State: “You should consult your own professional advisers to obtain advice on the income tax consequences that apply to you.”

**6.2** If income tax consequences are a material aspect of the securities being offered (e.g., flow-through shares), provide

- (a) a summary of the significant income tax consequences to Canadian residents, and
- (b) the name of the person providing the income tax disclosure in (a).

**6.3** Provide advice regarding the RRSP eligibility of the securities and the name of the person providing the advice or state “Not all securities are eligible for investment in a registered retirement savings plan (RRSP). You should consult your own professional advisers to obtain advice on the RRSP eligibility of these securities.”

## **Item 7: Compensation Paid to Sellers and Finders**

If any person has or will receive any compensation (e.g., commission, corporate finance fee or finder's fee) in connection with the offering, provide the following information to the extent applicable:

- (a) a description of each type of compensation and the estimated amount to be paid for each type,
- (b) if a commission is being paid, the percentage that the commission will represent of the gross proceeds of the offering (assuming both the minimum and maximum offering),
- (c) details of any broker's warrants or agent's option (including number of securities under option, exercise price and expiry date), and
- (d) if any portion of the compensation will be paid in securities, details of the securities (including number, type and, if options or warrants, the exercise price and expiry date).

## **Item 8: Other Material Facts**

~~Give particulars of any material facts about the securities being distributed that are not disclosed under any other items and for which failure to disclose would constitute a misrepresentation in the offering memorandum.~~

## **Item 8: ~~Item 9:~~ Risk Factors**

Describe in order of importance, starting with the most important, the risk factors material to the issuer that a reasonable investor would consider important in deciding whether to buy the issuer's securities.

Risk factors will generally fall into the following three categories:

- (a) Investment Risk - risks that are specific to the securities being offered. Some examples include
  - arbitrary determination of price,
  - no market or an illiquid market for the securities,
  - resale restrictions, and
  - subordination of debt securities.
- (b) Issuer Risk - risks that are specific to the issuer. Some examples include
  - insufficient funds to accomplish the issuer's business objectives,
  - no history or a limited history of sales or profits,
  - lack of specific management or technical expertise,
  - management's regulatory and business track record,
  - dependence on key employees, suppliers or agreements,
  - dependence on financial viability of guarantor,
  - pending and outstanding litigation, and
  - political risk factors.
- (c) Industry Risk - risks faced by the issuer because of the industry in which it operates. Some examples include
  - environmental and industry regulation,
  - product obsolescence, and
  - competition.

## **Item 9: ~~Item 10:~~ Reporting Obligations**

**9.1** ~~10.1~~ Disclose the documents, including any financial information required by the issuer's corporate legislation, constating documents, or other documents under which the issuer is organized, that will be sent to purchasers on an annual or on-going basis. If the issuer is not required to send any documents

to the purchasers on an annual or on-going basis, state in bold type: “We are not required to send you any documents on an annual or ongoing basis.”

9.2 ~~10.2~~ If corporate or securities information about the issuer is available from a government, securities regulatory authority or regulator, SRO or quotation and trade reporting system, disclose where that information can be located (including website address).

### Item 10: ~~Item 11:~~ Resale Restrictions

10.1 ~~11.1~~ General Statement - For trades in Alberta, British Columbia, New Brunswick, Newfoundland and Labrador, Northwest Territories, Nova Scotia, Nunavut, Prince Edward Island, Québec ~~and~~, Saskatchewan and Yukon, state:

“These securities will be subject to a number of resale restrictions, including a restriction on trading. Until the restriction on trading expires, you will not be able to trade the securities unless you comply with an exemption from the prospectus and registration requirements under securities legislation.”

10.2 ~~11.2~~ Restricted Period - For trades in Alberta, British Columbia, New Brunswick, Newfoundland and Labrador, Northwest Territories, Nova Scotia, Nunavut, Prince Edward Island, Québec ~~and~~, Saskatchewan and Yukon state one of the following, as applicable:

(a) If the issuer is not a reporting issuer in a jurisdiction at the distribution date state:

“Unless permitted under securities legislation, you cannot trade the securities before the date that is 4 months and a day after the date [insert name of issuer or other term used to refer to the issuer] becomes a reporting issuer in any province or territory of Canada.”

(b) If the issuer is a reporting issuer in a jurisdiction at the distribution date state:

“Unless permitted under securities legislation, you cannot trade the securities before the date that is 4 months and a day after the distribution date.”

10.3 ~~11.3~~ Manitoba Resale Restrictions - For trades in Manitoba, if the issuer will not be a reporting issuer in a jurisdiction at the time the security is acquired by the purchaser state:

“Unless permitted under securities legislation, you must not trade the securities without the prior written consent of the regulator in Manitoba unless

- (a) [name of issuer or other term used to refer to issuer] has filed a prospectus with the regulator in Manitoba with respect to the securities you have purchased and the regulator in Manitoba has issued a receipt for that prospectus, or
- (b) you have held the securities for at least 12 months.

The regulator in Manitoba will consent to your trade if the regulator is of the opinion that to do so is not prejudicial to the public interest.”

### **Item 11: ~~Item 12:~~ Purchasers' Rights**

State the following:

“If you purchase these securities you will have certain rights, some of which are described below. For information about your rights you should consult a lawyer.

**(1) Two Day Cancellation Right** - You can cancel your agreement to purchase these securities. To do so, you must send a notice to us by midnight on the 2nd business day after you sign the agreement to buy the securities.

**(2) Statutory Rights of Action in the Event of a Misrepresentation** - [Insert this section only if the securities legislation of the jurisdiction in which the trade occurs provides purchasers with statutory rights in the event of a misrepresentation in an offering memorandum. Modify the language, if necessary, to conform to the statutory rights.] If there is a misrepresentation in this offering memorandum, you have a statutory right to sue:

- (a) [name of issuer or other term used to refer to issuer] to cancel your agreement to buy these securities, or
- (b) for damages against [state the name of issuer or other term used to refer to issuer and the title of any other person against whom the rights are available].

This statutory right to sue is available to you whether or not you relied on the misrepresentation. However, there are various defences available to the persons or companies that you have a right to sue. In particular, they have a defence if you knew of the misrepresentation when you purchased the securities.

If you intend to rely on the rights described in (a) or (b) above, you must do so within strict time limitations. You must commence your action to cancel the agreement within [state time period provided by the securities legislation]. You must commence your action for damages within [state time period provided by the securities legislation.]

(3) Contractual Rights of Action in the Event of a Misrepresentation - [Insert this section only if the securities legislation of the jurisdiction in which the purchaser is resident does not provide purchasers with statutory rights in the event of a misrepresentation in an offering memorandum.] If there is a misrepresentation in this offering memorandum, you have a contractual right to sue [name of issuer or other term used to refer to issuer]:

- (a) to cancel your agreement to buy these securities, or
- (b) for damages.

This contractual right to sue is available to you whether or not you relied on the misrepresentation. However, in an action for damages, the amount you may recover will not exceed the price that you paid for your securities and will not include any part of the damages that [name of issuer or other term used to refer to issuer] proves does not represent the depreciation in value of the securities resulting from the misrepresentation. [Name of issuer or other term used to refer to issuer] has a defence if it proves that you knew of the misrepresentation when you purchased the securities.

If you intend to rely on the rights described in (a) or (b) above, you must do so within strict time limitations. You must commence your action to cancel the agreement within 180 days after you signed the agreement to purchase the securities. You must commence your action for damages within the earlier of 180 days after learning of the misrepresentation and 3 years after you signed the agreement to purchase the securities.”

### **Item 12: ~~Item 13:~~ Financial Statements**

Include in the offering memorandum immediately before the certificate page of the offering memorandum all required financial statements as set out in the Instructions.

### **Item 13: ~~Item 14:~~ Date and Certificate**

State the following on the certificate page of the offering memorandum:

“Dated [insert the date the certificate page of the offering memorandum is signed].

**This offering memorandum does not contain a misrepresentation.”**

~~The certificate must be signed by~~

- ~~(a) — the chief executive officer and the chief financial officer of the issuer (or, if the issuer does not have a chief executive officer or a chief financial officer, a person acting in that capacity);~~
- ~~(b) — on behalf of the directors of the issuer
  - ~~(i) — by any two directors who are authorized to sign other than the persons referred to in paragraph (a), or~~
  - ~~(ii) — by all the directors of the issuer, and~~~~
- ~~(c) — by each promoter of the issuer.~~

**Instructions for Completing  
Form 45-106F2  
*Offering Memorandum for Non-Qualifying Issuers***

**A. General Instructions**

1. Draft the offering memorandum so that it is easy to read and understand. Be concise and use clear, plain language. Avoid technical terms. If technical terms are necessary, provide definitions.
2. Address the items required by the form in the order set out in the form. However, it is not necessary to provide disclosure about an item that does not apply.
3. The issuer may include additional information in the offering memorandum other than that specifically required by the form. An offering memorandum is generally not required to contain the level of detail and extent of disclosure required by a prospectus. Generally, this description should not exceed 2 pages. However, an offering memorandum must provide a prospective purchaser with sufficient information to make an informed investment decision.
4. The issuer may wrap the offering memorandum around a prospectus or similar document. However, all matters required to be disclosed by the offering memorandum must be addressed and the offering memorandum must provide a cross-reference to the page number or heading in the wrapped document where the relevant information is contained. The certificate to the offering memorandum must be modified to indicate that the offering memorandum, including the document around which it is wrapped, does not contain a misrepresentation.
5. It is an offence to make a misrepresentation in the offering memorandum. This applies both to information that is required by the form and to additional information that is provided. Include particulars of any material facts, which have not been disclosed under any of the Item numbers and for which failure to disclose would constitute a misrepresentation in the offering memorandum. Refer also to section 3.8(3) of Companion Policy 45-106CP for additional information.
- ~~6. If the issuer is a limited partnership or trust, where the offering memorandum form requires disclosure about “directors”, provide disclosure for the general partner(s) of the limited partnership and the trustee(s) and manager of the trust. If a general partner, trustee or manager is a corporation, provide disclosure of the directors and executive officers of the general partner or manager and trustee. If the issuer is a limited partnership, the general partner must sign as promoter of the issuer and, if the general partner is a corporation, the chief executive officer, chief financial officer and directors of the general partner must sign as the chief executive officer, chief financial officer and directors of the issuer. If the issuer is a trust, each trustee and the manager of the trust must sign as promoters of the issuer. If any trustee is a corporation, the signing officers of the trustee must also sign as promoters. If the manager of the trust is a corporation, the chief executive officer, chief financial officer and directors of the manager must sign as the chief executive officer, chief financial officer and directors of the issuer.~~
6. ~~7.~~ When the term “related party” is used in this form, it refers to:
  - (a) a director, officer, promoter or control person of the issuer,

- (b) in regard to a person referred to in (a), a child, parent, grandparent or sibling, or other relative living in the same residence,
- (c) in regard to a person referred to in (a) or (b), his or her spouse or a person with whom he or she is living in a marriage-like relationship,
- (d) an insider of the issuer,
- (e) a company controlled by one or more individuals referred to in (a) to (d), and
- (f) in the case of an insider, promoter or control person that is not an individual, any person that controls that insider, promoter or control person.

(If the issuer is not a reporting issuer, the reference to “insider” includes persons or companies who would be insiders of the issuer if that issuer were a reporting issuer.)

- [7. Disclosure is required in item 3.1 of compensation paid directly or indirectly by the issuer or a related party to a director, officer, promoter and/or principal holder if the issuer receives a direct benefit from such compensation paid.](#)
- 8. Refer to National Instrument 43-101 *Standards of Disclosure for Mineral Projects* (NI 43-101) when disclosing scientific or technical information for a mineral project of the issuer.
- 9. If an oil and gas issuer is disclosing information about its oil and gas activities, it must ensure that the information is disclosed in accordance with Part 4 and Part 5 of National Instrument 51-101 *Standards of Disclosure for Oil and Gas Activities* (NI 51-101). Under section 5.3 of NI ~~51-101~~51-101, disclosure of reserves or resources must be consistent with the reserves and resources terminology and categories set out in the Canadian Oil and Gas Evaluation Handbook. For the purposes of this instruction, references to reporting issuer in Part 4 and Part 5 of NI 51-101 will be deemed to include all issuers.
- 10. Securities legislation restricts what can be told to investors about the issuer's intent to list or quote securities on an exchange or market. Refer to applicable securities legislation before making any such statements.
- 11. If an issuer uses this form in connection with a distribution under an exemption other than section 2.9 (*offering memorandum*) of National Instrument 45-106 *Prospectus and Registration Exemptions*, the issuer must modify the disclosure in item 11 to correctly describe the purchaser's rights. If a purchaser does not have statutory or contractual rights of action in the event of a misrepresentation in the offering memorandum, that fact must be stated in bold on the face page.
- 12. During the course of a distribution of securities, any material forward-looking information disseminated must only be that which is set out in the offering memorandum. If an extract of FOFI, as defined in National Instrument 51-102 *Continuous Disclosure Obligations* (NI 51-102), is disseminated, the extract or summary must be reasonably balanced and have a cautionary note in boldface stating that the information presented is not complete and that complete FOFI is included in the offering memorandum.

## **B. Financial Statements - General**

1. All financial statements, operating statements for an oil and gas property that is an acquired business or a business to be acquired and summarized financial information as to the assets, liabilities and results of operations of a business relating to an acquisition that is, or will be, an investment accounted for by the issuer using the equity method included in the offering memorandum must comply with National Instrument 52-107 *Acceptable Accounting Principles, Auditing Standards and Reporting Currency* (NI 52-107), regardless of whether the issuer is a reporting issuer or not. [Under NI 52-107, a non-qualifying issuer that uses Canadian GAAP cannot use differential reporting as set out in the Handbook.](#)
2. Include all financial statements required by these instructions in the offering memorandum immediately before the certificate page of the offering memorandum.
3. If the issuer has not completed one financial year or its first financial year end is less than 120 days from the date of the offering memorandum, include in the offering memorandum financial statements of the issuer consisting of:
  - (a) an income statement, a statement of retained earnings and a cash flow statement for the period from inception to a date not more than 90 days before the date of the offering memorandum,
  - (b) a balance sheet as at the end of the period referred to in paragraph (a), and
  - (c) notes to the financial statements.
4. If the issuer has completed one or more financial years, include in the offering memorandum annual financial statements of the issuer consisting of:
  - (a) an income statement, a statement of retained earnings and a cash flow statement for
    - (i) the most recently completed financial year that ended more than 120 days before the date of the offering memorandum, and
    - (ii) the financial year immediately preceding the financial year in clause (i), if any,
  - (b) a balance sheet as at the end of each of the periods referred to in paragraph (a), and
  - (c) notes to the financial statements.
5. If the issuer has completed one or more financial years, include in the offering memorandum interim financial statements of the issuer comprised of:

- (a) an income statement, a statement of retained earnings and a cash flow statement for the most recently completed interim period that ended
    - (i) more than 60 days before the date of the offering memorandum, and
    - (ii) after the year-end date of the financial statements required under B.4(a)(i),
  - (b) an income statement, a statement of retained earnings and a cash flow statement for the corresponding period in the immediately preceding financial year, if any,
  - (c) a balance sheet as at the end of the periods required by paragraphs (a) and (b), and
  - (d) notes to the financial statements.
6. An issuer is not required to include the comparative financial ~~statements~~information for the period in B.4.(a)(ii) in an offering memorandum if the issuer includes financial statements for a financial year ended less than 120 days before the date of the offering memorandum.
  7. For an issuer that is not an investment fund, the term “interim period” has the meaning set out in NI 51-102. In most cases, an interim period is a period ending nine, six, or three months before the end of a financial year. For an issuer that is an investment fund, the term “interim period” has the meaning set out in National Instrument 81-106 – *Investment Fund Continuous Disclosure* (NI 81-106).
  8. The comparative financial information required under B.5(b) and (c) may be omitted if not previously prepared.
  9. The financial statements required by B.3 and the financial statements of the most recently completed financial period referred to in B.4 must be audited. The financial statements required under B.5, B.6 and the comparative financial information required by B.4 may be unaudited; however, if any of those financial statements have been audited, the auditor’s report must be included in the offering memorandum.
  10. Refer to National Instrument 52-108 *Auditor Oversight* for requirements relating to reporting issuers and public accounting firms.
  11. All unaudited financial statements and unaudited comparatives must be clearly labelled as unaudited.
  12. If the offering memorandum does not contain audited financial statements for the issuer's most recently completed financial year, and if the distribution is ongoing, update the offering memorandum to include the annual audited financial statements and the accompanying auditor’s report as soon as the issuer has approved the audited financial statements, but in any event no later than the 120<sup>th</sup> day following the financial year end.
  13. The offering memorandum does not have to be updated to include interim financial statements for periods completed after the date that is 60 days ~~prior to~~before the date of the offering memorandum unless it is necessary to prevent the offering memorandum from containing a misrepresentation.

14. Forward looking information included in an offering memorandum must comply with section 4A.2 of NI 51-102 and must include the disclosure described in section 4A.3 of NI 51-102. In addition to the foregoing, FOFI or a financial outlook, each as defined in NI 51-102, included in an offering memorandum must comply with Part 4B of NI 51-102. For an issuer that is not a reporting issuer, references to “reporting issuer” in section 4A.2, section 4A.3 and Part 4B of NI 51-102 should be read as references to an “issuer”. Additional guidance may be found in the companion policy to NI 51-102.
15. If the issuer is a limited partnership, in addition to the financial statements required for the issuer, include in the offering memorandum the financial statements in accordance with Part B for the general partner and, if the limited partnership has active operations, for the limited partnership.

### **C. Financial Statements - Business Acquisitions**

1. If the issuer
  - (a) has acquired a business during the past two years and the audited financial statements of the issuer included in the offering memorandum do not include the results of the acquired business for 9 consecutive months, or
  - (b) is proposing to acquire a business and the acquisition has progressed to a state where a reasonable person would believe that the likelihood of the acquisition being completed is high,

include the financial statements specified in C.4 for the business if either of the tests in C.2 is met, irrespective of how the issuer accounts, or will account, for the acquisition.
2. Include the financial statements specified in C.4 for a business referred to in C.1 if either:
  - (a) the issuer's proportionate share of the consolidated assets of the business exceeds 40% of the consolidated assets of the issuer calculated using the annual financial statements of each of the issuer and the business for the most recently completed financial year of each that ended before the date of ~~the~~ acquisition or, for a proposed acquisition, the date of the offering memorandum or
  - (b) the issuer's consolidated investments in and advances to the business as at the date of ~~the~~ acquisition or the proposed date of acquisition exceeds 40% of the consolidated assets of the issuer, excluding any investments in or advances to the business, as at the last day of the issuer's most recently completed financial year that ended before the date of ~~the~~ acquisition or the date of the offering memorandum for a proposed acquisition.

[2.1 In this Instruction C, the term “date of acquisition” means the date of acquisition used for accounting purposes.](#)

3. If an issuer or a business has not yet completed a financial year, or its first financial year ended within 120 days of the offering memorandum date, use the financial statements referred to in B.3 to make the calculations in C.2.
4. If under C.2 you must include in an offering memorandum financial statements for a business, the financial statements must include:
  - (a) If the business has not completed one financial year or its first financial year end is less than 120 days from the date of the offering memorandum
    - (i) an income statement, a statement of retained earnings and a cash flow statement
      - A) for the period from inception to a date not more than 90 days before the date of the offering memorandum, or
      - B) if the date of acquisition precedes the ending date of the period referred to in (A), for the period from inception to the date of acquisition or a date not more than 45 days before the date of acquisition,
    - (ii) a balance sheet dated as at the end of the period referred to in clause (i), and
    - (iii) notes to the financial statements.
  - (b) If the business has completed one or more financial years include
    - (i) annual financial statements comprised of:
      - A) an income statement, a statement of retained earnings and a cash flow statement for the following annual periods:
        - i. the most recently completed financial year that ended before the date of acquisition and more than 120 days before the date of the offering memorandum, and
        - ii. the financial year immediately preceding the most recently completed financial year specified in clause i, if any,
      - B) a balance sheet as at the end of each of the periods specified in (A),
      - C) notes to the financial statements, and
    - (ii) interim financial statements comprised of:
      - A) an income statement, a statement of retained earnings and a cash flow statement for either:

- i. the most recently completed year-to-date interim period and the three month period ending on the last date of the interim period that ended before the date of acquisition and more than 60 days before the date of the offering memorandum and ended after the date of the financial statements required under C.4(b)(i)(A)i, or
  - ii. the period from the first day after the financial year referred to in C.4(b)(i) to a date before the date of acquisition and after the period end in C.4(b)(ii)(A)i, and
- B) an income statement, a statement of retained earnings and a cash flow statement for the corresponding period in the immediately preceding financial year, if any,
- C) a balance sheet as at the end of the periods required by (A) and (B), and
- D) notes to the financial statements.

Refer to Instruction B.7 for the meaning of “interim period”.

- 5. The information for the most recently completed financial period referred to in C.4(b)(i) must be audited and accompanied by an auditor’s report. The financial statements required under C.4(a), C.4(b)(ii) and the comparative financial information required by C.4(b)(i) may be unaudited; however, if those financial statements or comparative financial information have been audited, the auditor’s report must be included in the offering memorandum.
- 6. If the offering memorandum does not contain audited financial statements for a business referred to in C.1 for the business’s most recently completed financial year that ended before the date of acquisition and the distribution is ongoing, update the offering memorandum to include those financial statements accompanied by an auditor’s report when they are available, but in any event no later than the date 120 days following the year-end.
- 7. The term “business” should be evaluated in light of the facts and circumstances involved. Generally, a separate entity or a subsidiary or division of an entity is a business and, in certain circumstances, a lesser component of an entity may also constitute a business, whether or not the subject of the acquisition previously prepared financial statements. The subject of an acquisition should be considered a business where there is, or the issuer expects there will be, continuity of operations. The issuer should consider:
  - (a) whether the nature of the revenue producing activity or potential revenue producing activity will remain generally the same after the acquisition, and
  - (b) whether any of the physical facilities, employees, marketing systems, sales forces, customers, operating rights, production techniques or trade names are acquired by the issuer instead of remaining with the vendor after the acquisition.

8. If a transaction or a proposed transaction for which the likelihood of the transaction being completed is high has been or will be accounted for as a reverse take-over as defined in NI 51-102, include financial statements for the legal subsidiary in the offering memorandum in accordance with Part A. The legal parent, as that term is defined in the CICA Handbook, is considered to be the business acquired. C.1 may also require financial statements of the legal parent.
9. An issuer satisfies the requirements in C.4 if the issuer includes in the offering memorandum the financial statements required in a business acquisition report under NI 51-102.

**D. Financial Statement - Exemptions**

1. An issuer will satisfy the financial statement requirements of this form if it includes the financial statements required by securities legislation for a prospectus.
2. Notwithstanding the requirements in section 3.2(a) of NI 52-107, an auditor's report that accompanies financial statements of an issuer or a business contained in an offering memorandum of a non-reporting issuer may contain a qualification of opinion relating to inventory if
  - (a) the issuer includes in the offering memorandum a balance sheet that is for a date that is subsequent to the date to which the qualification relates, and
  - (b) the balance sheet referred to in paragraph (a) is accompanied by an auditor's report that does not contain a qualification of opinion relating to closing inventory, and
  - (c) the issuer has not previously filed financial statements for the same entity accompanied by an auditor's report for a prior year that contained a qualification of opinion relating to inventory.
3. If an issuer has, or will account for a business referred to in C.1 using the equity method, then financial statements for a business required by Part C are not required to be included if:
  - (a) the offering memorandum includes disclosure for the periods for which financial statements are otherwise required under Part C that:
    - (i) summarizes information as to the assets, liabilities and results of operations of the business, and
    - (ii) describes the issuer's proportionate interest in the business and any contingent issuance of securities by the business that might significantly affect the issuer's share of earnings;
  - (b) the financial information provided under D.3(a) for the most recently completed financial year has been audited, or has been derived from audited financial statements of the business; and
  - (c) the offering memorandum discloses that:

- (i) the financial information provided under D.3(a) for any completed financial year has been audited, or identifies the audited financial statements from which the financial information provided under D.3(a) has been derived; and
- (ii) the audit opinion with respect to the financial information or financial statements referred to in D.3(c)(i) was issued without a reservation of opinion.

If the financial information included in an offering memorandum under D.3(a) has been derived from financial statements of a business incorporated or organized in a foreign jurisdiction that have been prepared in accordance with foreign GAAP, the information must be accompanied by a note that explains and quantifies the effect of material differences between Canadian GAAP and the foreign GAAP.

4. Financial statements relating to the acquisition or proposed acquisition of a business that is an interest in an oil and gas property are not required to be included in an offering memorandum if the acquisition is significant based only on the asset test or:
- (a) the issuer is unable to provide the financial statements in respect of the significant acquisition otherwise required because those financial statements do not exist or the issuer does not have access to those financial statements,
  - (b) the acquisition was not or will not be accounted for as a “reverse take-over” as defined in NI 51-102,
  - (c) the business did not or does not constitute a “reportable segment” of the seller, as defined in section 1701 of the CICA Handbook, at the time of acquisition, and
  - (d) the offering memorandum contains alternative disclosure for the business which includes:
    - (i) an operating statement for each of the financial periods for which financial statements would, but for this section, be required under C.4, presenting for the business, at a minimum, the following line items:
      - A) gross revenue,
      - B) royalty expenses,
      - C) production costs, and
      - D) operating income,

The operating statement for the most recently completed financial period referred to in C.4(b)(i) must be audited.

- (ii) a description of the property or properties and the interest acquired by the issuer,
  - (iii) information with respect to the estimated reserves and related future net revenue attributable to the business, the material assumptions used in preparing the estimates and the identity and relationship to the issuer or to the seller of the person who prepared the estimates,
  - (iv) actual production volumes of the property for the most recently completed year, and
  - (v) estimated production volumes of the property for the first year reflected in the estimate disclosed under D.4(d)(iv).
5. Financial statements for a business that is an interest in an oil and gas property, or for the acquisition or proposed acquisition by an issuer of a property, are not required to be audited if during the 12 months preceding the date of ~~the~~ acquisition or the proposed date of ~~an~~ acquisition, the daily average production of the property on a barrel of oil equivalent basis (with gas converted to oil in the ratio of six thousand cubic feet of gas being the equivalent of one barrel of oil) is less than 20 per cent of the total daily average production of the seller for the same or similar periods and:
- (i) despite reasonable efforts during the purchase negotiations, the issuer was prohibited from including in the purchase agreement the rights to obtain an audited operating statement of the property,
  - (ii) the purchase agreement includes representations and warranties by the seller that the amounts presented in the operating statement agree to the seller's books and records, and
  - (iii) the offering memorandum discloses
    - 1. that the issuer was unable to obtain an audited operating statement,
    - 2. the reasons for that inability,
    - 3. the fact that the purchase agreement includes the representations and warranties referred to in D.5(b)(ii), and
    - 4. that the results presented in the operating statements may have been materially different if the statements had been audited.

## Appendix D-4

### Form 45-106F3

#### *Offering Memorandum for Qualifying Issuers*

**Date:** [Insert the date from the certificate page.]

#### **The Issuer**

Name:

Head office:

Address:

Phone #:

E-mail address:

Fax #:

Where currently listed or quoted? [e.g., TSX/TSX Venture Exchange]

Jurisdictions in which the issuer is a reporting issuer:

#### **The Offering**

Securities offered:

Price per security:

Minimum/Maximum offering: [If there is no minimum state ~~“\$0” as the~~ in bold: “There is no minimum.” and also state in bold type: “You may be the only purchaser.”]

State in bold type: Funds available under the offering may not be sufficient to accomplish our proposed objectives.

Minimum subscription amount: [State the minimum amount each investor must invest, or state “There is no minimum subscription amount an investor must invest.”]

Payment terms:

Proposed closing date(s):

Income Tax consequences: “There are important tax consequences to these securities. See item 6.” [If income tax consequences are not material, delete this item.]

Selling agent? [Yes/No. If yes, state “See item 7”. The name of the selling agent may also be stated.]

#### **Resale restrictions**

State: “You will be restricted from selling your securities for 4 months and a day. See item ~~11~~10”.

#### **Purchaser’s rights**

State: “You have 2 business days to cancel your agreement to purchase these securities. If there is a misrepresentation in this offering memorandum, you have the right to sue either for damages or to cancel the agreement. See item ~~2.11~~11.”

State in bold type:

**“No securities regulatory authority or regulator has assessed the merits of these securities or reviewed this offering memorandum. Any representation to the contrary is an offence.**

**This is a risky investment. See item 9.8.”**

[All of the above information must appear on a single cover page.]

## Item 1: Use of Available Funds

**1.1 Available Funds** - Using the following table, disclose the funds available as a result of the offering. If the issuer plans to combine additional sources of funding with the available funds from the offering to achieve its principal capital-raising purpose, please provide details about each additional source of funding. If there is no minimum offering, state “\$0” as the minimum.

Disclose also the amount of any working capital deficiency, if any, of the issuer as at a date not more than 30 days prior to the date of the offering memorandum. If the working capital deficiency will not be eliminated by the use of available funds, state how the issuer intends to eliminate or manage the deficiency.

		Assuming min. offering	Assuming max. offering
A	Amount to be raised by this offering	\$	\$
B	Selling commissions and fees	\$	\$
C	Estimated offering costs (e.g., legal, accounting, audit)	\$	\$
D	Available funds: $D = A - (B+C)$	\$	\$
E.	Additional sources of funding required	\$	\$
F.	<del>Total: D+E</del> <u>Working capital deficiency</u>	\$	\$
<u>H.</u>	<u>Total: <math>H = (D+E) - F</math></u>	<u>\$</u>	<u>\$</u>

**1.2 Use of Available Funds** - Using the following table, provide a detailed breakdown of how the issuer will use the available funds. If any of the available funds will be paid to ~~a related party~~ an insider, associate or affiliate of the issuer, disclose in a note to the table the name of the ~~related party~~ insider, associate or affiliate, the relationship to the issuer, and the amount. If the issuer has a working capital deficiency, disclose the portion, if any, of the available funds to be applied against the working capital deficiency. If more than 10% of the available funds will be used by the issuer to pay debt and the issuer incurred the debt within the two preceding financial years, describe why the debt was incurred.

Description of intended use of available funds listed in order of priority.	Assuming min. offering	Assuming max. offering
	\$	\$
	\$	\$
Total: Equal to <del>FG</del> in the Funds table above	\$	\$

**1.3 Reallocation** - The available funds must be used for the purposes disclosed in the offering memorandum. The board of directors can reallocate the proceeds to other uses only for sound business reasons. If the available funds may be reallocated, include the following statement:

“We intend to spend the available funds as stated. We will reallocate funds only for sound business reasons.”

~~**1.4 Working Capital Deficiency**—State the amount of any working capital deficiency of the issuer as at a date not more than 30 days prior to the date of the offering memorandum. If the working capital deficiency will not be eliminated by the use of available funds, state how the issuer intends to eliminate or manage the deficiency.~~

**1.4 1.5 Insufficient Funds** - If applicable, disclose that the funds available as a result of the offering either may not or will not be sufficient to accomplish all of the issuer’s proposed objectives and that there is no assurance that alternative financing will be available. If alternative financing has been arranged, disclose the amount, source and any outstanding conditions that must be satisfied.

**Item 2: Information About** [name of issuer or other term used to refer to issuer]

**2.1 Business Summary** - Briefly (in one or two paragraphs) describe the business intended to be carried on by the issuer over the next 12 months. State whether this represents a change of business. The disclosure must provide sufficient information to enable a prospective purchaser to make an informed investment decision. If the issuer is a non-resource issuer, describe the products that the issuer is or will be developing or producing and the stage of development of each of the products. If the issuer is a resource issuer, state: whether the issuer’s principal properties are primarily in the exploration or in the development or production stage; what resources the issuer is engaged in exploring, developing or producing; and the locations of the issuer’s principal properties. A resource issuer who discloses information about its oil and gas activities must follow General Instruction A-~~109~~ of this Form.

**2.2 Existing Documents Incorporated by Reference** - State:

“Information has been incorporated by reference into this offering memorandum from documents listed in the table below, which have been filed with securities regulatory authorities [or regulators](#) in Canada. The documents incorporated by reference are available for viewing on the SEDAR website at [www.sedar.com](http://www.sedar.com). In addition, copies of the documents may be obtained on request without charge from [insert complete address and telephone and the name of a contact person].

Documents listed in the table and information provided in those documents are not incorporated by reference to the extent that their contents are modified or superseded by a statement in this offering memorandum or in any other subsequently filed document that is also incorporated by reference in this offering memorandum.”

Using the following table, list all of the documents incorporated by reference (as required by Instruction D.1):

Description of document (In the case of material change reports, provide a brief description of the nature of the material change)	Date of document

**2.3 Existing Documents Not Incorporated by Reference** - State:

“Other documents available on the SEDAR website (for example, most press releases, take-over bid circulars, prospectuses and rights offering circulars) are not incorporated by reference into this offering memorandum unless they are specifically referenced in the table above. Your rights as described in item 11 of this offering memorandum apply only in respect of information contained in this offering memorandum and documents or information incorporated by reference.”

**2.4 Existing Information Not Incorporated by Reference** - Certain specified information (as outlined in Instruction D.2) contained in the documents incorporated by reference may be, but is not required to be, incorporated by reference into the offering memorandum. If the issuer does not wish to incorporate that information into the offering memorandum, the issuer must state that and include a statement in the offering memorandum identifying:

- (a) the information that is not being incorporated by reference, and
- (b) the document in which the information is contained.

**2.5 Future Documents Not Incorporated by Reference - State:**

“Documents filed after the date of this offering memorandum are not deemed to be incorporated into this offering memorandum. However, if you subscribe for securities and an event occurs, or there is a change in our business or affairs, that makes the certificate to this offering memorandum no longer true, we will provide you with an update of this offering memorandum, including a newly dated and signed certificate, and will not accept your subscription until you have re-signed the agreement to purchase the securities.”

**Item 3: Interests of Directors, Executive Officers, Promoters and Principal Holders**

**3.1** Using the following table, provide information about each director, executive officer, promoter and each person who, directly or indirectly, beneficially owns or controls 10% or more of any class of voting securities of the issuer (a “principal holder”). If the principal holder is not an individual, state in a note to the table the name of any person or company that, directly or indirectly, beneficially owns or controls more than 50% of the voting rights of the principal holder.

Name and municipality of principal residence	Position(s) with the issuer

**3.2** State: “You can obtain further information about directors and executive officers from [insert the name and date of the document(s) with the most current information, e.g., management information circular, annual information form or material change report].”

**3.3** State: “Current information regarding the securities held by directors, executive officers and principal holders can be obtained from [refer to the SEDI website at [www.sedi.ca](http://www.sedi.ca) or, if information cannot be obtained from the SEDI website, refer to the securities regulatory authority(ies) [or regulator\(s\)](#) from which the information can be obtained, including any website(s)]. [Name of issuer or other term used to refer to issuer] can not guarantee the accuracy of this information.”

**3.4** [Loans - Disclose the principal amount of any debenture or loan, the repayment terms, security, due date and interest rate due to or from the directors, management, promoters and principal holders as at a date not more than 30 days prior to the date of the offering memorandum.](#)

#### Item 4: Capital Structure

Using the following table, provide the required information about outstanding securities of the issuer (including options, warrants and other securities convertible into shares). If necessary, notes to the table may be added to describe the material terms of the securities.

Description of security	Number authorized to be issued	Price per security	Number outstanding as at [a date not more than 30 days prior to the offering memorandum date]	Number outstanding after min. offering	Number outstanding after max. offering

#### Item 5: Securities Offered

**5.1 Terms of Securities** - Describe the material terms of the securities being offered, including:

- (a) voting rights or restrictions on voting,
- (b) conversion or exercise price and date of expiry,
- (c) rights of redemption or retraction, and
- (d) interest rates or dividend rates.

#### **5.2 Subscription Procedure**

- (a) Describe how a purchaser can subscribe for the securities and the method of payment.
- (b) State that the consideration will be held in trust and the period that it will be held (refer at least to the mandatory two day period).
- (c) Disclose any conditions to closing e.g., receipt of additional funds from other sources. If there is a minimum offering, disclose when consideration will be returned to purchasers if the minimum is not met.

## **Item 6: Income Tax Consequences and RRSP Eligibility**

**6.1** State: “You should consult your own professional advisers to obtain advice on the income tax consequences that apply to you”.

**6.2** If income tax consequences are a material aspect of the securities being offered (e.g., flow-through shares), provide

- (a) a summary of the significant income tax consequences to Canadian residents, and
- (b) the name of the person or company providing the income tax disclosure in (a).

**6.3** Provide advice regarding the RRSP eligibility of the securities and the name of the person or company providing the advice or state “Not all securities are eligible for investment in a registered retirement savings plan (RRSP). You should consult your own professional advisers to obtain advice on the RRSP eligibility of these securities.”

## **Item 7: Compensation Paid to Sellers and Finders**

If any person or company has or will receive any compensation (e.g., commission, corporate finance fee or finder’s fee) in connection with the offering, provide the following information to the extent applicable:

- (a) a description of each type of compensation and the estimated amount to be paid for each type,
- (b) if a commission is being paid, the percentage that the commission will represent of the gross proceeds of the offering (assuming both the minimum and maximum offering),
- (c) details of any broker’s warrants or agent’s option (including number of securities under option, exercise price and expiry date), and
- (d) if any portion of the compensation will be paid in securities, details of the securities (including number, type and, if options or warrants, the exercise price and expiry date).

## ~~Item 8: Other Material Facts~~

~~Give particulars of any material facts about the securities being distributed that are not disclosed under any other items and for which failure to disclose would constitute a misrepresentation in the offering memorandum.~~

## Item 8: ~~Item 9:~~ Risk Factors

Describe in order of importance, starting with the most important, the risk factors material to the issuer that a reasonable investor would consider important in deciding whether to buy the issuer's securities.

Risk factors will generally fall into the following three categories:

- (a) Investment Risk - risks that are specific to the securities being offered. Some examples include
  - arbitrary determination of price,
  - no market or an illiquid market for the securities,
  - resale restrictions, and
  - subordination of debt securities.
  
- (b) Issuer Risk - risks that are specific to the issuer. Some examples include
  - insufficient funds to accomplish the issuer's business objectives,
  - no history or a limited history of sales or profits,
  - lack of specific management or technical expertise,
  - management's regulatory and business track record,
  - dependence on key employees, suppliers or agreements,
  - dependence on financial viability of guarantor,
  - pending and outstanding litigation, and
  - political risk factors.
  
- (c) Industry Risk - risks faced by the issuer because of the industry in which it operates. Some examples include
  - environmental and industry regulation,
  - product obsolescence, and

- competition.

### Item 9: ~~Item 10:~~ Reporting Obligations

9.1 ~~10.1~~ Disclose the documents that will be sent to purchasers on an annual or on-going basis.

9.2 ~~10.2~~ If corporate or securities information about the issuer is available from a government, securities regulatory authority or regulator, SRO or quotation and trade reporting system, disclose where that information can be located (including website address).

### Item 10: ~~Item 11:~~ Resale Restrictions

For trades in Alberta, British Columbia, New Brunswick, Newfoundland and Labrador, Northwest Territories, Nova Scotia, Nunavut, Prince Edward Island, Québec ~~and~~ Saskatchewan and Yukon, state:

“These securities will be subject to a number of resale restrictions, including a restriction on trading. Until the restriction on trading expires, you will not be able to trade the securities unless you comply with an exemption from the prospectus and registration requirements under securities legislation.

Unless permitted under securities legislation, you cannot trade the securities before the date that is 4 months and a day after the distribution date.”

### Item 11: ~~Item 12:~~ Purchasers’ Rights

State the following:

“If you purchase these securities you will have certain rights, some of which are described below. For information about your rights you should consult a lawyer.

**(1) Two -Day Cancellation Right** - You can cancel your agreement to purchase these securities. To do so, you must send a notice to us by midnight on the 2nd business day after you sign the agreement to buy the securities.

**(2) Statutory Rights of Action in the Event of a Misrepresentation** - [Insert this section only if the securities legislation of the jurisdiction in which the trade occurs provides purchasers with statutory rights in the event of a misrepresentation in an offering memorandum. Modify the

language, if necessary, to conform to the statutory rights.] If there is a misrepresentation in this offering memorandum, you have a statutory right to sue:

- (a) [name of issuer or other term used to refer to issuer] to cancel your agreement to buy these securities, or
- (b) for damages against [state the name of issuer or other term used to refer to issuer and the title of any other person or company against whom the rights are available].

This statutory right to sue is available to you whether or not you relied on the misrepresentation. However, there are various defences available to the persons or companies that you have a right to sue. In particular, they have a defence if you knew of the misrepresentation when you purchased the securities.

If you intend to rely on the rights described in (a) or (b) above, you must do so within strict time limitations. You must commence your action to cancel the agreement within [state time period provided by the securities legislation]. You must commence your action for damages within [state time period provided by the securities legislation].

**(3) Contractual Rights of Action in the Event of a Misrepresentation** - [Insert this section only if the securities legislation of the jurisdiction in which the purchaser is resident does not provide purchasers with statutory rights in the event of a misrepresentation in an offering memorandum.] If there is a misrepresentation in this offering memorandum, you have a contractual right to sue [name of issuer or other term used to refer to issuer]:

- (a) to cancel your agreement to buy these securities, or
- (b) for damages.

This contractual right to sue is available to you whether or not you relied on the misrepresentation. However, in an action for damages, the amount you may recover will not exceed the price that you paid for your securities and will not include any part of the damages that [name of issuer or other term used to refer to issuer] proves does not represent the depreciation in value of the securities resulting from the misrepresentation. [Name of issuer or other term used to refer to issuer] has a defence if it proves that you knew of the misrepresentation when you purchased the securities.

If you intend to rely on the rights described in (a) or (b) above, you must do so within strict time limitations. You must commence your action to cancel the agreement within 180 days after you signed the agreement to purchase the securities. You must commence your action for damages within the earlier of 180 days after learning of the misrepresentation and 3 years after you signed the agreement to purchase the securities.”

**Item 12: ~~Item 13:~~ Date and Certificate**

State the following on the certificate page of the offering memorandum:

“Dated [insert the date the certificate page of the offering memorandum is signed].

**This offering memorandum does not contain a misrepresentation.”**

~~The certificate must be signed by~~

- ~~(a) — the chief executive officer and the chief financial officer of the issuer (or, if the issuer does not have a chief executive officer or a chief financial officer, a person acting in that capacity);~~
- ~~(b) — on behalf of the directors of the issuer~~
  - ~~(i) — by any two directors who are authorized to sign other than the persons referred to in paragraph (a), or~~
  - ~~(ii) — by all the directors of the issuer, and~~
- ~~(c) — by each promoter of the issuer.~~

**Instructions for Completing  
Form 45-106F3  
*Offering Memorandum for Qualifying Issuers***

**A. General Instructions**

1. Only a “qualifying issuer” may use this form.
2. An issuer using this form to draft an offering memorandum must incorporate by reference certain parts of its existing continuous disclosure base. An issuer that does not want to do this must use Form 45-106F2 *Offering Memorandum for Non-Qualifying Issuers*.
3. Draft the offering memorandum so that it is easy to read and understand. Be concise and use clear, plain language. Avoid technical terms. If technical terms are necessary, provide definitions.
4. Address the items required by the form in the order set out in the form. However, it is not necessary to provide disclosure about an item that does not apply.
5. The issuer may include additional information in the offering memorandum other than that specifically required by the form. The offering memorandum is generally not required to contain the level of detail and extent of disclosure required by a prospectus. However, an offering memorandum must provide a prospective purchaser with sufficient information to make an informed investment decision.
6. The issuer may wrap the offering memorandum around a prospectus or similar document. However, all matters required to be disclosed by the offering memorandum must be addressed and the offering memorandum must provide a cross-reference to the page number or heading in the wrapped document where the relevant information is contained. The certificate to the offering memorandum must be modified to indicate that the offering memorandum, including the document around which it is wrapped, does not contain a misrepresentation.
7. It is an offence to make a misrepresentation in the offering memorandum. This applies both to information that is required by the form and to additional information that is provided. Include particulars of any material facts, which have not been disclosed under any of the Item numbers and for which failure to disclose would constitute a misrepresentation in the offering memorandum. Refer also to section 3.8(3) of Companion Policy 45-106CP for additional information.
- ~~8. If the issuer is a limited partnership or trust, where the offering memorandum form requires disclosure about “directors”, provide disclosure for the general partner(s) of the limited partnership and the trustee(s) and manager of the trust. If a general partner, trustee or manager is a corporation, provide disclosure of the directors and executive officers of the general partner or manager and trustee. If the issuer is a limited partnership, the general partner must sign as promoter of the issuer and, if the general~~

~~partner is a corporation, the chief executive officer, chief financial officer and directors of the general partner must sign as the chief executive officer, chief financial officer and directors of the issuer. If the issuer is a trust, each trustee and the manager of the trust must sign as promoters of the issuer. If any trustee is a corporation, the signing officers of the trustee must also sign as promoters. If the manager of the trust is a corporation, the chief executive officer, chief financial officer and directors of the manager must sign as the chief executive officer, chief financial officer and directors of the issuer.~~

8. ~~9.~~ Refer to National Instrument 43-101 *Standards of Disclosure for Mineral Projects* (NI 43-101) when disclosing scientific or technical information for a mineral project of the issuer.
9. ~~10.~~ If an oil and gas issuer is disclosing information about its oil and gas activities, it must ensure that the information is disclosed in accordance with Part 4 and Part 5 of National Instrument 51-101 *Standards of Disclosure for Oil and Gas Activities* (NI 51-101). Under section 5.3 of NI 51-~~101~~101, disclosure of reserves or resources must be consistent with the reserves and resources terminology and categories set out in the Canadian Oil and Gas Evaluation Handbook. For the purposes of this instruction, references to reporting issuer in Part 4 and Part 5 of NI 51-101 will be deemed to include all issuers.
10. ~~11.~~ Securities legislation restricts what can be told to investors about the issuer's intent to list or quote securities on an exchange or market. Refer to applicable securities legislation before making any such statements.
11. ~~12.~~ If an issuer uses this form in connection with a distribution under an exemption other than section 2.9 (*offering memorandum*) of National Instrument 45-106 *Prospectus and Registration Exemptions*, the issuer must modify the disclosure in item 12 to correctly describe the purchaser's rights. If a purchaser does not have statutory or contractual rights of action in the event of a misrepresentation in the offering memorandum, that fact must be stated in bold on the face page.
12. ~~13.~~ During the course of a distribution of securities, any material forward-looking information disseminated must only be that which is set out in the offering memorandum. If an extract of FOFI, as defined in NI 51-102 *Continuous Disclosure Obligations* (NI 51-102), is disseminated, the extract or summary must be reasonably balanced and have a cautionary note in boldface stating that the information presented is not complete and that complete FOFI is included in the offering memorandum.

## **B. Financial Statements**

1. All financial statements incorporated by reference into the offering memorandum must comply with NI 51-102 and National Instrument 52-107 *Acceptable Accounting Principles, Auditing Standards and Reporting Currency*.
2. Forward-looking information included in an offering memorandum must comply with section 4A.2 of NI 51-102 and must include the disclosure described in section 4A.3 of

NI 51-102. In addition to the foregoing, FOFI or a financial outlook, each as defined in NI 51-102, included in an offering memorandum must comply with Part 4B of NI 51-102. Additional guidance may be found in the companion policy to NI 51-102.

### **C. Required Updates to the Offering Memorandum**

1. If the offering memorandum does not incorporate by reference the issuer's AIF, and audited financial statements for its most recently completed financial year, update the offering memorandum for any financial statements that are required to be filed prior to the distribution to incorporate by reference the documents as soon as the documents are filed on SEDAR.
2. Except for documents referred to in C.1, the offering memorandum does not have to be updated to incorporate by reference interim financial statements or other documents referred to in D.1 unless it is necessary to do so to prevent the offering memorandum from containing a misrepresentation.

### **D. Information about the Issuer**

1. *Existing Documents Incorporated by Reference* - In addition to any other document that an issuer may choose to incorporate by reference, the issuer must incorporate the following documents:
  - (a) the issuer's AIF for the issuer's most recently completed financial year for which annual financial statements are either required to be filed or have been filed,
  - (b) material change reports, except confidential material change reports, filed since the end of the financial year in respect of which the issuer's AIF is filed,
  - (c) the interim financial statements for the issuer's most recently completed interim period for which the issuer prepares interim financial statements that are required to be [filed or have been](#) filed and which ends after the most recently completed financial year referred to in (d),
  - (d) the comparative financial statements, together with the accompanying auditor's report, for the issuer's most recently completed financial year for which annual financial statements are required to be filed or have been filed,
  - (e) if, before the offering memorandum is filed, financial information about the issuer for a financial period more recent than the period for which financial statements are required under D.1(c) and (d) is publicly disseminated by, or on behalf of, the

issuer through news release or otherwise, the content of the news release or public communication,

- (f) management's discussion and analysis (MD&A) as required under NI 51-102 for the period specified in D.1(c) and D.1(d),
  - (g) each business acquisition report required to be filed under NI 51-102 for acquisitions completed since the beginning of the financial year in respect of which the issuer's AIF is filed, unless the issuer incorporated the business acquisition report by reference into its AIF for its most recently completed financial year for which annual financial statements are either required to be filed or have been filed, or incorporated at least 9 months of the acquired business or related businesses operations into the issuer's most recent audited financial statements,
  - (h) any information circular filed by the issuer since the beginning of the financial year in respect of which the issuer's most recent AIF is filed, other than an information circular prepared in connection with an annual general meeting if the issuer has filed and incorporated by reference an information circular for a subsequent annual general meeting,
- 5
- (i) if the issuer has oil and gas activities, as defined in National Instrument 51-101 *Standards of Disclosure for Oil and Gas Activities*, the most recent Form 51-101F1, Form 51-101F2 and Form 51-101F3, filed by an SEC issuer, unless
    - (i) the issuer's current AIF is in the form of Form 51-102F2; or
    - (ii) the issuer is otherwise exempted from the requirements of NI 51-101,
  - (~~k~~j) ~~Any~~ any other disclosure document which the issuer has filed pursuant to an undertaking to a provincial and territorial securities regulatory authority or regulator since the beginning of the financial year in respect of which the issuer's most recent AIF is filed, and
  - (~~k~~) ~~Any~~ any other disclosure document of the type listed above that the issuer has filed pursuant to an exemption from any requirement under securities legislation since

the beginning of the financial year in respect of which the issuer's most recent AIF is filed.

2. *Mineral Property* – If a material part of the funds available as a result of the distribution is to be expended on a particular mineral property and if the issuer's most recent AIF does not contain the disclosure required under section 5.4 of Form 51-102F2 for the property or that disclosure is inadequate or incorrect due to changes, disclose the information required under section 5.4 of Form 51-102F2.

7

An issuer may incorporate any additional document provided that the document is available for viewing on the SEDAR website and that, on request by a purchaser, the issuer provides a copy of the document to the purchaser, without charge.

Appendix D-5

Form 45-106F4

WARNING

**Risk Acknowledgement**

- I acknowledge that this is a risky investment.
- I am investing entirely at my own risk.
- No securities regulatory authority or regulator has evaluated or endorsed the merits of these securities or the disclosure in the offering memorandum.
- The person selling me these securities is not registered with a securities regulatory authority or regulator and has no duty to tell me whether this investment is suitable for me. *[Instruction: Delete if sold by registrant]*
- I will not be able to sell these securities except in very limited circumstances. I may never be able to sell these securities. *[Instruction: Delete if issuer is reporting]*
- The securities are redeemable, but I may only be able to redeem them in limited circumstances. *[Instruction: Delete if securities are not redeemable]*
- I will not be able to sell these securities for 4 months. *[Instruction: Delete if issuer is not reporting or if the purchaser is a Manitoba resident]*
- I could lose all the money I invest.

I am investing \$\_\_\_\_\_ [total consideration] in total; this includes any amount I am obliged to pay in future. \_\_\_\_\_ [name of issuer] will pay \$\_\_\_\_\_ [amount of fee or commission ] of this to \_\_\_\_\_ [name of person selling the securities] as a fee or commission.

**I acknowledge that this is a risky investment and that I could lose all the money I invest.**

\_\_\_\_\_  
Date

\_\_\_\_\_  
Signature of Purchaser

\_\_\_\_\_  
Print name of Purchaser

Sign 2 copies of this document. Keep one copy for your records.

**You have 2 business days to cancel your purchase** [*Instruction: The issuer must complete this section before giving the form to the purchaser.*]

To do so, send a notice to [name of issuer] stating that you want to cancel your purchase. You must send the notice before midnight on the 2<sup>nd</sup> business day after you sign the agreement to purchase the securities. You can send the notice by fax or email or deliver it in person to [name of issuer] at its business address. Keep a copy of the notice for your records.

Issuer Name and Address:

Fax:

E-mail:

### **You are buying Exempt Market Securities**

They are called *exempt market securities* because two parts of securities law do not apply to them. If an issuer wants to sell *exempt market securities* to you:

- the issuer does not have to give you a prospectus (a document that describes the investment in detail and gives you some legal protections), and
- the securities do not have to be sold by an investment dealer registered with a securities regulatory authority or regulator.

There are restrictions on your ability to resell *exempt market securities*. *Exempt market securities* are more risky than other securities.

**You will receive an offering memorandum** Read the offering memorandum carefully because it has important information about the issuer and its securities. Keep the offering memorandum because you have rights based on it. Talk to a lawyer for details about these rights.

**You will not receive advice** [*Instruction: Delete if sold by registrant*]

You will not get professional advice about whether the investment is suitable for you. But you can still seek that advice from a registered adviser or ~~investment~~registered dealer. In Alberta, Manitoba, Northwest Territories, Nunavut, Prince Edward Island, Québec ~~and~~, Saskatchewan and Yukon to qualify as an eligible investor, you may be required to obtain that advice. ~~Contact the Investment Dealers Association of Canada (website at [www.ida.ca](http://www.ida.ca)) for a list of registered investment dealers in your area.~~

**The securities you are buying are not listed** *[Instruction: Delete if securities are listed or quoted]*

The securities you are buying are not listed on any stock exchange, and they may never be listed. You may never be able to sell these securities.

**The issuer of your securities is a non-reporting issuer** *[Instruction: Delete if issuer is reporting]*

A *non-reporting issuer* does not have to publish financial information or notify the public of changes in its business. You may not receive ongoing information about this issuer.

For more information on the exempt market, call your local securities regulatory authority [or regulator](#). *[Instruction: Insert the name, telephone number and website address of the securities regulatory authority [or regulator](#) in the jurisdiction in which you are selling these securities.]*

***[Instruction: The purchaser must sign 2 copies of this form. The purchaser and the issuer must each receive a signed copy.]***

[Appendix D-6](#)

Form 45-106F5

**Risk Acknowledgement  
Saskatchewan Close Personal Friends and Close Business Associates**

W  
A  
R  
N  
I  
N  
G

I acknowledge that this is a risky investment:

- I am investing entirely at my own risk.
- No securities regulatory authority [or regulator](#) has evaluated or endorsed the merits of these securities.
- The person selling me these securities is not registered with a securities regulatory authority [or regulator](#) and has no duty to tell me whether this investment is suitable for me. *[Instruction: Delete if sold by registrant]*
- I will not be able to sell these securities except in very limited circumstances. I may never be able to sell these securities. *[Instruction: Delete if issuer is reporting]*
- [The securities are redeemable, but I may only be able to redeem them in limited circumstances. \[Instruction: Delete if securities are not redeemable\]](#)
- I will not be able to sell these securities for 4 months. *[Instruction: Delete if issuer is not reporting]*
- I could lose all the money I invest.
- I do not have a 2-day right to cancel my purchase of these securities or the statutory rights of action for misrepresentation I would have if I were purchasing the securities under a prospectus. [I do have a 2-day right to cancel my purchase of these securities if I receive an amended offering document.](#)

I am investing \$\_\_\_\_\_ [total consideration] in total; this includes any amount I am obliged to pay in future.

I am a **close** personal friend or **close** business associate of \_\_\_\_\_ [state name], who is a \_\_\_\_\_ [state title - founder, director, executive officer or control person] of \_\_\_\_\_ [state name of issuer or its affiliate – if an affiliate state “an affiliate of the issuer” and give the issuer’s name].

I acknowledge that I am purchasing based on my close relationship with \_\_\_\_\_ [state name of founder, director, executive officer or control person] whom I know well enough and for a sufficient period of time to be able to assess her/his capabilities and trustworthiness.

**I acknowledge that this is a risky investment and that I could lose all the money I invest.**

\_\_\_\_\_  
Date

\_\_\_\_\_  
Signature of Purchaser

\_\_\_\_\_  
Print name of Purchaser

Sign 2 copies of this document. Keep one copy for your records.

### **You are buying Exempt Market Securities**

They are called *exempt market securities* because two parts of securities law do not apply to them. If an issuer wants to sell *exempt market securities* to you:

- the issuer does not have to give you a prospectus (a document that describes the investment in detail and gives you some legal protections), and
- the securities do not have to be sold by an investment dealer registered with a securities regulatory authority [or regulator](#).

There are restrictions on your ability to resell *exempt market securities*. Exempt market securities are more risky than other securities.

### **You may not receive any written information about the issuer or its business**

If you have any questions about the issuer or its business, ask for written clarification before you purchase the securities. You should consult your own professional advisers before investing in the securities.

### **You will not receive advice** *[Instruction: Delete if sold by registrant]*

Unless you consult your own professional advisers, you will not get professional advice about whether the investment is suitable for you.

### **The issuer of your securities is a non-reporting issuer** *[Instruction: Delete if issuer is reporting]*

A *non-reporting issuer* does not have to publish financial information or notify the public of changes in its business. You may not receive ongoing information about this issuer. You can only sell the securities of a non-reporting issuer in very limited circumstances. You may never be able to sell these securities.

### **The securities you are buying are not listed** *[Instruction: Delete if securities are listed or quoted]*

The securities you are buying are not listed on any stock exchange, and they may never be listed. There may be no market for these securities. You may never be able to sell these securities.

For more information on the exempt market, refer to the Saskatchewan Financial Services Commission's website at <http://www.sfsc.gov.sk.ca>.

*[Instruction: The purchaser must sign 2 copies of this form. The purchaser and the issuer must each receive a signed copy.]*

## Appendix D-7

### Amended and Restated

### **Companion Policy 45-106CP *Prospectus and Registration Exemptions***

#### **PART 1 - INTRODUCTION**

- 1.1 Purpose
- 1.2 ~~1.3~~ ~~Status in Yukon~~ 1.3 All trades are subject to securities legislation
- ~~1.4~~ 1.3 Multi-jurisdictional ~~trades~~ distributions
- ~~1.5~~ 1.4 Other exemptions
- ~~1.6~~ 1.5 Discretionary relief
- ~~1.7~~ 1.6 Advisers
- ~~1.8~~ 1.7 Underwriters
- ~~1.9~~ 1.8 Persons created to use exemptions (“syndication”)
- ~~1.10~~ 1.9 Responsibility for compliance
- ~~1.11~~ 1.10 Prohibited activities

#### **PART 2 - INTERPRETATION**

- 2.1 Definitions
- 2.2 Executive officer (“policy making function”)
- 2.3 Directors, executive officers and officers of non-corporate issuers
- 2.4 Founder
- 2.5 Investment fund
- 2.6 Affiliate, control and related entity
- 2.7 Close personal friend
- 2.8 Close business associate
- 2.9 Indirect interest

#### **PART 3 - CAPITAL RAISING EXEMPTIONS**

- 3.1 Soliciting purchasers
- 3.2 Soliciting purchasers - Newfoundland and Labrador and Ontario
- 3.3 Advertising
- 3.4 Restrictions on finder’s fees or commissions
- 3.4.1 Reinvestment plans ~~and unsolicited orders~~
- 3.5 Accredited investor
- 3.6 Private issuer
- 3.7 Family, friends and business associates
- 3.8 Offering memorandum
- 3.9 Minimum amount investment

#### **PART 4 - OTHER EXEMPTIONS**

- 4.1 Employee, executive officer, director and consultant exemptions
- 4.2 Business combination and reorganization
- 4.3 Asset acquisition - character of assets to be acquired
- 4.4 Securities for debt – bona fide debt
- 4.5 Take-over bid and issuer bid

- 4.6 Isolated [distribution or](#) trade
- 4.7 Mortgages
- 4.8 Not for profit issuer
- 4.9 Exchange contracts

**PART 5 - FORMS**

- 5.1 Report of Exempt Distribution
- 5.2 Forms required under the offering memorandum exemption
- 5.3 Real estate securities
- 5.4 Risk Acknowledgement Form Respecting Close Personal Friends and Close Business Associates – Saskatchewan

**PART 6 - RESALE OF SECURITIES ACQUIRED UNDER AN EXEMPTION**

- 6.1 Resale restrictions

**Companion Policy 45-106CP**  
***Prospectus and Registration Exemptions***

**PART 1 – INTRODUCTION**

National Instrument 45-106 *Prospectus and Registration Exemptions* (“NI 45-106”) provides: (i) exemptions from the prospectus requirement; (ii) exemptions from registration requirements; and (iii) one exemption from the issuer bid requirements.

~~Under section 3.0 of NI 45-106, the~~The registration exemptions in Part 3 of NI 45-106 will not apply in any jurisdiction ~~except British Columbia and Manitoba [six months]~~ after National Instrument 31-103 *Registration Requirements* (~~“and Exemptions~~ (“NI 31-103”) comes into force. ~~Certain~~ A subset of registration exemptions ~~now contained in NI 45-106 are reproduced in NI 31-103.~~

~~At the same time, registration exemptions contained in NI 45-106 will continue to be available in certain circumstances in British Columbia and Manitoba after NI 31-103 comes into force.~~will continue to apply after the six month transition period and will be located in NI 31-103.

~~British Columbia and Manitoba retained the registration exemptions in Part 3 of NI 45-106. As a result, in British Columbia and Manitoba, the registration exemptions in Part 3 of NI 45-106 apply to a person unless the person is registered in any Canadian jurisdiction. A person may not rely on the registration exemptions in Part 3 of NI 45-106 in British Columbia and Manitoba if the person is already registered in either of those jurisdictions.~~

**1.1 Purpose ~~and Application~~**

The purpose of this Companion Policy is to help users understand how the provincial and territorial securities regulatory authorities and regulators interpret or apply certain provisions of NI 45-106. This Companion Policy includes explanations, discussion and examples of the application of various parts of NI 45-106.

**1.2 Status in Yukon**

~~Until such time as the Government of Yukon adopts NI 45-106 as a rule, it will consider applications for exemptions on a case-by-case basis and it will consider the provisions of NI 45-106 in exercising its discretionary authority.~~ **1.3 — All trades are subject to securities legislation**

The securities legislation of a local jurisdiction applies to any trade in a security in the local jurisdiction, whether or not the issuer of the security is a reporting issuer in that jurisdiction. Likewise, the definition of “trade” in securities legislation includes any act, advertisement, solicitation, conduct or negotiation directly or indirectly in furtherance of a trade. A person who engages in these activities, or other trading activities, must comply with the securities legislation of each jurisdiction in which the trade occurs.

### **1.4.1.3 Multi-jurisdictional distributions ~~or trades~~**

A distribution ~~or a trade~~ can occur in more than one jurisdiction. If it does, the person conducting the distribution ~~or a trade~~ must comply with the securities legislation of each jurisdiction in which the distribution ~~or a trade~~ occurs. For example, a distribution ~~or a trade~~ from a person in Alberta to a purchaser in British Columbia may be considered a distribution ~~or a trade~~ in both jurisdictions.

### **1.5.1.4 Other exemptions**

In addition to the exemptions in NI 45-106, exemptions may also be available to persons under securities legislation of each local jurisdiction. The CSA has issued ~~a notice~~ [CSA Staff Notice 45-304](#) that lists other exemptions available under securities legislation.

### **1.6.1.5 Discretionary relief**

In addition to the exemptions contained in NI 45-106 and those available under securities legislation of a local jurisdiction, the securities regulatory authority or regulator in each jurisdiction has the discretion to grant exemptions from the prospectus requirement and the registration requirements.

### **1.7.1.6 Advisers**

Subsection ~~1.4.1.5~~(2) of NI 45-106 provides that an exemption from the dealer registration requirement in NI 45-106 is deemed to be an exemption from the underwriter registration requirement. However, it is not deemed to be an exemption from the adviser registration requirement. The adviser registration requirement is distinct from the dealer registration requirement. In general terms, persons engaged in the business of, or holding themselves out as being in the business of, providing investment advice are required to be registered, or exempted from registration, under applicable securities legislation. Accordingly, only advisers registered or exempted from registration as advisers may act as advisers in connection with a trade made under NI 45-106.

### **1.8.1.7 Underwriters**

Underwriters should not sell securities to the public without providing a prospectus. If an underwriter purchases securities with a view to distribution, the underwriter should purchase the securities under the prospectus exemption in section 2.33 of NI 45-106. If the underwriter purchases securities under this exemption, the first trade in the securities will be a distribution. As a result, the underwriter will only be able to resell the securities if it can rely on another exemption from the prospectus requirement, or if a prospectus is delivered to the purchasers of the securities.

There may be legitimate transactions where a dealer purchases securities under a prospectus exemption other than the exemption in section 2.33 of NI 45-106; however, these transactions are only appropriate when the dealer purchases the securities with investment intent and not with a view to distribution.

If a dealer purchases securities through a series of exempt transactions in order to avoid the obligation to deliver a prospectus, the transactions will be ~~looked at~~viewed as a whole to determine if they constitute a distribution. If a transaction is in effect an indirect distribution, a prospectus will be required to qualify the sale of the securities despite the fact that each interim step in the transaction could otherwise be completed under a prospectus exemption. Such indirect distributions cannot be legitimately structured under NI 45-106.

#### **1.91.8 Persons created to use exemptions (“syndication”)**

Sections 2.3(5), 3.3(5), 2.4(1), 3.4(1), 2.9(3), 3.9(3), 2.10(2) and 3.10(2) of NI 45-106 specifically prohibit syndications. A distribution or a trade of securities to a person that had no pre-existing purpose and is created or used solely to purchase or hold securities under exemptions (a “syndicate”) may be considered a distribution of, or trade in, securities to the persons beneficially owning or controlling the syndicate.

For example, a newly formed company with 15 shareholders is set up with the intention of purchasing \$150 000 worth of securities under the minimum amount investment exemption. Each shareholder of the newly formed company contributes \$10 000. In this situation the shareholders of the newly formed company are indirectly investing \$10 000 when the exemption requires that they each invest \$150 000. Consequently, both the newly formed company and its shareholders may need to comply with the requirements of the minimum amount investment exemption, or find an alternative exemption to rely on.

Syndication related concerns should not ordinarily arise if the purchaser under the exemption is a corporation, syndicate, partnership or other form of entity that is pre-existing and has a bona fide purpose other than investing in the securities being sold. However, it is an inappropriate use of these exemptions to indirectly distribute or trade securities when the exemption is not available to directly distribute or trade securities to each person in the syndicate.

#### **1.101.9 Responsibility for compliance**

A person distributing or trading securities is responsible for determining when an exemption is available. In determining whether an exemption is available, a person may rely on factual representations by a purchaser, provided that the person has no reasonable grounds to believe that those representations are false. However, the person distributing or trading securities is responsible for determining whether, given the facts available, the exemption is available. Generally, a person distributing or trading securities under an exemption should retain all necessary documents that show the person properly relied upon the exemption.

For example, an issuer distributing securities to a close personal friend of a director could require that the purchaser provide a signed statement describing the purchaser’s relationship with the director. On the basis of that factual information, the issuer could determine whether the purchaser is a close personal friend of the director for the purposes of a family, friends and business associates exemption. The issuer should not rely merely on a representation: “I am a close personal friend of a director”. Likewise, under the accredited investor exemptions, the seller must have a reasonable belief that the purchaser understands the meaning of the definition of “accredited investor”. Prior to discussing the particulars of the investment with the purchaser, the

seller should discuss with the purchaser the various criteria for qualifying as an accredited investor and whether the purchaser meets any of the criteria.

It is not appropriate for a person to assume an exemption is available. For instance a seller should not accept a form of subscription agreement that only states that the purchaser is an accredited investor. Rather the seller should request that the purchaser provide the details on how they fit within the accredited investor definition.

### **1.11.10 Prohibited activities**

Securities legislation in certain jurisdictions prohibits any person from making certain representations to a purchaser of securities, including an undertaking about the future value or price of the securities. In certain jurisdictions, these provisions also prohibit a person from making any statement that the person knows or ought reasonably to know is a misrepresentation. These prohibitions apply whether or not a trade is made under an exemption.

Misrepresentation is defined in securities legislation. The use of exaggeration, innuendo or ambiguity in an oral or written representation about a material fact, or other deceptive behaviour relating to a material fact, might be a misrepresentation.

## **PART 2 – INTERPRETATION**

### **2.1 Definitions**

Unless defined in NI 45-106, terms used in NI 45-106 have the meaning given to them in local securities legislation or in National Instrument 14-101 *Definitions*.

[The term “contract of insurance” in the definition of “financial assets” has the meaning assigned to it in the legislation for the jurisdiction referenced in Appendix A of NI 45-106.](#)

### **2.2 Executive officer (“policy making function”)**

The definition of “executive officer” in NI 45-106 is based on the definition of the same term contained in National Instrument 51-102 *Continuous Disclosure Obligations* (“NI 51-102”).

Paragraph (c) of the definition "executive officer" includes individuals that are not employed by the issuer or any of its subsidiaries, but who perform a policy-making function in respect of the issuer.

The definition includes someone who “performs a policy-making function” in respect of the issuer. The CSA is of the view that an individual who “performs a policy-making function” in respect of an issuer is someone who is responsible, solely or jointly with others, for setting the direction of the issuer and is sufficiently knowledgeable of the business and affairs of the issuer so as to be able to respond meaningfully to inquiries from investors about the issuer.

### **2.3 Directors, executive officers and officers of non-corporate issuers**

The term “director” is defined in NI 45-106 and it includes, for non-corporate issuers, individuals who perform functions similar to those of a director of a company.

When the term “officer” is used in NI 45-106, or any of the NI 45-106 forms, a non-corporate issuer should refer to the definitions in securities legislation. Securities legislation in most jurisdictions defines “officer” to include any individual acting in a capacity similar to that of an officer of a company. Therefore, in most jurisdictions, non-corporate issuers must determine which individuals are acting in capacities similar to that of directors and officers of corporate issuers, for the purposes of complying with NI 45-106 and its forms.

For example, the determination of who is acting in the capacity of a director or executive officer may be important where a person intends to distribute or trade securities of a limited partnership under an exemption that is conditional on a relationship with a director or executive officer. The person must conclude that the purchaser has the necessary relationship with an individual who is acting in a capacity with the limited partnership that is similar to that of a director or executive officer of a company.

## **2.4 Founder**

The definition of “founder” includes a requirement that, at the time of the distribution of, or trade in, a security the person be actively involved in the business of the issuer. Accordingly, a person who takes the initiative in founding, organizing or substantially reorganizing the business of the issuer within the meaning of the definition but subsequently ceases to be actively engaged in the day to day operations of the business of the issuer would no longer be a “founder” for the purposes of NI 45-106, regardless of the person’s degree of prior involvement with the issuer or the extent of the person’s continued ownership interest in the issuer.

## **2.5 Investment fund**

Generally, the definition of “investment fund” would not include a trust or other entity that issues securities that entitle the holder to net cash flows generated by: (i) an underlying business owned by the trust or other entity, or (ii) the income-producing properties owned by the trust or other entity. Examples of trusts or other entities that are not included in the definition are business income trusts, real estate investment trusts and royalty trusts.

## **2.6 Affiliate, control and related entity**

### **(1) Affiliate**

Section ~~1.2~~1.3 of NI 45-106 contains rules for determining whether persons are affiliates for the purposes of NI 45-106, which may be different than those contained in other securities legislation.

### **(2) Control**

The concept of control has two different interpretations in NI 45-106. For the purposes of Division 4 of Part 2 and Division 4 of Part 3 (trades to employees, executive officers, directors and consultants), the interpretation of control is contained in ~~respectively~~, section 2.23(1) and section 3.23(1), respectively. For the purposes of the rest of NI 45-106, the interpretation of control is found in section ~~1.3~~1.4 of NI 45-106. The reason for having two different interpretations of control is that the exemptions for distributions of, and trades in, securities to

employees, executive officers, directors and consultants require a broader concept of control than is considered necessary for the rest of NI 45-106 to accommodate the issuance of compensation securities in a wide variety of business structures.

## **2.7 Close personal friend**

For the purposes of both the private issuer exemptions and the family, friends and business associates exemptions, a “close personal friend” of a director, executive officer, founder or control person of an issuer is an individual who knows the director, executive officer, founder or control person well enough and has known them for a sufficient period of time to be in a position to assess their capabilities and trustworthiness. The term “close personal friend” can include a family member who is not already specifically identified in the exemptions if the family member satisfies the criteria described above.

The relationship between the individual and the director, executive officer, founder or control person must be direct. For example, the exemption is not available to a close personal friend of a close personal friend of a director of the issuer.

An individual is not a close personal friend solely because the individual is:

- (a) a relative,
- (b) a member of the same organization, association or religious group, or
- (c) a client, customer, former client or former customer.

## **2.8 Close business associate**

For the purposes of both the private issuer exemptions and the family, friends and business associates exemptions, a “close business associate” is an individual who has had sufficient prior business dealings with a director, executive officer, founder or control person of the issuer to be in a position to assess their capabilities and trustworthiness.

An individual is not a close business associate solely because the individual is :

- (a) a member of the same organization, association or religious group, or
- (b) a client, customer, former client or former customer ~~of the issuer.~~

The relationship between the individual and the director, executive officer, founder or control person must be direct. For example, the exemptions are not available for a close business associate of a close business associate of a director of the issuer.

## **2.9 Indirect interest**

Under paragraph (t) of the definition of “accredited investor” in section 1.1 of NI 45-106, an “accredited investor” includes a person in respect of which all of the owners of interests in that person, direct, indirect or beneficial, are accredited investors. The interpretive provision in

[section 1.2 of NI 45-106 is needed to confirm the meaning of indirect interest in British Columbia.](#)

## **PART 3 – CAPITAL RAISING EXEMPTIONS**

### **3.1 Soliciting purchasers**

Part 2, Division 1, and Part 3, Division 1 (capital raising exemptions) in NI 45-106 do not prohibit the use of registrants, finders, or advertising in any form (for example, internet, e-mail, direct mail, newspaper or magazine) to solicit purchasers under any of the exemptions. However, use of any of these means to find purchasers under the private issuer exemptions in sections 2.4 and 3.4 of NI 45-106, or under the family, friends and business associates exemptions in sections 2.5 and 3.5 of NI 45-106, may give rise to a presumption that the relationship required for use of these exemptions is not present. If, for example, an issuer advertises or pays a commission or finder's fee to a third party to find purchasers under the family, friends and business associates exemptions, it suggests that the precondition of a close relationship between the purchaser and the issuer may not exist and therefore the issuer cannot rely on these exemptions.

Use of a finder by a private issuer to find an accredited investor, however, would not preclude the private issuer from relying upon the private issuer exemptions, provided that all of the other conditions to those exemptions are met.

Any solicitation activities that aim to identify a particular category of investor should clearly state the kind of investor being sought and the criteria that investors will be required to meet. Any print materials used to find accredited investors, for example, should clearly and prominently state that only accredited investors should respond to the solicitation.

### **3.2 Soliciting purchasers – Newfoundland and Labrador and Ontario**

In Newfoundland and Labrador and Ontario, the exemptions from the dealer registration requirement identified in section ~~3.02~~[3.01](#) of NI 45-106 are not available to a “market intermediary”, except as therein provided (or as otherwise provided in local securities legislation – see, for instance, in the case of Ontario, OSC Rule 45-501 *Ontario Prospectus and Registration Exemptions*). Generally, a person is a market intermediary if the person is in the business of trading in securities as principal or agent. In Ontario, the term “market intermediary” is defined in Ontario Securities Commission Rule 14-501 *Definitions*.

The Ontario Securities Commission takes the position that if an issuer retains an employee whose primary job function is to actively solicit members of the public for the purposes of selling the issuer's securities, the issuer and its employee are in the business of selling securities. Further, if an issuer and its employees are deemed to be in the business of selling securities the Ontario Securities Commission considers both the issuer and its employees to be market intermediaries. This applies whether the issuer and its employees are located in Ontario and solicit members of the public outside of Ontario or whether the issuer and its employees are located outside of Ontario and solicit members of the public in Ontario. Accordingly, in order to be in compliance with securities legislation, these issuers and their employees should be registered under the appropriate category of registration in Ontario.

### 3.3 Advertising

NI 45-106 does not restrict the use of advertising to solicit or find purchasers. However, issuers and selling security holders should review other securities legislation and securities directions for guidelines, limitations and prohibitions on advertising intended to promote interest in an issuer or its securities. For example, any advertising or marketing communications must not contain a misrepresentation and should be consistent with the issuer's public disclosure record.

### 3.4 Restrictions on finder's fees or commissions

The following restrictions apply with respect to certain exemptions under NI 45-106:

- (1) no commissions or finder's fees may be paid to directors, officers, founders and control persons in connection with a distribution or a trade made under the private issuer exemptions or the family, friends and business associates exemptions, except in connection with a distribution of, or trade in, a security to an accredited investor under a private issuer exemption; and
- (2) in Northwest Territories, Nunavut and Saskatchewan, only a registered dealer may be paid a commission or finder's fee in connection with a distribution of, or a trade in, a security to a purchaser in one of those jurisdictions under an offering memorandum exemption.

#### 3.4.1 Reinvestment plans

- (1) When is a plan administrator acting "for or on behalf of the issuer"?

Sections 2.2 and 3.2 of NI 45-106 contain prospectus and dealer registration exemptions for distributions of, and trades in, securities by a trustee, custodian or administrator acting for or on behalf of the issuer. If the trustee, custodian or administrator is engaged by the issuer, the plan administrator acts "for or on behalf of the issuer" and therefore falls within the language contained in sections 2.2(1) and 3.2(1) of NI 45-106. The fact that the plan administrator may act on or in accordance with instructions of a plan participant, under the plan, does not preclude the administrator from relying on the exemptions contained in sections 2.2 or 3.2 of NI 45-106.

- (2) Providing a description of material attributes and characteristics of securities

The prospectus and dealer registration reinvestment plan exemptions in sections 2.2(5) and 3.2(5) of NI 45-106 add a requirement, effective [September 28, 2009](#), that if the securities distributed or traded under a reinvestment plan, in reliance upon a reinvestment plan exemption, are of a different class or series than the securities to which the dividend or distribution is attributable, the issuer or plan agent must have provided the plan participants with a description of the material attributes and characteristics of the securities being distributed or traded. An issuer or plan agent with an existing reinvestment plan can satisfy this requirement in a number of ways. If plan participants have previously signed a plan agreement or received a copy of a reinvestment plan that included this information, the issuer or plan agent does not need to take any further action for current plan participants. (Future participants should receive the same type of information before their first trade of a security under the plan.)

If plan participants have not received this information in the past, the issuer or plan agent can provide the required information or a reference to a website where the information is available with other materials sent to holders of that class of securities, for example with proxy materials. Section ~~8.4.18.3.1~~ of NI 45-106 provides a transition period, allowing the issuer or plan agent to meet this requirement not later than 140 days after the next financial year end of the issuer ending on or after ~~September 28, 2009~~.

(3) Interest payments

The exemptions in sections 2.2 and 3.2 of NI 45-106 may be available where a person invests interest payable on debentures or other similar securities into other securities of the issuer. The words “distributions out of earnings...or other sources” cover interest payable on debentures.

### 3.5 Accredited investor

(1) Individual qualification – financial tests

An individual is an “accredited investor” for the purposes of NI 45-106 if he or she satisfies, either alone or with a spouse, any of the financial asset test in paragraph (j), the net income test in paragraph (k) or the net asset test in paragraph (l) of the “accredited investor” definition in section 1.1 of NI 45-106.

These branches of the definition are designed to treat spouses as a single investing unit, so that either spouse qualifies as an “accredited investor” if the combined financial assets, net income, or net assets of both spouses exceed the \$1 000 000, \$300 ~~000~~000, or \$5 000 000 thresholds, respectively.

For the purposes of the financial asset test in paragraph (j), “financial assets” are defined in NI 45-106 to mean cash, securities, or a contract of insurance, a deposit or an evidence of a deposit that is not a security for the purposes of securities legislation. These financial assets are generally liquid or relatively easy to liquidate. The value of a purchaser’s personal residence would not be included in a calculation of financial assets. By comparison, the net asset test under paragraph (l) involves a consideration of all of the purchaser’s total assets minus the purchaser’s total liabilities. Accordingly, for the purposes of the net asset test, the calculation of total assets would include the value of a purchaser’s personal residence and the calculation of total liabilities would include the amount of any liability (such as a mortgage) in respect of the purchaser’s personal residence.

If the combined net income of both spouses does not exceed \$300 000, but the net income of one of the spouses exceeds \$200 000, only the spouse whose net income exceeds \$200 000 qualifies as an accredited investor.

(2) Bright-line standards – individuals

The monetary thresholds in the “accredited investor” definition are intended to create “bright-line” standards. Investors who do not satisfy these monetary thresholds do not qualify as accredited investors under the applicable paragraph.

(3) Beneficial ownership of financial assets

Paragraph (j) of the “accredited investor” definition refers to an individual who, either alone or with a spouse, beneficially owns financial assets having an aggregate realizable value that, before taxes but net of any related liabilities, exceeds \$1 000 000. As a general matter, it should not be difficult to determine whether financial assets are beneficially owned by an individual, an individual’s spouse, or both, in any particular instance. However, financial assets held in a trust or in other types of investment vehicles for the benefit of an individual may raise questions as to whether the individual beneficially owns the financial assets in the circumstances. The following factors are indicative of beneficial ownership of financial assets:

- (a) physical or constructive possession of evidence of ownership of the financial asset;
- (b) entitlement to receipt of any income generated by the financial asset;
- (c) risk of loss of the value of the financial asset; and
- (d) the ability to dispose of the financial asset or otherwise deal with it as the individual sees fit.

For example, securities held in a self-directed RRSP, for the sole benefit of an individual, are beneficially owned by that individual. In general, financial assets in a spousal RRSP would also be included for the purposes of the threshold test because paragraph (j) takes into account financial assets owned beneficially by a spouse. However, financial assets held in a group RRSP under which the individual would not have the ability to acquire the financial assets and deal with them directly would not meet these beneficial ownership requirements.

(4) Calculation of purchaser’s net assets

To calculate a purchaser’s net assets under paragraph (l) of the “accredited investor” definition, subtract the purchaser’s total liabilities from the purchaser’s total assets. The value attributed to assets should reasonably reflect their estimated fair value. Income tax should be considered a liability if the obligation to pay it is outstanding at the time of the distribution of, or trade in, the security.

(5) Financial statements

The minimum net asset threshold of \$5 000 000 specified in paragraph (m) of the “accredited investor” definition must, in the case of a non-individual entity, be shown on the entity’s “most recently prepared financial statements”. The financial statements must be prepared in accordance with applicable generally accepted accounting principles.

(6) Time for assessing qualification

The financial tests prescribed in the accredited investor definition are to be applied only at the time of the distribution of, or trade in, the security. The person is not required to monitor the purchaser’s continuing qualification as an accredited investor after the distribution of, or trade in, the security is completed.

## (7) Recognition or Designation as an Accredited Investor

Paragraph (v) of the “accredited investor” definition in NI 45-106 contemplates that a person may apply to be recognized or designated as an accredited investor by the securities regulatory authorities or [regulators](#), except in Ontario and Québec, the regulators. The securities regulatory authorities or regulators have not adopted any specific criteria for granting accredited investor recognition or designation to applicants, as the securities regulatory authorities or regulators believe that the “accredited investor” definition generally covers all types of persons that do not require the protection of the prospectus requirement or the dealer registration requirement. Accordingly, the securities regulatory authorities or regulators expect that applications for accredited investor recognition or designation will be utilized on a very limited basis. If a securities regulatory authority or regulator considers it appropriate in the circumstances, it may grant accredited investor recognition or designation to a person on terms and conditions, including a requirement that the person apply annually for renewal of accredited investor recognition or designation.

### **3.6 Private issuer**

#### (1) Meaning of “the public”

Whether or not a person is a member of the public must be determined on the facts of each particular case. The courts have interpreted “the public” very broadly in the context of securities trading. Whether a person is a part of the public will be determined on the particular facts of each case, based on the tests that have developed under the relevant case law. A person who intends to distribute or trade securities, in reliance upon the private issuer prospectus exemption in section 2.4(2) or the private issuer dealer registration exemption in section 3.4(2) of NI 45-106, to a person not listed in paragraphs (a) through (j) of that section will have to satisfy itself that the distribution of, or trade in, the security is not to the public.

#### (2) Meaning of “close personal friends” and “close business associates”

See sections 2.7 and 2.8 of this Companion Policy for a discussion of the meaning of “close personal friend” and “close business associate”.

#### (2.1) Meaning of “non-convertible debt securities”

Paragraph (b) of the definition of private issuer has a number of restrictions that apply to the securities, other than non-convertible debt securities, of a private issuer. Non-convertible debt securities are debt securities that do not have a right or obligation to exchange or convert into another security of the issuer.

#### (3) Business combination of private issuers

A distribution of, or trade in, securities in connection with an amalgamation, merger, reorganization, arrangement or other statutory procedure involving two private issuers, to holders of securities of those issuers is not a distribution of, or trade in, a security to the public, provided that the resulting issuer is a private issuer.

Similarly, a distribution of, or trade in, securities by a private issuer in connection with a share exchange take-over bid for another private issuer is not a distribution of, or trade in, securities to the public, provided the offeror remains a private issuer after completion of the bid.

(4) Acquisition of a private issuer

Persons relying on a private issuer exemption in NI 45-106 must be satisfied that the purchaser is not a member of the public. Generally, however, if the owner of a private issuer sells the business of the private issuer by way of a sale of securities, rather than assets, to another party who acquires all of the securities, the sale will not be considered to have been to the public.

(5) Ceasing to be a private issuer

The term “private issuer” is defined in section 2.4(1) (with the same definition repeated in section 3.4(1) of NI 45-106). A private issuer can distribute securities only to the persons listed in section 2.4(2) of NI 45-106. If a private issuer distributes securities to a person not listed in section 2.4(2), even under another exemption, it will no longer be a private issuer and will not be able to continue to use the private issuer prospectus exemption in section 2.4(2) (or the private issuer dealer registration exemption in section 3.4(2)). For example, if a private issuer distributes securities under the offering memorandum exemption, it will no longer be a private issuer.

Issuers that cease to be private issuers will still be able to use other exemptions to distribute their securities. For example, such issuers could rely on the family, friends and business associates prospectus exemption (except in Ontario) or the accredited investor prospectus exemption. However, issuers that rely on these prospectus exemptions must file a report of exempt distribution with the securities regulatory authority [or regulator](#) in each jurisdiction in which the distribution took place.

An issuer that completes a going private transaction (for example, by way of an amalgamation squeeze out or a takeover bid with a subsequent statutory compulsory acquisition) can however use the private issuer exemption after a going private transaction.

### **3.7 Family, friends and business associates**

(1) Number of purchasers

There is no restriction on the number of persons that the issuer may sell securities to under the family, friends and business associates exemptions in sections 2.5 and 3.5 of NI 45-106. However, an issuer selling securities to a large number of persons under this exemption may give rise to a presumption that not all of the purchasers are family, close personal friends or close business associates and that the exemption may not be available.

(2) Meaning of “close personal friends” and “close business associates”

See sections 2.7 and 2.8 of this Companion Policy for a discussion of the meaning of “close personal friend” and “close business associate”.

(3) Risk acknowledgement - Saskatchewan

Under sections 2.6 and 3.6 of NI 45-106, the corresponding family, friends and business associates exemption in section 2.5 or 3.5 of NI 45-106 cannot be relied upon in Saskatchewan for a distribution of, or trade in, securities based on a close personal friendship or close business association unless the person obtains a signed “risk acknowledgement” in the required form from the purchaser and retains the form for eight years after the distribution of, or trade in, securities.

### **3.8 Offering memorandum**

- (1) Eligibility criteria - Alberta, Manitoba, Northwest Territories, Nunavut, Prince Edward Island, Québec and Saskatchewan

Alberta, Manitoba, Northwest Territories, Nunavut, Prince Edward Island, Québec ~~and~~, Saskatchewan, and Yukon impose eligibility criteria on persons investing under the offering memorandum exemptions. In these jurisdictions, the purchaser must be an eligible investor if the purchaser’s acquisition cost is more than \$10 000.

In determining the acquisition cost to a purchaser who is not an eligible investor, include any future payments that the purchaser will be required to make. Proceeds which may be obtained on exercise of warrants or other rights, or on conversion of convertible securities, are not considered to be part of the acquisition cost unless the purchaser is legally obligated to exercise or convert the securities. The \$10 000 maximum acquisition cost is calculated per distribution of, or trade in, security.

Nevertheless, concurrent and consecutive, closely-timed offerings to the same purchaser will usually constitute one distribution of, or trade in, a security. Consequently, when calculating the acquisition cost, all of these offerings by or on behalf of the issuer to the same purchaser who is not an eligible investor would be included. It would be inappropriate for an issuer to try to circumvent the \$10 000 threshold by dividing a subscription in excess of \$10 000 by one purchaser into a number of smaller subscriptions of \$10 000 or less that are made directly or indirectly by the same purchaser.

A purchaser can qualify as an eligible investor under various categories of the definition, including if the purchaser has and has had in prior years either \$75 000 pre-tax net income or has \$400 000 worth of net assets. In calculating a purchaser’s net assets, subtract the purchaser’s total liabilities from the purchaser’s total assets. The value attributed to assets should reasonably reflect their estimated fair value. Income tax should be considered a liability if the obligation to pay it is outstanding at the time of the distribution of, or trade in, a security.

Another way a purchaser can qualify as an eligible investor is to obtain advice from an eligibility adviser. An eligibility adviser is a person registered as an investment dealer (or in an equivalent category of unrestricted dealer in the purchaser’s jurisdiction) that is authorized to give advice with respect to the type of security being distributed or traded. In Saskatchewan and Manitoba, certain lawyers and public accountants may also act as eligibility advisers.

A registered investment dealer providing advice to a purchaser in these circumstances is expected to comply with the “know your client” and suitability requirements under applicable securities legislation and SRO rules and policies. Some dealers have obtained exemptions from the “know your client” and suitability requirements because they do not provide advice. An assessment of suitability by these dealers is not sufficient to qualify a purchaser as an eligible investor.

~~(2)~~ ~~[repealed]~~ (3) Form of offering memorandum

There are two forms of offering memorandum: Form 45-106F3, which may be used by qualifying issuers, and Form 45-106F2, which must be used by all other issuers. Form 45-106F3 requires qualifying issuers to incorporate by reference their annual information form (AIF), management's discussion and analysis (MD&A), annual financial statements and subsequent specified continuous disclosure documents required under NI 51-102.

A qualifying issuer is a reporting issuer that has filed an AIF under NI 51-102 and has met all of its other continuous disclosure obligations, including those in NI 51-102, National Instrument 43-101 *Standards of Disclosure for Mineral Projects*, and National Instrument 51-101 *Standards of Disclosure for Oil and Gas Activities*. Under NI 51-102, venture issuers are not required to file AIFs. However, if a venture issuer wants to use Form 45-106F3, the venture issuer must voluntarily file an AIF under NI 51-102 in order to incorporate that AIF into its offering memorandum.

(4) Date of certificate and required signatories

The issuer must ensure that the information provided to the purchaser is current and does not contain a misrepresentation. For example, if a material change occurs in the business of the issuer after delivery of an offering memorandum to a potential purchaser, the issuer must give the potential purchaser an update to the offering memorandum before the issuer accepts the agreement to purchase the securities. The update to the offering memorandum may take the form of an amendment describing the material change, a new offering memorandum containing up-to-date disclosure or a material change report, whichever the issuer decides will most effectively inform purchasers.

Whatever form of update the issuer uses, it must include a newly signed and dated certificate as required in the applicable subsection 2.9(9) ~~or 3.9(9), (10), (10.1), (10.2), (10.3), (11), (11.1), or (12) or 3.9(9), (10), (10.1), (10.2), (10.3), (11), (11.1), or (12)~~ of NI 45-106.

~~The certificate must be signed by each of the following: the chief executive officer and the chief financial officer of the issuer (or, if the issuer does not have a chief executive officer or chief financial officer, persons acting in those capacities), by all promoters of the issuer, and any two directors of the issuer. If the issuer has more than two directors, any two directors who are authorized to sign the certificate, other than the chief executive officer and chief financial officer, may sign on behalf of all of the directors. If the issuer does not have at least two directors other than the chief executive officer and chief financial officer, then all directors must sign the certificate.~~

"Promoter" is defined differently in provincial and territorial securities legislation across CSA jurisdictions. It is generally defined as meaning a person who has taken the initiative in founding, organizing or substantially reorganizing the business of the issuer or who has received consideration over a prescribed amount for services or property or both in connection with founding, organizing or substantially reorganizing the issuer. "Promoter" has not been defined in the *Securities Act* (Québec) and a broad interpretation is taken in Québec in determining who would be considered a promoter.

Under securities legislation, persons who receive consideration solely as underwriting commissions or in consideration of property and who do not otherwise take part in the founding, organizing or substantially reorganizing the issuer are not promoters. Simply selling securities, or in some way facilitating sales in securities, does not make a person a promoter under the offering memorandum exemptions.

~~In the case of an exempt distribution by a limited partnership where the general partner is a corporation, the general partner is expected to sign as promoter and the chief executive officer, chief financial officer and directors of the general partner to sign in those capacities on behalf of the issuer.~~

~~(54)~~ Consideration to be held in trust

The purchaser has, or must be given, the right to cancel the agreement to purchase the securities until midnight on the 2<sup>nd</sup> business day after signing the agreement. During this period, the issuer must arrange for the consideration to be held in trust on behalf of the purchaser.

It is up to the issuer to decide what arrangements are necessary to preserve the consideration received from the purchaser. The requirement to hold the consideration in trust may be satisfied if, for example, the issuer keeps the purchaser's cheque, without cashing or depositing it, until the expiration of the two business day cancellation period.

It is also the issuer's responsibility to ensure that whoever is holding the consideration promptly returns it to the purchaser if the purchaser cancels the agreement to purchase the securities.

~~(65)~~ Filing of offering memorandum

The issuer is required to file the offering memorandum with the securities regulatory authority or regulator in each of the jurisdictions in which the issuer distributes or trades securities under an offering memorandum exemption. The issuer must file the offering memorandum on or before the 10<sup>th</sup> day after the distribution.

If the issuer is conducting multiple closings, the offering memorandum must be filed on or before the 10th day after the first closing. Once the offering memorandum has been filed, there is no need to file it again after subsequent closings, unless it has been updated.

~~(76)~~ Purchasers' rights

Unless securities legislation in a purchaser's jurisdiction provides a purchaser with a comparable right of cancellation or revocation, an issuer must give each purchaser under an offering memorandum a contractual right to cancel the agreement to purchase the securities by delivering a notice to the issuer not later than midnight on the 2<sup>nd</sup> business day after the purchaser signs the agreement.

Unless securities legislation in a purchaser's jurisdiction provides purchasers with comparable statutory rights, the issuer must also give the purchaser a contractual right of action against the issuer in the event the offering memorandum contains a misrepresentation. This contractual right

of action must be available to the purchaser regardless of whether the purchaser relied on the misrepresentation when deciding to purchase the securities. This right is similar to that given to a purchaser under a prospectus. The purchaser may claim damages or ask that the agreement be cancelled. If the purchaser wants to cancel the agreement, the purchaser must commence the action within 180 days after signing the agreement to purchase the securities. If the purchaser is seeking damages, the purchaser must commence the action within the earlier of 180 days after learning of the misrepresentation or 3 years after signing the agreement to purchase the securities.

The issuer is required to describe in the offering memorandum any rights available to the purchaser, whether they are provided by the issuer contractually as a condition to the use of the exemption or provided under securities legislation.

### **3.9 Minimum amount investment**

An issuer may wish to distribute or trade more than one kind of security of its own issue, such as shares and debt, in a single transaction under a minimum investment amount exemption. Provided that the shares and debt are sold in units that have a total acquisition cost of not less than \$150 000 paid in cash at the time of the distribution of, or trade in, a security, the exemptions can, if otherwise available, be used, notwithstanding that the acquisition cost of the shares and the acquisition cost of the debt, taken separately, are both less than \$150 000.

## **PART 4 - OTHER EXEMPTIONS**

### **4.1 Employee, executive officer, director and consultant exemptions**

Trustees, custodians or administrators who engage in activities, contemplated [in](#) the prospectus and dealer registration exemptions in sections 2.27 and 3.27 of NI 45-106, that bring together purchasers and sellers of securities should have regard to the provisions of National Instrument 21-101 *Marketplace Operation* respecting “marketplaces” and “alternative trading systems”.

The employee, executive officer, director and consultant exemptions are based on the alignment of economic interests between an issuer and its employees. They may, where available, be used to provide employees and other similar persons with an opportunity to participate in the growth of the employer’s business and to compensate persons for the services they provide to an issuer. The securities regulatory authorities or regulators will generally not grant exemptive relief analogous to these exemptions except in very limited circumstances.

### **4.2 Business combination and reorganization**

#### **(1) Statutory procedure**

The securities regulatory authorities interpret the phrase “statutory procedure” broadly and are of the view that the prospectus and dealer registration exemptions contained in sections 2.11 and 3.11 of NI 45-106 apply to all distributions of, and trades in, securities of an issuer that are both part of the procedure and necessary to complete the transaction, regardless of when the distribution of, or trade in, a security occurs.

The prospectus and dealer registration exemptions contained in sections 2.11 and 3.11 of NI 45-106 exempt distributions of, and trades in, securities in connection with an amalgamation, merger, reorganization or arrangement if the same is done “under a statutory procedure”. The securities regulatory authorities [or regulators](#) are of the view that the references to statutory procedure in sections 2.11 and 3.11 of NI 45-106 are to any statute of a jurisdiction or foreign jurisdiction under which the entities involved have been incorporated or created and exist or under which the transaction is taking place. This would include, for example, an arrangement under the *Companies’ Creditors Arrangement Act* (Canada).

(2) Three-cornered amalgamations

Certain corporate statutes permit a so-called “three-cornered merger or amalgamation” under which two companies will amalgamate or merge and security holders of the amalgamating or merging entities will receive securities of a third party affiliate of one amalgamating or merging entity. The prospectus and dealer registration exemptions contained in sections 2.11 and 3.11 of NI 45-106 refer to these distributions of, or trades in, a security when they refer to a distribution of, or a trade in, a security made in connection with an amalgamation or merger done under a statutory procedure.

(3) Exchangeable shares

A transaction involving a procedure described in the prospectus and dealer registration exemptions contained in sections 2.11 and 3.11 of NI 45-106 may include an exchangeable share structure to achieve certain tax-planning objectives. For example, where a non-Canadian company seeks to acquire a Canadian company under a plan of arrangement, an exchangeable share structure may be used to allow the Canadian shareholders of the company to be acquired to receive, in substance, shares of the non-Canadian company while avoiding the adverse tax consequences associated with exchanging shares of a Canadian company for shares of a non-Canadian company. Instead of receiving shares of the non-Canadian company directly, the Canadian shareholders receive shares of a Canadian company which, through various contractual arrangements, have economic terms and voting rights that are essentially identical to the shares of the non-Canadian company and permit the holder to exchange such shares, at a time of the holder’s choosing, for shares of the non-Canadian company.

Historically, the use of an exchangeable share structure in connection with a statutory procedure has raised a question as to whether the exemptions now contained in sections 2.11 and 3.11 of NI 45-106 were available for all distributions or trades necessary to complete the transaction. For example, in the case of the acquisition under a plan of arrangement noted above, the use of an exchangeable share structure may result in a delay of several months or even years between the date of the arrangement and the date the shares of the non-Canadian company are distributed to the former shareholders of the acquired company. As a result of this delay, some filers have questioned whether the distribution of the non-Canadian company’s shares upon the exercise of the exchangeable shares may still be viewed as being “in connection with” the statutory transaction, and have made application for exemptive relief to address this uncertainty.

The securities regulatory authorities [or regulators](#) take the position that the statutory procedure exemptions contained in section 2.11 and section 3.11 of NI 45-106 refer to all distributions or trades of securities that are necessary to complete an exchangeable share transaction involving a procedure described in section 2.11 or section 3.11, even where such distributions or trades occur

several months or years after the transaction. In the case of the acquisition noted above, the investment decision of the shareholders of the acquired company at the time of the arrangement represented a decision to, ultimately, exchange their shares for shares of the non-Canadian company. The distribution of such shares upon the exercise of the exchangeable shares does not represent a new investment decision, but merely represents the completion of that original investment decision. Accordingly, additional exemptive relief is not warranted in circumstances where [the original transaction was completed in reliance on](#) these exemptions ~~are available~~.

#### **4.3 Asset acquisition - character of assets to be acquired**

When issuing securities, issuers must comply with the requirements under applicable corporate or other governing legislation that the securities be issued for fair value. Where securities are issued for non-cash consideration such as assets or resource properties, it is the responsibility of the issuer and its board of directors to determine the fair market value of the assets or resource properties and to retain records to demonstrate how that fair market value was determined. In some situations, cash assets that make up working capital could [also](#) be considered in the total calculation of the fair market value.

#### **4.4 Securities for debt - *bona fide debt***

A bona fide debt is one that was incurred for value, on commercially reasonable terms and that on the date the debt was incurred the parties believed would be repaid in cash.

A reporting issuer may distribute or trade securities to settle a debt only after the debt becomes due, as evidenced by the creditor issuing an invoice, demand letter or other written statement to the issuer indicating that the debt is due. The securities for debt exemptions may not be relied on for the issuance of securities by an issuer to secure a debt that will remain outstanding after the issuance.

#### **4.5 Take-over bid and issuer bid**

##### **(1) Exempt bids**

The terms take-over bid and issuer bid, for the purposes of sections 2.16 and 3.16 of NI 45-106, include an exempt take-over bid and exempt issuer bid.

##### **(2) Bids involving exchangeable shares**

The take-over bid and issuer bid exemptions refer to all distributions or trades necessary to complete a take-over bid or an issuer bid that involves an exchangeable share structure (as described under section 4.2 of this Companion Policy), even where such distributions or trades may occur several months or even years after the bid is completed.

#### **4.6 Isolated distribution or trade**

The exemptions contained in section 2.30 and 3.30 of NI 45-106 are limited to distributions of, or trades in, a security made by an issuer in a security of its own issue. There is also an additional isolated trade dealer registration exemption contained in section 3.29 of NI 45-106. While the

latter exemption refers to trades in any security, it does not apply to any trades by an issuer in a security that is issued by the issuer.

It is intended that these exemptions will only be used rarely and are not available for registrants or others whose business is trading in securities.

Reliance upon the isolated trade exemption might, for example, be appropriate when a person who is not involved in the business of trading securities wishes to make a single trade of a security that the person owns to another person. The exemption would not be available to a person for any subsequent trades for a period of time adequate to ensure that each transaction was truly isolated and unconnected.

#### **4.7 Mortgages**

In British Columbia, Alberta, Manitoba, Québec and Saskatchewan, NI 45-106 specifically excludes syndicated mortgages from the mortgage prospectus and dealer registration exemptions in sections 2.36 and 3.36. In determining what constitutes a syndicated mortgage, issuers will need to refer to the corresponding definition provided in section 2.36(1) or 3.36(1) of NI 45-106.

The mortgage exemptions do not apply to distributions or trades in securities that secure mortgages by bond, debenture, trust deed or similar obligation. The mortgage exemptions also do not apply to a distribution of, or a trade in, a security that represents an undivided co-ownership interest in a pool of mortgages, such as a pass-through certificate issued by an issuer of asset-backed securities.

#### **4.8 Not for profit issuer**

(1) Eligibility to use these ~~exemption~~[exemptions](#)

These exemptions apply to distributions of, and trades in, securities of an issuer that is organized exclusively for educational, benevolent, fraternal, charitable, religious or recreational purposes and not for profit (“not for profit issuer”). To use these exemptions, an issuer must be organized exclusively for one or more of the listed purposes and use the funds raised for those purposes.

If an issuer is organized exclusively for one of the listed purposes, but its mandate changes so that it is no longer primarily engaged in the purpose it was organized for, the issuer may no longer be able to rely on these exemptions. For example, if an issuer organized exclusively for educational purposes over time devotes more and more of its efforts to lending money, even if it is only to other educational entities, the lending issuer *may* be unable to rely on these exemptions. The same would also be true if one of an issuer’s mandates was to provide an investment vehicle for its members. An issuer that issues securities that pay dividends would also not be able to use these exemptions, because no part of the issuer’s net earnings can go to any security holder. However, if the securities are debt securities and the issuer agrees to repay the principal amount with or without interest, the security holders are not considered to be receiving part of the net earnings of the issuer. The debt securities may be secured or unsecured.

If investors could receive any special treatment as a result of purchasing securities, the security holders are *not* typically receiving part of the net earnings of the issuer and the sale may still fit within these exemptions. For example, if the not for profit issuer runs a golf course and offers

security holders a waiver of greens fees for three years, it could still rely on these exemptions, provided all other conditions are met (and the exemption remains available in the relevant jurisdiction(s)).

If, at the time of the distribution of, or trade in, the security, the purchaser has an entitlement to the assets of the issuer on the basis that they would be getting part of the net earnings of the issuer, then the sale would not fit within these exemptions.

In Québec, not for profit issuers may still rely on the broad exemption available for not for profit issuers under section 3 of the *Securities Act* (Québec).

(2) Meaning of “no commission or other remuneration”

Sections 2.38(b) and 3.38(b) provide that “no commission or other remuneration is paid in connection with the sale of the security”. This is intended to ensure that no one is paid to find purchasers of the securities. However, the issuer may pay its legal and accounting advisers for their legal or accounting services in connection with the sale.

#### **4.9 Exchange contracts**

The dealer registration exemption for exchange contracts contained in section 3.45 of NI 45-106 (and as limited by section 3.0 of NI 45-106) is only available in Alberta, British Columbia, Québec and Saskatchewan. In Manitoba and Ontario, exchange contracts are governed by commodity futures legislation.

Except in Saskatchewan, the dealer registration exemption for exchange contracts contained in section 3.45(1)(b) (and as limited by section 3.0) of NI 45-106 provides for trades resulting from unsolicited orders placed with an individual resident outside the jurisdiction. However, if the individual conducts further trades in the future, that individual will be deemed to be carrying on business in the jurisdiction and will not be able to rely on this exemption.

## **PART 5 – FORMS**

### **5.1 Report of Exempt Distribution**

#### (1) Requirement to file

An issuer that has distributed a security of its own issue under any of the prospectus exemptions listed in section 6.1 of NI 45-106 is required to file Form 45-106F1 *Report of Exempt Distribution*, on or before the 10th day after the distribution. Alternatively, if an underwriter distributes securities acquired under section 2.33 of NI 45-106, either the issuer or the underwriter may complete and file the form. If there is a syndicate of underwriters, the lead underwriter may file the form on behalf of the syndicate or each underwriter may file a form relating to the portion of the distribution it was responsible for.

In determining if it is required to file a report in a particular jurisdiction, the issuer ~~or~~ or underwriter should consider the following questions:

- (a) Is there a distribution in the jurisdiction? (Please refer to the securities legislation of the jurisdiction for guidance, if any, on when a distribution occurs in the jurisdiction.)
- (b) If there is a distribution in the jurisdiction, what exemption from the prospectus requirement is the issuer relying on for the distribution of the security?
- (c) Does the exemption referred to in paragraph (b) trigger a reporting requirement? (Reports of exempt distribution are required for distributions made in reliance on the prospectus exemptions listed in section 6.1 of NI 45-106.)

A distribution may occur in more than one jurisdiction. In this case, the issuer is required to file a single report in each Canadian jurisdiction where the distribution has occurred. The report will set out all distributions in each Canadian jurisdiction.

## (2) Access to information

The securities legislation of several provinces requires that information filed with the securities regulatory authority or, where applicable, the regulator under such securities legislation, be made available for public inspection during normal business hours except for information that the securities regulatory authority, or where applicable, the regulator,

- (a) believes to be personal or other information of such a nature that the desirability of avoiding disclosure thereof in the interest of any affected individual outweighs the desirability of adhering to the principle that information filed with the securities regulatory authority or the regulator, as applicable, be available to the public for inspection,
- (b) in Alberta, considers that it would not be prejudicial to the public interest to hold the information in confidence, and
- (c) in Québec, considers that access to the information could result in serious prejudice.

Based on the above mentioned provisions of securities legislation, the securities regulatory authorities or ~~the~~ regulators, as applicable, have determined that the information listed in Form 45-106F1 *Report of Exempt Distribution*, Schedule I (“Schedule I”) discloses personal or other information of such a nature that the desirability of avoiding disclosure of this personal information outweighs the desirability of making the information available to the public for inspection. In addition, in Alberta, the regulator considers that it would not be prejudicial to the public interest to hold the information listed in Schedule I in confidence. In Québec, the securities regulatory authority considers that access to Schedule I by the public in general could result in serious prejudice and consequently, the information listed in Schedule I will not be made publicly available.

## (3) Filings in British Columbia

For filings made in British Columbia, issuers are required to file Form 45-106F1 and pay the fees associated with that filing electronically using BCSC e-services. This requirement only applies to

[Form 45-106F1 filings that are required to be made within 10 days of the distribution. It does not apply to Form 45-106F1 filings made annually by investment funds under section 6.2\(2\) of NI 45-106. Please refer to BC Instrument 13-502 \*Electronic Filing of Reports of Exempt Distribution\* for further information.](#)

## **5.2 Forms required under the offering memorandum exemption**

NI 45-106 designates two forms of offering memorandum. The first, Form 45-106F2, is for non-qualifying issuers and the second, Form 45-106F3, can only be used by qualifying issuers (as defined in NI 45-106).

The required form of risk acknowledgment under sections 2.9(1), 3.9(1), 2.9(2) and 3.9(2) of NI 45-106 is Form 45-106F4.

## **5.3 Real estate securities**

Certain jurisdictions impose alternative or additional disclosure requirements in relation to the distribution of real estate securities by offering memorandum. Refer to securities legislation in the jurisdictions where securities are being distributed.

## **5.4 Risk Acknowledgement Form Respecting Close Personal Friends and Close Business Associates – Saskatchewan**

In Saskatchewan, a risk acknowledgment is also required under section 2.6(1) of NI 45-106 (and under section 3.6(1)) if the person intends to rely upon the “family, friends and business associates exemption” in section 2.5 (or in section 3.5) of NI 45-~~106~~106, which is based on a relationship of close personal friendship or close business association. The form of risk acknowledgement required in these circumstances is Form 45-106F5.

# **PART 6 – RESALE OF SECURITIES ACQUIRED UNDER AN EXEMPTION**

## **6.1 Resale restrictions**

In most jurisdictions, securities distributed under a prospectus exemption may be subject to restrictions on their resale. The particular resale, or “first trade”, restrictions depend on the parties to the distribution and the particular exemption that was relied upon to distribute the securities. In certain circumstances, no resale restrictions will apply and the securities acquired under an exempt distribution will be freely tradable.

Resale restrictions are imposed under National Instrument 45-102 *Resale of Securities* (“NI 45-102”). While NI 45-106 contains text boxes providing commentary on resale, these text boxes are intended as guidance only and are not a substitute for reviewing the applicable provisions in NI 45-102 to determine what resale restrictions, if any, apply to the securities in question.

The resale restrictions operate by the resale transaction triggering the prospectus requirement unless certain conditions are satisfied. Securities that are subject to such restrictions in circumstances where the conditions cannot be satisfied may nevertheless be distributed under an exemption from the prospectus requirement, whether under NI 45-106 or other securities legislation.

~~[Amended and Restated •]~~September 28, 2009 except in Ontario.

In Ontario, Amended and Restated on the later of the following:

(a) September 28, 2009;

(b) the day on which sections 5 and 11, subsection 12(1) and section 13 of Schedule 26 of the *Budget Measures Act, 2009* are proclaimed in force.

## Appendix E-1

### National Instrument 45-102 *Resale of Securities*

#### Table of Contents

<b><u>PART</u></b>	<b><u>TITLE</u></b>
<b>PART 1</b>	<b>DEFINITIONS</b>
1.1	Definitions
<b>PART 2</b>	<b>FIRST TRADE</b>
2.1	Application
2.2	Removal of Resale Provisions
2.3	Section 2.5 Applies
2.4	Section 2.6 Applies
2.5	Restricted Period
2.6	Seasoning Period
2.7	Exemption for a Trade if the Issuer Becomes a Reporting Issuer after the Distribution Date
2.8	Exemption for a Trade by a Control Person
2.9	Determining Time Periods
2.10	Exemption for a Trade in an Underlying Security if the Convertible Security, Exchangeable Security or Multiple Convertible Security is Qualified by a Prospectus
2.11	Exemption for a Trade in a Security Acquired in a Take-over Bid or Issuer Bid
2.12	Exemption for a Trade in an Underlying Security if the Convertible Security, Exchangeable Security or Multiple Convertible Security is Qualified by a Securities Exchange Take-over Bid Circular or Issuer Bid Circular
2.13	Trades by Underwriters
2.14	First Trades in Securities of a Non-Reporting Issuer Distributed under a Prospectus Exemption
<b>PART 3</b>	<b>EXEMPTION</b>
3.1	Exemption
<b>PART 4</b>	<b>EFFECTIVE DATE</b>
4.1	Effective Date
<b>APPENDIX A</b>	
<b>APPENDIX B</b>	
<b>APPENDIX C</b>	
<b>APPENDIX D</b>	
<b>APPENDIX E</b>	
<b>APPENDIX F</b>	
<b>FORM 45-102F1</b>	

**National Instrument 45-102**  
***Resale of Securities***

**PART 1        DEFINITIONS**

**1.1        Definitions - In this Instrument**

“control distribution” means a trade described in the provisions of securities legislation listed in Appendix A; (*placement d’un bloc de contrôle*)

“convertible security” means a security of an issuer that is convertible into, or carries the right of the holder to purchase or otherwise acquire, or of the issuer to cause the purchase or acquisition of, a security of the same issuer; (*titre convertible*)

“distribution date” means

- (a) in respect of a trade that is not a control distribution, the date the security that is the subject of the trade was distributed in reliance on an exemption from the prospectus requirement by the issuer or, in the case of a control distribution, by the selling security holder,
- (b) in respect of a trade that is a control distribution, the date the security that is the subject of the trade was acquired by the selling security holder,
- (c) in respect of a trade of an underlying security that is not a control distribution, the date the convertible security, exchangeable security or multiple convertible security that, directly or indirectly, entitled or required the holder to acquire the underlying security was distributed in reliance on an exemption from the prospectus requirement by the issuer or, in the case of a control distribution, by the selling security holder, or
- (d) in respect of a trade of an underlying security that is a control distribution, the date the convertible security, exchangeable security or multiple convertible security that, directly or indirectly, entitled or required the holder to acquire the underlying security was acquired by the selling security holder; (*date du placement*)

“exchangeable security” means a security of an issuer that is exchangeable for, or carries the right of the holder to purchase or otherwise acquire, or of the issuer to cause the purchase or acquisition of, a security of another issuer; (*titre convertible*)

“MI 45-102” means this Instrument prior to its amendment on September 14, 2005; (*NM 45-102*)

“MI 45-103” means Multilateral Instrument 45-103 *Capital Raising Exemptions* prior to its repeal on September 14, 2005; (*NM 45-103*)

“MI 45-105” means Multilateral Instrument 45-105 *Trades to Employees, Senior Officers, Directors, and Consultants* prior to its repeal on September 14, 2005; (*NM 45-105*)

“multiple convertible security” means a security of an issuer that is convertible into, or exchangeable for, or carries the right of the holder to purchase or otherwise acquire, or of the

issuer to cause the purchase or acquisition of, a convertible security, an exchangeable security or another multiple convertible security; (*titre convertible à répétition*)

“NI 45-106” means National Instrument 45-106 *Prospectus and Registration Exemptions*; (*NC 45-106*)

“private company” has the same meaning as in securities legislation; (*société fermée*)

“private issuer” means, as the context requires,

- (a) a private issuer as defined in securities legislation,
- (b) a private issuer as defined in NI 45-106, or
- (c) in Ontario, for purposes of the definition of a private issuer as it existed in 1998 OSC Rule 45-501 (as defined in the Ontario transitional provisions in Appendix D) prior to its repeal on November 30, 2001, a person that
  - (i) is not a reporting issuer or a mutual fund,
  - (ii) is an issuer all of whose issued and outstanding shares
    - (A) are subject to restrictions on transfer contained in the constating documents of the issuer or one or more agreements among the issuer and the holders of its securities; and
    - (B) are beneficially owned, directly or indirectly, by not more than 50 persons or companies, counting any two or more joint registered holders as one beneficial owner, exclusive of persons
      - (I) that are employed by the issuer or an affiliated entity of the issuer, or
      - (II) that beneficially owned, directly or indirectly, shares of the issuer while employed by it or an affiliated entity of it and at all times since ceasing to be so employed have continued to beneficially own, directly or indirectly, at least one share of the issuer, and
  - (iii) has not distributed any securities to the public; (*émetteur fermé*)

“SEDAR” has the same meaning as in National Instrument 13-101 *System for Electronic Document Analysis and Retrieval (SEDAR)*; (*SEDAR*) and

“trade” in Québec, has the same meaning as in NI 45-106;(*opération visée*)

“underlying security” means a security issued or transferred, or to be issued or transferred, in accordance with the terms of a convertible security, an exchangeable security or a multiple convertible security. (*titre sous-jacent*)

## **PART 2 FIRST TRADES**

- 2.1 Application** - In Manitoba, sections 2.2 to 2.7 and 2.10 to 2.14 do not apply.
- 2.2 Removal of Resale Provisions** - In Newfoundland and Labrador, and Ontario, the provisions in securities legislation listed in Appendix C, respectively, do not apply.
- 2.3 Section 2.5 Applies** - If a security was distributed under any of the provisions listed in Appendix D, the first trade of that security is subject to section 2.5.
- 2.4 Section 2.6 Applies** - If a security was distributed under any of the provisions listed in Appendix E, the first trade of that security is subject to section 2.6.

### **2.5 Restricted Period**

- (1) Unless the conditions in subsection (2) are satisfied, a trade that is specified by section 2.3 or other securities legislation to be subject to this section is a distribution.
- (2) Subject to subsection (3), for the purposes of subsection (1) the conditions are:
1. The issuer is and has been a reporting issuer in a jurisdiction of Canada for the four months immediately preceding the trade.
  2. At least four months have elapsed from the distribution date.
  3. If the distribution date is on or after March 30, 2004, or, in Québec, on or after September 14, 2005, and either of the following apply:
    - (i) if the issuer was a reporting issuer on the distribution date, the certificate representing the security, if any, carries a legend stating:

Unless permitted under securities legislation, the holder of this security must not trade the security before [*insert the date that is 4 months and a day after the distribution date*]"

or

    - (ii) if the issuer was not a reporting issuer on the distribution date, the certificate representing the security, if any, carries a legend stating:

Unless permitted under securities legislation, the holder of this security must not trade the security before the date that is 4 months and a day after the later of (i) [*insert the distribution date*], and (ii) the date the issuer became a reporting issuer in any province or territory.
- 3.1. If the security is entered into a direct registration or other electronic book-entry system, or if the purchaser did not directly receive a certificate representing the security, the purchaser received written notice containing the legend restriction notation set out in subparagraphs (i) or (ii) of item 3.

4. The trade is not a control distribution.
  5. No unusual effort is made to prepare the market or to create a demand for the security that is the subject of the trade.
  6. No extraordinary commission or consideration is paid to a person or company in respect of the trade.
  7. If the selling security holder is an insider or officer of the issuer, the selling security holder has no reasonable grounds to believe that the issuer is in default of securities legislation.
- (3) Items 3 and 3.1 of subsection (2) do not apply to a trade of an underlying security if the underlying security is issued at least four months after the later of
- (a) the distribution date, and
  - (b) the date the issuer became a reporting issuer in any jurisdiction of Canada.

## **2.6 Seasoning Period**

- (1) Unless the conditions in subsection (3) are satisfied, a trade that is specified by section 2.4 or other securities legislation to be subject to this section is a distribution.
- (2) The first trade of securities issued by a private company or private issuer made after the issuer has ceased to be a private company or private issuer is a distribution unless the conditions in subsection (3) are satisfied.
- (3) For the purposes of subsections (1) and (2), the conditions are:
  1. The issuer is and has been a reporting issuer in a jurisdiction of Canada for the four months immediately preceding the trade.
  2. The trade is not a control distribution.
  3. No unusual effort is made to prepare the market or to create a demand for the security that is the subject of the trade.
  4. No extraordinary commission or consideration is paid to a person or company in respect of the trade.
  5. If the selling security holder is an insider or officer of the issuer, the selling security holder has no reasonable grounds to believe that the issuer is in default of securities legislation.

## **2.7 Exemption for a Trade if the Issuer Becomes a Reporting Issuer After the Distribution Date**

– Item 1 of subsection 2.5 (2), 2.6 (3) or 2.8 (2) does not apply if the issuer became a reporting issuer after the distribution date by filing a prospectus in a jurisdiction listed in Appendix B and is a reporting issuer in a jurisdiction of Canada at the time of the trade.

## 2.8 Exemption for a Trade by a Control Person

- (1) The prospectus requirement does not apply to a control distribution, or a distribution by a lender, pledgee, mortgagee or other encumbrancer for the purpose of liquidating a debt made in good faith by selling or offering for sale a security pledged, mortgaged or otherwise encumbered in good faith as collateral for the debt if the security was acquired by the lender, pledgee, mortgagee or other encumbrancer in a control distribution, if the conditions in subsection (2) are satisfied.
- (2) For the purposes of subsection (1), the conditions are:
  1. The issuer is and has been a reporting issuer in a jurisdiction of Canada for the four months immediately preceding the trade.
  2. The selling security holder, or the lender, pledgee, mortgagee or other encumbrancer if the distribution is for the purpose of liquidating a debt, has held the securities for at least four months.
  3. No unusual effort is made to prepare the market or to create a demand for the security that is the subject of the trade.
  4. No extraordinary commission or consideration is paid to a person or company in respect of the trade.
  5. The selling security holder has no reasonable grounds to believe that the issuer is in default of securities legislation.
- (3) The selling security holder, or the lender, pledgee, mortgagee or other encumbrancer if the distribution is for the purpose of liquidating a debt, under subsection (2) must
  - (a) complete and sign a Form 45-102F1 no earlier than one business day before the Form 45-102F1 is filed;
  - (b) file the completed and signed Form 45-102F1 on SEDAR at least seven days before the first trade of the securities that is part of the distribution; and
  - (c) file, within three days after the completion of any trade, an insider report prepared in accordance with either Form 55-102F2 or Form 55-102F6 under National Instrument 55-102 *System for Electronic Disclosure by Insiders (SEDI)*.
- (4) A Form 45-102F1 filed under subsection (3) expires on the earlier of
  - (a) thirty days after the date the Form 45-102F1 was filed, and
  - (b) the date the selling security holder, or the lender, pledgee, mortgagee or other encumbrancer, files the last of the insider reports reflecting the sale of all securities referred to in the Form 45-102F1.

- (5) A selling security holder, or the lender, pledgee, mortgagee or other encumbrancer must not file a new Form 45-102F1 in respect of a class of securities of a reporting issuer until the Form 45-102F1 in respect of that class of securities previously filed by that person or company has expired.

## **2.9 Determining Time Periods**

- (1) In determining the period of time that an issuer was a reporting issuer in a jurisdiction of Canada for the purposes of section 2.5, 2.6 or 2.8, if the issuer was a party to an amalgamation, merger, reorganization or arrangement, the selling security holder may include the period of time that one of the parties to the amalgamation, merger, reorganization or arrangement was a reporting issuer in a jurisdiction of Canada immediately before the amalgamation, merger, reorganization or arrangement.
- (2) In determining the period of time that a selling security holder has held a security for the purposes of section 2.5 or 2.8, if the selling security holder acquired the security from an affiliate of the selling security holder, the selling security holder may include the period of time that the affiliate held the security.
- (3) In determining the period of time that a selling security holder has held an underlying security for the purposes of section 2.8, the selling security holder may include the period of time the selling security holder held the convertible security, exchangeable security or multiple convertible security.
- (4) In determining the period of time that a lender, pledgee, mortgagee or other encumbrancer has held a security under item 2 of subsection 2.8(2), the selling security holder may include the period of time the debtor held the security.
- (5) In determining the period of time that a lender, pledgee, mortgagee or other encumbrancer has held an underlying security under item 2 of subsection 2.8(2), the selling security holder may include the period of time the debtor held the convertible security, exchangeable security or multiple convertible security.

## **2.10 Exemption for a Trade in an Underlying Security if the Convertible Security, Exchangeable Security or Multiple Convertible Security is Qualified by a Prospectus** - Section 2.6 does not apply to a trade in an underlying security issued or transferred under the terms of a convertible security, exchangeable security or multiple convertible security if

- (a) a receipt was obtained for a prospectus qualifying the distribution of the convertible security, exchangeable security or multiple convertible security;
- (b) the trade is not a control distribution; and
- (c) the issuer of the underlying security is a reporting issuer at the time of the trade.

## **2.11 Exemption for a Trade in a Security Acquired in a Take-over Bid or Issuer Bid** - Section 2.6 does not apply to a trade of a security of an offeror if

- (a) a securities exchange take-over bid circular or securities exchange issuer bid circular relating to the distribution of the security was filed by the offeror on SEDAR;
- (b) the trade is not a control distribution; and
- (c) the offeror was a reporting issuer on the date the securities of the offeree issuer were first taken up under the take-over bid or issuer bid.

**2.12 Exemption for a Trade in an Underlying Security if the Convertible Security, Exchangeable Security or Multiple Convertible Security is Qualified by a Securities Exchange Take-over Bid Circular or Issuer Bid Circular** - Section 2.6 does not apply to a trade in an underlying security issued or transferred under the terms of a convertible security, exchangeable security or multiple convertible security if

- (a) a securities exchange take-over bid circular or a securities exchange issuer bid circular relating to the distribution of the convertible security, exchangeable security or multiple convertible security was filed by the offeror on SEDAR;
- (b) the trade is not a control distribution;
- (c) the offeror was a reporting issuer on the date the securities of the offeree issuer were first taken up under the take-over bid or issuer bid; and
- (d) the issuer of the underlying security is a reporting issuer at the time of the trade.

**2.13 Trades by Underwriters** - A trade by an underwriter of securities distributed under any of the provisions listed in Appendix F is a distribution.

**2.14 First Trades in Securities of a Non-Reporting Issuer Distributed under a Prospectus Exemption**

- (1) The prospectus requirement does not apply to the first trade of a security distributed under an exemption from the prospectus requirement if
  - (a) the issuer of the security
    - (i) was not a reporting issuer in any jurisdiction of Canada at the distribution date, or
    - (ii) is not a reporting issuer in any jurisdiction of Canada at the date of the trade;
  - (b) at the distribution date, after giving effect to the issue of the security and any other securities of the same class or series that were issued at the same time as or as part of the same distribution as the security, residents of Canada
    - (i) did not own directly or indirectly more than 10 percent of the outstanding securities of the class or series, and

- (ii) did not represent in number more than 10 percent of the total number of owners directly or indirectly of securities of the class or series; and
- (c) the trade is made
  - (i) through an exchange, or a market, outside of Canada, or
  - (iii) to a person or company outside of Canada.
- (2) The prospectus requirement does not apply to the first trade of an underlying security if
  - (a) the convertible security, exchangeable security or multiple convertible security that, directly or indirectly, entitled or required the holder to acquire the underlying security was distributed under an exemption from the prospectus requirement;
  - (b) the issuer of the underlying security
    - (i) was not a reporting issuer in any jurisdiction of Canada at the distribution date of the convertible security, exchangeable security or multiple convertible security, or
    - (ii) is not a reporting issuer in any jurisdiction of Canada at the date of the trade;
  - (c) the conditions in paragraph (1)(b) would have been satisfied for the underlying security at the time of the initial distribution of the convertible security, exchangeable security or multiple convertible security; and
  - (d) the condition in paragraph (1)(c) is satisfied.

### **PART 3 EXEMPTION**

#### **3.1 Exemption**

- (1) The regulator or the securities regulatory authority may grant an exemption from this Instrument, in whole or in part, subject to such conditions or restrictions as may be imposed in the exemption.
- (2) Despite subsection (1), in Ontario, only the regulator may grant such an exemption.

### **PART 4 EFFECTIVE DATE**

- 4.1 Effective Date** - This Instrument comes into force on March 30, 2004.

**Appendix A**  
**to**  
**National Instrument 45-102**  
***Resale of Securities***

**Control Distributions**

<b>JURISDICTION</b>	<b>SECURITIES LEGISLATION REFERENCE</b>
Alberta	Definition of “control person” in section 1(l) and subclause (iii) of the definition of “distribution” contained in section 1(p) of the <i>Securities Act</i> (Alberta)
British Columbia	Paragraph (c) of the definition of “distribution” contained in section 1(1) of the <i>Securities Act</i> (British Columbia)
Manitoba	Paragraph (b) of the definition of “primary distribution to the public” contained in subsection 1(1) of the <i>Securities Act</i> (Manitoba)
Newfoundland and Labrador	Clause 2(1)(l)(iii) of the <i>Securities Act</i> (Newfoundland and Labrador)
New Brunswick	Definition of “control person” and clause (c) of the definition of “distribution” contained in subsection 1 (1) of the <i>Securities Act</i> (New Brunswick)
Northwest Territories	Definition of “control person” in subsection 1(1) and paragraph (c) of the definition of “distribution” contained in subsection 1(1) of the <i>Securities Act</i> (Northwest Territories)
Nova Scotia	Clause 2(1)(l)(iii) of the <i>Securities Act</i> (Nova Scotia)
Nunavut	Definition of “control person” and paragraph (iii) of the definition of “distribution” contained in subsection 1(1) of Blanket Order No. 1 of the Registrar of Securities.
Ontario	Paragraph (c) of the definition of “distribution” contained in subsection 1(1) of the <i>Securities Act</i> (Ontario)
Prince Edward Island	Clause (iii) of the definition of “distribution” in section 1 of the <i>Securities Act</i> (Prince Edward Island)
Québec	Paragraph 9 of the definition of “distribution” contained in section 5 of the <i>Securities Act</i> (Québec)
Saskatchewan	Subclauses 2(1)(r)(iii), (iv) and (v) of <i>The Securities Act, 1988</i> (Saskatchewan)

Yukon

Definition of “control person” in subsection 1(1) and paragraph (c) of the definition of “distribution” contained in subsection 1(1) of the *Securities Act* (Yukon)

**Appendix B**  
**to**  
**National Instrument 45-102**  
*Resale of Securities*

**Reporting Issuer Jurisdictions**

Alberta

British Columbia

Manitoba

New Brunswick

Nova Scotia

Ontario

Québec

Saskatchewan

**Appendix C**  
**to**  
**National Instrument 45-102**  
***Resale of Securities***

**Non-Applicable Resale Provisions**  
**(Section 2.2)**

**JURISDICTION**

**SECURITIES LEGISLATION REFERENCE**

Newfoundland and Labrador

Clause 54(5)(a), subsections 54(7), 54(9), 54(10), 73(4), 73(5), 73(6) as it relates to clause 72(1)(r), 73(7) but not as it relates to subsection 54(6) and 54(7), 73(12), 73(18), 73(19) and 73(24) of the Securities Act (Newfoundland and Labrador)

Ontario

Subsections 72(4), 72(5), 72(6) as it relates to clause 72(1)(r), and 72(7) of the *Securities Act* (Ontario), in each case prior to section 11 of Schedule 26 of the *Budget Measures Act, 2009* being proclaimed in force.

**Appendix D**  
**to**  
**National Instrument 45-102**  
***Resale of Securities***

**Restricted Period Trades**  
**(Section 2.3)**

Except in Manitoba, the following exemptions from the prospectus requirement in NI 45-106:

- section 2.3 [Accredited investor] ;
- section 2.5 [Family, friends and business associates] (except in Ontario);
- section 2.7 [Founder, control person and family] (Ontario);
- section 2.8 [Affiliates];
- section 2.9 [Offering memorandum] (in Alberta, British Columbia, Manitoba, New Brunswick, Newfoundland and Labrador, Northwest Territories, Nova Scotia, Nunavut, Prince Edward Island, Québec, Saskatchewan and Yukon);
- section 2.10 [Minimum amount investment];
- section 2.12 [Asset acquisition];
- section 2.13 [Petroleum, natural gas and mining properties];
- section 2.14 [Securities for debt];
- section 2.19 [Additional investment in investment funds];
- section 2.30 [Isolated distribution by issuer] ;
- section 2.31 [Dividends and distributions], if the security was acquired in the circumstances referred to in subsection 2.31(2) and that security was initially acquired by the issuer under
  - (a) one of the exemptions listed in this Appendix,
  - (b) an exemption from the prospectus requirement that specifies that the first trade is subject to section 2.5 of this Instrument, or
  - (c) an exemption from the prospectus requirement that specified prior to September 14, 2005 that the first trade was subject to section 2.5 of MI 45-102;
- section 2.40 [RRSP/RRIF/TFSA], if the security acquired under section 2.40 was initially acquired by an individual or an associate of the individual or a RRSP, RRIF, or TFSA established for or by that individual or under which that individual is a beneficiary under
  - (a) one of the exemptions listed in this Appendix,
  - (b) an exemption from the prospectus requirement that specifies that the first trade is subject to section 2.5 of this Instrument, or
  - (c) an exemption from the prospectus requirement that specified prior to September 14, 2005 that the first trade was subject to section 2.5 of MI 45-102;
- section 2.42 [Conversion, exchange or exercise], if the security acquired in the circumstances referred to in paragraph 2.42(1)(a) was acquired in accordance with the terms and conditions of a previously issued security and that previously issued security was distributed under
  - (a) one of the exemptions listed in this Appendix,
  - (b) an exemption from the prospectus requirement that specifies that the first trade is subject to section 2.5 of this Instrument, or
  - (c) an exemption from the prospectus requirement that specified prior to September 14, 2005 that the first trade was subject to section 2.5 of MI 45-102;
- section 5.2 [TSX Venture exchange offering], if the security acquired under section 5.2 was acquired by
  - (a) a purchaser that, at the time the security was acquired, was an insider or promoter of the issuer of the security, the issuer's underwriter, or a member of the underwriter's

- “professional group” (as defined in National Instrument 33-105 *Underwriting Conflicts*), or
- (b) any other purchaser in excess of \$40,000 for the portion of the securities in excess of 40,000;

as well as the following local exemptions from the prospectus requirement:

- section 3.1 of Alberta Securities Commission Rule 72-501 *Distributions to Purchasers Outside Alberta*;
- clauses 77(1)(u) and (w) and subclauses 77(1)(ab)(ii) and (iii) of the *Securities Act* (Nova Scotia);
- an exemption from the prospectus requirement in a jurisdiction of Canada that specifies that the first trade is subject to section 2.5 of NI 45-102.

### **Transitional and Other Provisions**

**1. General** - An exemption from the prospectus requirement listed in Appendix D of MI 45-102 in effect on March 30, 2004 or an exemption from the prospectus requirement that specified prior to September 14, 2005 that the first trade was subject to section 2.5 of MI 45-102. The exemptions listed in Appendix D on March 30, 2004 were:

- ◆ Sections 131(1)(b), (c), (l), and (m) of the *Securities Act* (Alberta);
- ◆ Section 122(d) and 122.2 of the Alberta Securities Commission Rules, section 3.1 of Alberta Securities Commission Rule 72-501 *Distributions to Purchasers Outside Alberta*, subsections 3.1(2), 4.1(2), 4.1(4), and 5.1(2) of MI 45-103 or an exemption from the prospectus requirement that specifies that the first trade is subject to section 2.5 of MI 45-102;
- ◆ Section 131(1)(f)(iii) of the *Securities Act* (Alberta), if the right to purchase, convert or exchange was previously acquired under one of the above-listed exemptions under the *Securities Act* (Alberta), the Alberta Securities Commission Rules or MI 45-103, or under an exemption from the prospectus requirement that specifies that the first trade is subject to section 2.5 of MI 45-102;
- ◆ Sections 74(2)(1) to (6), (16), (18), (19), (23) and (25) of the *Securities Act* (British Columbia);
- ◆ Sections 128(a), (b), (c), (e), (f) and (h) of the *Securities Rules* (British Columbia) and subsections 3.1(2), 4.1(2), 4.1(4), and 5.1(2) of MI 45-103 or an exemption from the prospectus requirement that specifies that the first trade is subject to section 2.5 of MI 45-102;
- ◆ Sections 74(2)(11)(ii), 74(2)(11)(iii) and 74(2)(13) of the *Securities Act* (British Columbia) if the security acquired by the selling security holder or the right to purchase, convert or exchange or otherwise acquire, was initially acquired by a person or company under any of the sections of the *Securities Act* (British Columbia), the *Securities Rules* (British Columbia) or MI 45-103 referred to in this Appendix, or under an exemption from the prospectus requirement that specifies that the first trade is subject to section 2.5 of MI 45-102;
- ◆ Section 74(2)(12) of the *Securities Act* (British Columbia) if the security acquired by the selling security holder under the realization on collateral was initially acquired by a person or company under any of the sections of the *Securities Act* (British Columbia), the *Securities Rules* (British Columbia) or MI 45-103 referred to in this Appendix, or under an exemption from the prospectus requirement that specifies that

the first trade is subject to section 2.5 of MI 45-102;

- ◆ Clauses 54(3)(f) and (g) and 73(1)(a), (b), (c), (d), (h), (l), (m), (p) and (q) of the *Securities Act* (Newfoundland and Labrador), subsections 3.1(2), 4.1(2), 4.1(4), and 5.1(2) of MI 45-103, or an exemption from the prospectus requirement that specifies that the first trade is subject to section 2.5 of MI 45-102;
- ◆ Subclause 73(1)(f)(iii) of the *Securities Act* (Newfoundland and Labrador) if the right to purchase, convert or exchange was previously acquired under one of the above listed exemptions under the *Securities Act* (Newfoundland and Labrador) or MI 45-103, or under an exemption from the prospectus requirement that specifies that the first trade is subject to section 2.5 of MI 45-102;
- ◆ Paragraphs 3(a), (b), (c), (k), (l), (m), (r), (s), (t), (u), (w) and (z) of Blanket Order No. 1 of the Registrar of Securities (Northwest Territories), subsections 3.1(2), 4.1(2), 4.1(4), 5.1(2) of MI 45-103 or an exemption from the prospectus requirement that specifies that the first trade is subject to section 2.5 of MI 45-102;
- ◆ Subparagraph 3(e)(iii) of Blanket Order No. 1 of the Registrar of Securities (Northwest Territories) if the right to purchase, convert or exchange was previously acquired under one of the above-listed exemptions under Blanket Order No. 1 of the Registrar of Securities (Northwest Territories) or MI 45-103, or under an exemption from the prospectus requirement that specifies that the first trade is subject to section 2.5 of MI 45-102;
- ◆ Clauses 77(1)(a), (b), (c), (d), (l), (m), (p), (q), (u), (w), (y), (ab) and (ad) of the *Securities Act* (Nova Scotia), subsections 3.1(2), 4.1(2), 4.1(4), and 5.1(2) of MI 45-103 or an exemption from the prospectus requirement that specifies that the first trade is subject to section 2.5 of MI 45-102;
- ◆ Subclause 77(1)(f)(iii) of the *Securities Act* (Nova Scotia) if the right to purchase, convert or exchange was previously acquired under one of the above listed exemptions under the *Securities Act* (Nova Scotia) or MI 45-103, or under an exemption from the prospectus requirement that specifies that the first trade is subject to section 2.5 of MI 45-102;
- ◆ Paragraphs 3(a), (b), (c), (k), (l), (m), (r), (s), (t), (u), (w) and (z) of Blanket Order No.1 of the Registrar of Securities (Nunavut), subsections 3.1(2), 4.1(2), 4.1(4), and 5.1(2) of MI 45-103 or an exemption from the prospectus requirement that specifies that the first trade is subject to section 2.5 of MI 45-102;
- ◆ Subparagraph 3(e)(iii) of Blanket Order No.1 of the Registrar of Securities (Nunavut) if the right to purchase, convert or exchange was previously acquired under one of the above-listed exemptions under Blanket Order No. 1 of the Registrar of Securities (Nunavut) or MI 45-103, or under an exemption from the prospectus requirement that specifies that the first trade is subject to section 2.5 of MI 45-102;
- ◆ Clauses 13(1)(a), (b), (c), (g) and (i) of the *Securities Act* (Prince Edward Island), subsections 3.1(2), 4.1(2), 4.1(4), and 5.1(2) of MI 45-103 or under an exemption from the prospectus requirement that specifies that the first trade is subject to section 2.5 of MI 45-102;
- ◆ Subclause 13(1)(e)(iii) of the *Securities Act* (Prince Edward Island) if the right to purchase, convert or exchange was previously acquired under one the above-listed exemptions under the *Securities Act* (Prince Edward Island) or under an exemption from the prospectus requirement that specifies that the first trade is subject to section 2.5 of MI 45-102;

- ◆ Subclauses 81(1)(f)(iii) and (iv) of *The Securities Act, 1988* (Saskatchewan) if the convertible security, exchangeable security or multiple convertible security was acquired under one of the exemptions of *The Securities Act, 1988* (Saskatchewan) or MI 45-103 referred to in this Appendix or under an exemption from the prospectus requirement that specifies that the first trade is subject to section 2.5 of MI 45-102;
- ◆ Clause 81(1)(e) of *The Securities Act, 1988* (Saskatchewan) if the person or company from whom the securities were acquired obtained the securities under one of the exemptions of *The Securities Act, 1988* (Saskatchewan) referred to in this Appendix;

## 2. Québec Provisions

- ◆ Sections 43, 47, 48 and 51 of the *Securities Act* (Québec) as they read prior to their amendment or repeal by sections 7 and 8 of *An Act to amend the Securities Act and other legislative provisions*;
- ◆ Prospectus and registration exemptions granted pursuant to section 263 of the *Securities Act* (Québec) before March 30, 2004 if the exemption included as a condition a restricted period of 12 months.

## 3. Ontario Provisions

### Definitions

In this Appendix

“**1998 OSC Rule 45-501**” means the Ontario Securities Commission Rule 45-501 *Exempt Distributions* that came into force on December 22, 1998;

“**2001 OSC Rule 45-501**” means the Ontario Securities Commission Rule 45-501 *Exempt Distributions* that came into force on November 30, 2001;

“**2004 OSC Rule 45-501**” means the Ontario Securities Commission Rule 45-501 *Exempt Distributions* that came into force on January 12, 2004;

“**2005 OSC Rule 45-501**” means the Ontario Securities Commission Rule 45-501 *Ontario Prospectus and Registration Exemptions* that came into force on September 14, 2005;

“**2009 OSC Rule 45-501**” means the Ontario Securities Commission Rule 45-501 *Ontario Prospectus and Registration Exemptions* that came into force on the later of (a) September 28, 2009 and (b) the day on which sections 5 and 11, subsection 12(1) and section 13 of Schedule 26 of the *Budget Measures Act, 2009* were proclaimed in force;

“**convertible security**” means, in Ontario, a security of an issuer that is convertible into, or carries the right of the holder to purchase, or of the issuer to cause the purchase of, a security of the same issuer;

“**exchangeable security**” means, in Ontario, a security of an issuer that is exchangeable for, or carries the right of the holder to purchase, or the right of the issuer to cause the purchase of, a security of another issuer;

“**exchange issuer**” means, in Ontario, an issuer that distributes securities of a reporting issuer held by it in accordance with the terms of an exchangeable security of its own issue;

“**multiple convertible security**” means, in Ontario, a security of an issuer that is convertible into or exchangeable for, or carries the right of the holder to purchase, or of the issuer or exchange issuer to cause the purchase of, a convertible security, an exchangeable security or another multiple convertible security;

“**OSC Rule 45-502**” means Ontario Securities Commission Rule 45-502 *Dividend or Interest Reinvestment and Stock Dividend Plans*;

“**Type 1 trade**” means, in Ontario, a distribution in a security under an exemption from the prospectus requirement in:

- (a) clause 72(1)(a), (b), (c), (d), (l), (m), (p) or (q) of the *Securities Act* (Ontario), in each case prior to section 11 of Schedule 26 of the *Budget Measures Act, 2009* being proclaimed in force;
- (b) section 2.4, 2.5 or 2.11 of the 1998 OSC Rule 45-501;
- (c) section 2.3, 2.12, 2.13 or 2.14 of the 2001 OSC Rule 45-501; or
- (d) section 2.3, 2.12, 2.13, 2.14 or 2.16 of the 2004 OSC Rule 45-501; and

“**underlying security**” means, in Ontario, a security issued or transferred, or to be issued or transferred, in accordance with the terms of a convertible security, an exchangeable security or a multiple convertible security.

**(a) Securities Act (Ontario)**

Clauses 72(1)(a), (b), (c), (d), (l), (m), (p) and (q) of the *Securities Act* (Ontario) and subclause 72(1)(f)(iii) of the *Securities Act* (Ontario) if the right to purchase, convert or exchange was previously acquired under one of the above-listed exemptions under the *Securities Act* (Ontario), in each case prior to section 11 of Schedule 26 of the *Budget Measures Act, 2009* being proclaimed in force, or an exemption from the prospectus requirement that specifies that the first trade is subject to section 2.5 of MI 45-102

**(b) 2005 OSC Rule 45-501 and 2009 OSC Rule 45-501**

Section 2.1 of the 2005 OSC Rule 45-501 and 2009 OSC Rule 45-501;

Section 2.2 of the 2005 OSC Rule 45-501 and 2009 OSC Rule 45-501.

**(c) 2001 OSC Rule 45-501 and 2004 OSC Rule 45-501**

Section 2.3 of the 2001 OSC Rule 45-501 and the 2004 OSC Rule 45-501;

Section 2.11 of the 2001 OSC Rule 45-501 and the 2004 OSC Rule 45-501 if section 2.5 of MI 45-102 would have been applicable to a first trade in that security by the person making the exempt distribution under section 2.11 of the 2001 OSC Rule 45-501 or the 2004 OSC Rule 45-501;

Section 2.12 of the 2001 OSC Rule 45-501 and the 2004 OSC Rule 45-501;

Section 2.13 of the 2001 OSC Rule 45-501 and the 2004 OSC Rule 45-501;

Section 2.14 of the 2001 OSC Rule 45-501 and the 2004 OSC Rule 45-501;

Section 2.16 of the 2004 OSC Rule 45-501.

**(d) 1998 OSC Rule 45-501**

Section 2.4 of the 1998 OSC Rule 45-501

Section 2.5 of the 1998 OSC Rule 45-501

Section 2.11 of the 1998 OSC Rule 45-501

**(e) Other**

Any provision under which an underlying security was distributed on conversion or exchange of a multiple convertible security, convertible security or exchangeable security acquired in a Type 1 trade or in a trade under section 2.4, 2.5 or 2.11 of the 1998 OSC Rule 45-501.

**4. New Brunswick Provisions**

In this Appendix

“**2004 NB LR 45-501**” means the New Brunswick Securities Commission Local Rule 45-501 that came into force on September 29, 2004;

- A. Subsections 2.3(3), 2.5(2), 2.6(7), 2.7(2), 2.8(2), 2.10(2), 2.11(2), 2.12(2) and 2.17(2) of 2004 NB LR 45-501
- B. Subsection 2.41(2) of 2004 NB LR 45-501 (if the security acquired under section 2.4 was initially acquired by an individual or an associate of the individual or an RRSP or RRIF established for or by that individual or under which that individual is a beneficiary under
  - (a) one of the exemptions in NB LR 45-501 listed in paragraph A, or
  - (b) an exemption from the prospectus requirement that specifies that the first trade is subject to section 2.5 of Multilateral Instrument 45-102 *Resale of Securities*)
- C. Subsection 2.43(3) (if the security acquired under paragraph 2.43(1)(a) was acquired in accordance with the terms and conditions of a previously issued security under
  - (a) one of the exemptions in 2005 NB LR 45-501 listed in paragraph A, or
  - (b) an exemption from the prospectus requirement that specifies that the first trade is subject to section 2.5 of Multilateral Instrument, 45-102 *Resale of Securities*)
- D. Section 5.2 of 2004 NB LR 45-501

**Appendix E**  
**to**  
**National Instrument 45-102**  
***Resale of Securities***

**Seasoning Period Trades**  
**(Section 2.4)**

Except in Manitoba, the following exemptions from the prospectus requirement in NI 45-106:

- section 2.1 [Rights offering];
- section 2.2 [Reinvestment plan];
- section 2.4 [Private issuer];
- section 2.11 [Business combination and reorganization];
- section 2.16 [Take-over bid and issuer bid];
- section 2.17 [Offer to acquire to security holder outside local jurisdiction];
- section 2.18 [Investment fund reinvestment];
- section 2.20 [Private investment club];
- section 2.21 [Private investment fund - loan and trust pools];
- section 2.24 [Employee, executive officer, director and consultant];
- section 2.26 [Distributions among current or former employees, executive officers, directors or consultants of non-reporting issuer];
- section 2.27 [Permitted transferees];
- section 2.31 [Dividends and distributions], if the security was acquired in the circumstances referred to in subsection 2.31(2), that security was initially acquired by the issuer under
  - (a) one of the exemptions listed in this Appendix,
  - (b) an exemption from the prospectus requirement that specifies that the first trade is subject to section 2.6 of this Instrument, or
  - (c) an exemption from the prospectus requirement that specified prior to September 14, 2005 that the first trade was subject to section 2.6 of MI 45-102;
- section 2.40 [RRSP/RRIF/TFSA], if the security acquired under section 2.40 was initially acquired by an individual or an associate of the individual or a RRSP, RRIF, or TFSA established for or by that individual or under which that individual is a beneficiary under
  - (a) one of the exemptions listed in this Appendix,
  - (b) an exemption from the prospectus requirement that specifies that the first trade is subject to section 2.6 of this Instrument, or
  - (c) an exemption from the prospectus requirement that specified prior to September 14, 2005 that the first trade was subject to section 2.6 of MI 45-102;
- section 2.42 [Conversion, exchange or exercise - security of own issue], if the security acquired in the circumstances referred to in paragraph 2.42 (1)(a) was acquired in accordance with the terms and conditions of a previously issued security and that previously issued security was distributed under
  - (a) one of the exemptions listed in this Appendix,
  - (b) an exemption from the prospectus requirement that specifies that the first trade is subject to section 2.6 of this Instrument, or
  - (c) an exemption from the prospectus requirement that specified prior to September 14, 2005 that the first trade was subject to section 2.6 of MI 45-102;
- section 2.42 [Conversion, exchange or exercise - security of a reporting issuer] for a security being traded in the circumstances referred to in clause (b) of subsection 2.42 (1);

as well as the following local exemptions from the prospectus requirement:

- Alberta Securities Commission Rule 45-502 *Trade with RESP*, if not included in Appendix D;
- Nova Scotia Securities Commission Blanket Order No. 46;
- Prince Edward Island Local Rule 45-510 - *Exempt Distributions - Exemptions for Trades Pursuant to Take-over Bids and Issuer Bids*;
- an exemption from the prospectus requirement in a jurisdiction of Canada that specifies that the first trade is subject to section 2.6 of NI 45-102.

## **Transitional and Other Provisions**

### **1. General:**

An exemption from the prospectus requirement listed in Appendix E of MI 45-102 in effect on March 30, 2004 or an exemption from the prospectus requirement that specified prior to September 14, 2005 that the first trade was subject to section 2.6 of MI 45-102. The exemptions listed in Appendix E of MI 45-102 on March 30, 2004 were:

- ◆ Section 131(1)(f) if not included in Appendix D of this Instrument, sections 131(h), (i), (j), (k), and (y) of the *Securities Act* (Alberta) and sections 107(1) (j.1) and (k.1) prior to their repeal by section 5 of the *Securities Amendment Act, 1989* (Alberta), subsection 2.1(2) of MI 45-103 and sections 2.1, 2.2, 2.3 and 2.4 of MI 45-105 or under an exemption from the prospectus requirement that specifies that the first trade is subject to section 2.6 of MI 45-102;
- ◆ Section 74(2)(11)(iii) if not included in Appendix D or F and sections 74(2)(7), (8) if not included in Appendix F, (9) to (11), (13), (22) and (24) of the *Securities Act* (British Columbia);
- ◆ Section 128(g) of the *Securities Rules* (British Columbia), section 2.1(2) of MI 45-103 and sections 2.1, 2.2, 2.3 and 2.4 of MI 45-105 or under an exemption from the prospectus requirement that specifies that the first trade is subject to section 2.6 of MI 45-102;
- ◆ Section 74(2)(12) of the *Securities Act* (British Columbia), if the security acquired by the selling security holder under the realization on collateral was initially acquired by a person or company under any of the sections of the *Securities Act* (British Columbia), the *Securities Rules* (British Columbia) or a multilateral instrument referred to in this Appendix or under an exemption from the prospectus requirement that specifies that the first trade is subject to section 2.6 of MI 45-102;
- ◆ Clauses 54(3) and 73(1)(f) if not included in Appendix D or F of this Instrument, (i) if not included in Appendix F, (j), (k) and (n) of the *Securities Act* (Newfoundland and Labrador), subsection 2.1(2) of MI 45-103 and sections 2.1, 2.2, 2.3 and 2.4 of MI 45-105 or under an exemption from the prospectus requirement that specifies that the first trade is subject to section 2.6 of MI 45-102;
- ◆ Paragraphs 3(e), (f), (g), (h), (i), (n), (x), (y) and (mm) of Blanket Order No. 1 of the Registrar of Securities (Northwest Territories), except for a trade made under subparagraph 3(e)(iii) of Blanket Order No. 1 of the Registrar of Securities (Northwest Territories) that is included in Appendix D or F of this Instrument or a trade made under paragraph 3(g) that is included in Appendix F of this Instrument, subsection 2.1(2) of MI 45-103 and sections 2.1, 2.2, 2.3 and 2.4 of MI 45-105 or under an exemption from the prospectus requirement that specifies that the first trade is subject to section 2.6 of MI 45-102;
- ◆ Clause 77(1)(f) of the *Securities Act* (Nova Scotia) if not included in Appendix D or F of this Instrument,

and clauses 77(1)(h), (i) if not included in Appendix F, (j), (k), (n), (v), (va), (ac), (ae) and (af) of the *Securities Act* (Nova Scotia), and clause 78(1)(a) of the *Securities Act* (Nova Scotia) as it relates to clause 41(2)(j) of the *Securities Act* (Nova Scotia) and Blanket Order No. 37, 38 if not included in Appendix F, 46 and 45-503 if not included in Appendix F, subsection 2.1(2) of MI 45-103 and sections 2.1, 2.2, 2.3 and 2.4 of MI 45-105 or under an exemption from the prospectus requirement that specifies that the first trade is subject to section 2.6 of MI 45-102;

- ◆ Paragraphs 3(e), (f), (g), (h), (i), (n), (x), (y) and (mm) of Blanket Order No. 1 of the Registrar of Securities (Nunavut), except for a trade made under subparagraph 3(e)(iii) of Blanket Order No. 1 of the Registrar of Securities (Nunavut) that is included in Appendix D or F of this Instrument or a trade made under paragraph 3(g) that is included in Appendix F of this Instrument, subsection 2.1(2) of MI 45-103 and sections 2.1, 2.2, 2.3 and 2.4 of MI 45-105 or under an exemption from the prospectus requirement that specifies that the first trade is subject to section 2.6 of MI 45-102;
- ◆ Clauses 13(1)(e) if not included in Appendix D or F of this Instrument, (f) if not included in Appendix F, (h) and (k) of the *Securities Act* (Prince Edward Island) or section 3.1 or 3.2 of Rule 45-501, section 1.1 of Prince Edward Island Rule 45-502, section 2.1 or 2.2 of Prince Edward Island Rule 45-506 or section 2.1 or 2.2 of Prince Edward Island Rule 45-510, subsection 2.1(2) of MI 45-103 and sections 2.1, 2.2, 2.3 and 2.4 of MI 45-105 or under an exemption from the prospectus requirement that specifies that the first trade is subject to section 2.6 of MI 45-102;
- ◆ Clauses 81(1)(a.1), (e) if not included in Appendix D of this Instrument, (f) if not included in Appendix D or F of this Instrument, (f.1), (g), (h), (i) if not included in Appendix F, (i.1), (j), (k), (o), (cc) and (dd) of *The Securities Act, 1988* (Saskatchewan), subsection 2.1(2) of MI 45-103 and sections 2.1, 2.2, 2.3 and 2.4 of MI 45-105 or under an exemption from the prospectus requirement that specifies that the first trade is subject to section 2.6 of MI 45-102.

## 2. Québec Provisions

- ◆ Sections 50 and 52 of the *Securities Act* (Québec) as they read prior to their repeal by section 8 of *An Act to amend the Securities Act and other legislative provisions*;
- ◆ Prospectus and registration exemptions granted pursuant to section 263 of the *Securities Act* (Québec) before March 30, 2004 if the exemption included as a condition a seasoning period of 12 months.

## 3. Ontario provisions

### Definitions

In this Appendix

“**1998 OSC Rule 45-501**” means the Ontario Securities Commission Rule 45-501 *Exempt Distributions* that came into force on December 22, 1998;

“**2001 OSC Rule 45-501**” means the Ontario Securities Commission Rule 45-501 *Exempt Distributions* that came into force on November 30, 2001;

“**2004 OSC Rule 45-501**” means the Ontario Securities Commission Rule 45-501 *Exempt Distributions* that came into force on January 12, 2004;

“**convertible security**” means, in Ontario, a security of an issuer that is convertible into, or carries the right of the holder to purchase, or of the issuer to cause the purchase of, a security of the same issuer;

“**exchangeable security**” means, in Ontario, a security of an issuer that is exchangeable for, or carries the right of the holder to purchase, or the right of the issuer to cause the purchase of, a security of another issuer;

“**exchange issuer**” means, in Ontario, an issuer that distributes securities of a reporting issuer held by it in accordance with the terms of an exchangeable security of its own issue;

“**multiple convertible security**” means, in Ontario, a security of an issuer that is convertible into or exchangeable for, or carries the right of the holder to purchase, or of the issuer or exchange issuer to cause the purchase of, a convertible security, an exchangeable security or another multiple convertible security;

“**OSC Rule 45-502**” means Ontario Securities Commission Rule 45-502 *Dividend or Interest Reinvestment and Stock Dividend Plans*;

“**OSC Rule 45-503**” means Ontario Securities Commission Rule 45-503 *Trades to Employees, Executives and Consultants*;

“**Type 1 trade**” means, in Ontario, a distribution in a security under an exemption from the prospectus requirement in:

- (a) clause 72(1)(a), (b), (c), (d), (l), (m), (p) or (q) of the *Securities Act* (Ontario), in each case prior to section 11 of Schedule 26 of the *Budget Measures Act, 2009* being proclaimed in force;
- (b) section 2.4, 2.5 or 2.11 of the 1998 OSC Rule 45-501;
- (c) section 2.3, 2.12, 2.13 or 2.14 of the 2001 OSC Rule 45-501; or
- (d) section 2.3, 2.12, 2.13, 2.14 or 2.16 of the 2004 OSC Rule 45-501; and

“**Type 2 trade**” means, in Ontario, a distribution in a security under an exemption from the prospectus requirement in:

- (a) clause 72(1)(f) of the *Securities Act* (Ontario), prior to section 11 of Schedule 26 of the *Budget Measures Act, 2009* being proclaimed in force, other than a distribution to an associated consultant or investor consultant as defined in OSC Rule 45-503 or a distribution to an associated consultant or investor relations person as defined in MI 45-105;
- (b) clause 72(1)(h), (i), (j), (k) or (n) of the *Securities Act* (Ontario), in each case prior to section 11 of Schedule 26 of the *Budget Measures Act, 2009* being proclaimed in force; or
- (c) section 2.5, 2.8 or 2.15 of the 2001 OSC Rule 45-501; or
- (d) section 2.5, 2.8 or 2.15 of the 2004 OSC Rule 45-501; and

“**underlying security**” means, in Ontario, a security issued or transferred, or to be issued or transferred, in accordance with the terms of a convertible security, an exchangeable security or a multiple convertible security.

**(a) Securities Act (Ontario)**

Clauses 72(1)(f), (i) if not included in Appendix F, (j), (k) and (n) of the *Securities Act* (Ontario), in each

case prior to section 11 of Schedule 26 of the *Budget Measures Act, 2009* being proclaimed in force, except for a trade made under 72(1)(f)(iii) of the *Securities Act* (Ontario), prior to section 11 of Schedule 26 of the *Budget Measures Act, 2009* being proclaimed in force, that is:

- (i) included in Appendix D or F of this Instrument, or
- (ii) contemplated by section 6.5 of 2004 OSC Rule 45-501; and

an exemption from the prospectus requirement that specifies that the first trade is subject to section 2.6 of MI 45-102

Clause 72(1)(h) of the *Securities Act* (Ontario) except for a distribution under clause 72(1)(h) of the *Securities Act* (Ontario) of an underlying security that was distributed on conversion or exchange of a multiple convertible security, convertible security or exchangeable security acquired in a Type 1 trade, in each case prior to section 11 of Schedule 26 of the *Budget Measures Act, 2009* being proclaimed in force.

**(b) 2001 OSC Rule 45-501 and 2004 OSC Rule 45-501**

Section 2.1 of the 2001 OSC Rule 45-501 and the 2004 OSC Rule 45-501;

Section 2.5 of the 2001 OSC Rule 45-501 and the 2004 OSC Rule 45-501;

Section 2.6 of the 2001 OSC Rule 45-501 and the 2004 OSC Rule 45-501 if an underlying security was distributed under section 2.6 of the 2001 OSC Rule 45-501 or the 2004 OSC Rule 45-501 on a forced conversion or exchange of a multiple convertible security, convertible security or exchangeable security acquired:

- (a) in a Type 2 trade;
- (b) under section 2.2, 3.1, 3.2, 3.3, 5.1 or 8.1 of OSC Rule 45-503, other than a trade by an associated consultant or investor consultant as defined in OSC Rule 45-503; or
- (c) under a provision in Part 2 of MI 45-105;

Section 2.7 of the 2001 OSC Rule 45-501 and the 2004 OSC Rule 45-501 if an underlying security was distributed under section 2.7 of the 2001 OSC Rule 45-501 or the 2004 OSC Rule 45-501 on a forced conversion or exchange of a multiple convertible security, convertible security or exchangeable security acquired:

- (a) in a Type 2 trade;
- (b) under section 2.2, 3.1, 3.2, 3.3, 5.1 or 8.1 of OSC Rule 45-503, other than a trade by an associated consultant or investor consultant as defined in OSC Rule 45-503; or
- (c) under a provision in Part 2 of MI 45-105;

Section 2.8 of the 2001 OSC Rule 45-501 and the 2004 OSC Rule 45-501;

Section 2.11 of the 2001 OSC Rule 45-501 and the 2004 OSC Rule 45-501 if section 2.6 of MI 45-102 would have been applicable to a first trade in that security by the person making the exempt distribution under section 2.11 of the 2001 OSC Rule 45-501 or the 2004 OSC Rule 45-501;

Section 2.15 of the 2004 OSC Rule 45-501.

**(c) 1998 OSC Rule 45-501**

Section 2.7 of the 1998 OSC Rule 45-501;

Section 2.8 of the 1998 OSC Rule 45-501;

Section 2.9 of the 1998 OSC Rule 45-501 if an underlying security was distributed under section 2.9 of the 1998 OSC Rule 45-501 on a forced conversion or exchange of a multiple convertible security, convertible security or exchangeable security acquired by the holder in a Type 2 trade;

Section 2.10 of the 1998 OSC Rule 45-501 if an underlying security was distributed under section 2.10 of the 1998 OSC Rule 45-501 on a forced conversion or exchange of a multiple convertible security, convertible security or exchangeable security acquired by the holder in a Type 2 trade;

Section 2.17 of the 1998 OSC Rule 45-501;

Subsection 2.18(1) of the 1998 OSC Rule 45-501 after the issuer had ceased to be a private issuer for the purposes of the *Securities Act* (British Columbia).

**(d) Other**

Sections 2.1 and 3.1 of Ontario Securities Commission Rule 45-502.

**4. New Brunswick Provisions**

In this Appendix

“**2004 NB LR 45-501**” means the New Brunswick Securities Commission Local Rule 45-501 that came into force on September 29, 2004;

- A. Subsections 2.1(2), 2.2(3), 2.4(2), 2.9(2), 2.14(2), 2.16(3), 2.18(2), 2.19(2), 2.22(4), 2.25(3), 2.26(4), 2.29(3), 2.30(2) and 2.31(3) of 2004 NB LR 45-501
- B. Subsection 2.41(2) of 2004 NB LR 45-501 (if the security acquired under section 2.4 was initially acquired by an individual or an associate of the individual or an RRSP or RRIF established for or by that individual or under which that individual is a beneficiary under
  - (a) one of the exemptions in NB LR 45-501 listed in paragraph A, or
  - (b) an exemption from the prospectus requirement that specifies that the first trade is subject to section 2.5 of Multilateral Instrument 45-102 *Resale of Securities*)
- C. Subsection 2.43(3) (if the security acquired under paragraph 2.43(1)(a) was acquired in accordance with the terms and conditions of a previously issued security under
  - (a) one of the exemptions in 2005 NB LR 45-501 listed in paragraph A, or
  - (b) an exemption from the prospectus requirement that specifies that the first trade is subject to section 2.5 of Multilateral Instrument, 45-102 *Resale of Securities*)

**Appendix F**  
**to**  
**National Instrument 45-102**  
***Resale of Securities***

**Underwriters**  
**(Section 2.13)**

Section 2.33 [*Acting as underwriter*] of NI 45-106 and section 2.11 [*Business combination and reorganization*] or subsection 2.42 (1) [*Conversion, exchange or exercise*] of NI 45-106, if the original security was acquired under section 2.33 of NI 45-106 or one of the underwriter exemptions in the transitional provisions listed below

**Transitional Provisions:**

Except in New Brunswick, an exemption from the prospectus requirement listed in Appendix F of MI 45-102 in effect on March 30, 2004. Except in New Brunswick, exemptions listed in Appendix F of MI 45-102 on March 30, 2004 were:

- ◆ Section 74(2)(15) of the *Securities Act* (British Columbia) and section 74(2)(8) or 74(2)(11)(iii) of the *Securities Act* (British Columbia) if the original security was acquired under section 74(2)(15) of the *Securities Act* (British Columbia);
- ◆ Clause 73(1)(r) of the *Securities Act* (Newfoundland and Labrador) and section 73(1)(i) or 73(1)(f)(iii) of the *Securities Act* (Newfoundland and Labrador) if the original security was acquired under section 73(1)(r) of the *Securities Act* (Newfoundland and Labrador);
- ◆ Paragraph 3(v) of Blanket Order No. 1 of the Registrar of Securities (Northwest Territories) and paragraph 3(g) or subparagraph 3(e)(iii) of Blanket Order No. 1 of the Registrar of Securities (Northwest Territories) if the original security was acquired under paragraph 3(v) of Blanket Order No. 1 of the Registrar of Securities (Northwest Territories);
- ◆ Clause 77(1)(r) of the *Securities Act* (Nova Scotia) and clause 77(1)(i) or 77(1)(f)(iii) of the *Securities Act* (Nova Scotia) or Blanket Order No. 38 or 45-503 if the original security was acquired under clause 77(1)(r) of the *Securities Act* (Nova Scotia);
- ◆ Paragraph 3(v) of Blanket Order No. 1 of the Registrar of Securities (Nunavut) and paragraph 3(g) or subparagraph 3(e)(iii) of Blanket Order No. 1 of the Registrar of Securities (Nunavut) if the original security was acquired under paragraph 3(v) of Blanket Order No. 1 of the Registrar of Securities (Nunavut);
- ◆ Clause 72(1)(f)(iii) of the *Securities Act* (Ontario) if the original security was acquired under clause 72(1)(r) of the *Securities Act* (Ontario), in each case prior to section 11 of Schedule 26 the *Budget Measures Act, 2009* being proclaimed in force;
- ◆ Clause 72(1)(i) of the *Securities Act* (Ontario) if the original security was acquired under clause 72(1)(r) of the *Securities Act* (Ontario), in each case prior to section 11 of Schedule 26 of the *Budget Measures Act, 2009* being proclaimed in force;
- ◆ Clause 72(1)(r) of the *Securities Act* (Ontario), in each case prior to section 11 of Schedule 26 of the

*Budget Measures Act, 2009* being proclaimed in force;

- ◆ Section 2.1 of Prince Edward Island Rule 45-509 and subclause 13(1)(e) (iii) or clause 13(1)(f) of the *Securities Act* (Prince Edward Island) or section 1.1 of Prince Edward Island Rule 45-502 if the original security was acquired under section 2.1 of Prince Edward Island Rule 45-509;
- ◆ Section 55 of the *Securities Act* (Québec) as it read prior to its repeal by section 8 of *An Act to amend the Securities Act and other legislative provisions*; and
- ◆ Clause 81(1)(u) of *The Securities Act, 1988* (Saskatchewan) and clause 81(1)(i) or subclause 81(1)(f)(iii) of *The Securities Act, 1988* (Saskatchewan) if the original security was acquired under clause 81(1)(u) of *The Securities Act, 1988* (Saskatchewan).

**New Brunswick Provisions:**

In New Brunswick, an exemption from the prospectus requirement listed in New Brunswick Securities Commission Local Rule 45-501 in effect on September 29, 2004 (2004 NB LR 45-501).

In New Brunswick, the exemptions listed in 2004 NB LR 45-501 were:

- ◆ Subsection 2.33(2); and
- ◆ Subsection 2.43(3) if the original security was acquired under section 2.09.

**Appendix E-2**

**Form 45-102F1**

**Notice of Intention to Distribute Securities under Section 2.8 of  
NI 45-102 *Resale of Securities***

**Reporting issuer**

1. Name of reporting issuer:

**Selling security holder**

2. Your name:

3. The offices or positions you hold in the reporting issuer:

4. Are you selling securities as a lender, pledgee, mortgagee or other encumbrancer?

5. Number and class of securities of the reporting issuer you beneficially own:

**Distribution**

6. Number and class of securities you propose to sell:

7. Will you sell the securities privately or on an exchange or market? If on an exchange or market, provide the name.

**Warning**

**It is an offence to submit information that, in a material respect and in light of the circumstances in which it is submitted, is misleading or untrue.**

**Certificate**

I certify that

- (1) I have no knowledge of a material fact or material change with respect to the issuer of the securities that has not been generally disclosed; and
- (2) the information given in this form is true and complete.

Date .....

.....  
Your name (Selling security holder)

.....  
Your signature (or if a company, the  
signature of your authorized signatory)

.....  
Name of your authorized signatory

**INSTRUCTION:**

File this form electronically through SEDAR with the securities regulatory authority or regulator in each jurisdiction where you sell securities and with the Canadian exchange on which the securities are listed. If the securities are being sold on an exchange, the form should be filed in every jurisdiction across Canada.

**Notice to selling security holders - collection and use of personal information**

The personal information required in this form is collected for and used by the listed securities regulatory authorities or regulators to administer and enforce securities legislation in their jurisdictions. This form is publicly available by authority of National Instrument 45-102 and the securities legislation in each of the jurisdictions. The personal information collected will not be used or disclosed other than for the stated purposes without first obtaining your consent. Corporate filers should seek the consent of any individuals whose personal information appears in this form before filing this form

If you have questions about the collection and use of your personal information, or the personal information of your authorized signatory, contact any of the securities regulatory authorities or regulators listed below.

**British Columbia Securities Commission**

P.O. Box 10142, Pacific Centre  
701 West Georgia Street  
Vancouver, BC V7Y 1L2  
Attention: Assistant Manager, Financial Reporting  
Telephone: (604) 899-6805 or (800) 373-6393 (in B.C.)  
Facsimile: (604) 899-6506

**Alberta Securities Commission**

4th Floor, 300 - 5th Avenue SW  
Calgary, AB T2P 3C4  
Attention: Information Officer  
Telephone: (403) 297-6454  
Facsimile: (403) 297-6156

**Saskatchewan Financial Services Commission  
Securities Division**

601 - 1919 Saskatchewan Drive  
Regina, SK S4P 4H2  
Attention: Deputy Director, Legal/Registration  
Telephone: (306) 787-5879  
Facsimile: (306) 787-5899

**Ontario Securities Commission**

Suite 1903, Box 55  
20 Queen Street West  
Toronto, ON M5H 3S8  
Attention: Administrative Support Clerk  
Telephone: (416) 593-3684  
Toll free in Canada: 1-877-785-1555  
Facsimile: (416) 593-8122

**Autorité des marchés financiers**

Tour de la Bourse  
800 square Victoria  
C.P. 246, 22e étage  
Montréal, Québec H4Z 1G3  
Attention: Responsable de l'accès à l'information  
Telephone: (514) 395-0337  
Toll free: 1-877-525-0337  
Facsimile: (514) 873-6155 (For filing purposes only)  
Facsimile: (514) 864-6381 (For privacy requests only)  
[www.lautorite.qc.ca](http://www.lautorite.qc.ca)

**New Brunswick Securities Commission**

85 Charlotte Street, Suite 300  
Saint John, New Brunswick E2L 2J2  
Telephone: (506) 658-3060  
Toll Free in New Brunswick 1-866-933-2222  
Facsimile: (506) 658-3059

**Nova Scotia Securities Commission**

2nd Floor, Joseph Howe Building  
1690 Hollis Street  
Halifax, NS B3J 3J9  
Attention: Corporate Finance  
Telephone: (902) 424-7768  
Facsimile: (902) 424-4625

**Prince Edward Island Securities Office**

95 Rochford Street, 4<sup>th</sup> Floor Shaw Building  
P.O. Box 2000  
Charlottetown, Prince Edward Island C1A 7N8  
Telephone: (902) 368-4569  
Facsimile: (902) 368-5283

**Government of Newfoundland and Labrador**

Financial Services Regulation Division  
P.O. Box 8700  
Confederation Building  
2nd Floor, West Block  
Prince Philip Drive  
St. John's, NFLD A1B 4J6  
Attention: Director of Securities  
Telephone: (709) 729-4189  
Facsimile: (709) 729-6187

**Government of Yukon**

Department of Community Services  
Law Centre, 3rd Floor  
2130 Second Avenue  
Whitehorse, YT Y1A 5H6  
Telephone: (867) 667-5314  
Facsimile: (867) 393-6251

**Government of Northwest Territories**

Office of the Superintendent of Securities  
Deputy Superintendent, Legal & Enforcement  
PO Box 1320  
Yellowknife, NT X1A 2L9  
Tel: (867) 920-8984  
Fax: (867) 873-0243

**Department of Justice, Nunavut****Legal Registries Division**

P.O. Box 1000, Station 570  
1st Floor, Brown Building  
Iqaluit, NT X0A 0H0  
Attention: Director, Legal Registries Division  
Telephone: (867) 975-6590  
Facsimile: (867) 975-6594

## Appendix E 2

### Companion Policy 45-102CP to National Instrument 45-102 *Resale of Securities*

#### 1.1 Application

- (1) National Instrument 45-102 (NI 45-102) has been implemented in all jurisdictions.
- (2) Except for sections 2.1, 2.8 and 2.9, Part 2 of NI 45-102 does not apply in Manitoba.

#### 1.2 Purpose

- (1) NI 45-102 provides that first trades of securities distributed under certain exemptions from the prospectus requirement are distributions unless certain conditions are met. The conditions impose restrictions on the resale of the securities. If the securities were distributed under any of the provisions listed in Appendix D to NI 45-102 or under other securities legislation which specifies that the first trade is subject to section 2.5 of NI 45-102, the conditions include that the issuer is and has been a reporting issuer for a four month seasoning period and that a four month restricted period has elapsed from the date of the initial distribution. If the securities were distributed under any of the provisions listed in Appendix E to NI 45-102 or under other securities legislation which specifies that the first trade is subject to section 2.6 of NI 45-102, the conditions include that the issuer is and has been a reporting issuer for a four month seasoning period. NI 45-102 also provides an exemption for a control distribution and a sale by a pledgee of pledged securities if the sale would be a distribution for the purposes of securities legislation.
- (2) Appendices D and E to NI 45-102 list the harmonized exemptions in National Instrument 45-106 *Registration and Prospectus Exemptions* (NI 45-106) and local exemptions that are subject to the resale restrictions under section 2.5 or 2.6 of NI 45-102, while Appendix F lists the harmonized exemptions in NI 45-106 applicable to underwriters. Each of these appendices also contains transitional provisions applicable to securities acquired under exemptions listed in the Appendices to MI 45-102 as Appendices D, E and F read on March 30, 2004. For all local exemptions that remain in force, you should look to the local instrument itself to see if it specifies that the securities acquired are subject to section 2.5 or 2.6 of NI 45-102 as well as to Appendix D and E to NI 45-102. You may also wish to consult the CSA Staff Notice 45-304 listing local registration and prospectus exemptions in place in each jurisdiction of Canada, which the CSA will update periodically.
- (3) Nothing in NI 45-102 is intended to restrict the ability of a purchaser to resell securities during the restricted period or seasoning period under a prospectus or an exemption from the prospectus requirement. This includes the further

exemption found in section 2.14. For example, if a person or company obtains a discretionary exemption order or ruling that imposes any of the resale restrictions contained in section 2.5, 2.6 or 2.8 on a security that is the subject of the order or ruling, the person or company may rely on section 2.14 to resell the security.

- 1.3 Jurisdiction** - Sections 2.5 and 2.6 of NI 45-102 do not apply in Manitoba because Manitoba does not impose restrictions on first trades in securities distributed under an exemption from the prospectus requirement in those jurisdictions unless the trade is a control distribution.
- 1.4 Example of Application of Section 2.5** - If an issuer distributes securities to a purchaser in British Columbia, the issuer must file a prospectus or rely upon a prospectus exemption under the securities legislation of British Columbia. If the issuer relies upon a British Columbia prospectus exemption listed in Appendix D to NI 45-102, section 2.3 of NI 45-102 applies and the first trade of the securities is subject to section 2.5 of NI 45-102. Section 2.5 provides that the first trade is a distribution unless, among other conditions, a four month restricted period has elapsed. If the British Columbia purchaser seeks to resell the securities into Ontario, a prospectus must be filed in Ontario or a prospectus exemption relied upon unless the conditions in subsection 2.5(2) of NI 45-102 are satisfied.
- 1.5 Reporting Issuer Status** - Reporting issuer status in any jurisdiction will satisfy the reporting issuer requirements in subsections 2.5(2), 2.6(3) and 2.8(2) of NI 45-102. See section 1.11 for guidance if an issuer becomes a reporting issuer by filing a prospectus after the distribution date.
- 1.6 Legending of Securities** – (1) Items 3 and 3.1 of subsection 2.5(2) of NI 45-102 impose legend or legend notation requirements for securities distributed under any of the provisions listed in Appendix D to NI 45-102 or another prospectus exemption of any jurisdiction subject to the resale restrictions in subsection 2.5(2) of NI 45-102. This requirement applies to securities transferred during the restricted period, whether to initial or subsequent transferees. However, because of the definition of “distribution date”, in the case of most resales, the subsequent purchaser’s restricted period will expire four months and a day after the original distribution date.
- (2) If the security is entered into a direct registration or other electronic book-entry system, or where a certificate representing the security is not issued directly to a purchaser, the issuer must provide written notice of the legend restriction notation to the purchaser. We would consider providing written notice of the legend restriction notation to the purchaser in a subscription agreement or including the legend restriction notation in an ownership statement issued under a direct registration system or other electronic book-entry system delivered directly to the purchaser to be ways of meeting the written notice requirement.
- (3) In addition to the written notice condition contemplated in item 3.1 of subsection 2.5(2), issuers may want to assist purchasers of restricted securities with compliance with the resale restrictions in item 2 of subsection 2.5(2) through other means. For example, issuers can request that the direct registration or electronic book-entry system in which the security is entered apply any available procedures to identify the restricted

nature of the security, such as the assignment of a separate CUSIP or ISIN number to the security for the duration of the restricted period. There may be alternative procedures available depending on the capabilities of the particular direct registration system or other electronic book-entry system.

(4) Issuers may add additional wording to that found in item 3 of subsection 2.5(2) of NI 45-102. If you supplement the specified text of the legend on the certificate or the legend notation on the written notice, that additional wording cannot alter the meaning of the specified wording. You should also look to section 1.10 for further guidance on the legending of convertible and underlying securities.

(5) A reference to a purchaser of a security in items 3 and 3.1 of subsection 2.5(2) of NI 45-102 means a person who makes the investment decision about the acquisition of a security. In most cases, the person making the investment decision will be the beneficial owner of the security. In some cases, however, the person making the investment decision will not be the beneficial owner. In the case of a fully managed account, the manager may be making the investment decision. In the case of a trust, the trustee may be making the investment decision. There may be other examples where the person making the investment decision is not the beneficial owner of the security.

- 1.7 Removal of Legend** - NI 45-102 does not preclude an issuer or its transfer agent from removing a legend once the requirements in subsection 2.5(2)3 have been satisfied. The parties involved in a transfer of securities would not be prevented from transferring those securities even if the legend on the certificate was stale-dated. The transferor should, however, verify exchange rules to determine if removal of the legend is necessary to effect “good delivery”.
- 1.8 Calculation of Restricted and Seasoning Periods** - The restricted period in item 2 of subsection 2.5(2) of NI 45-102 is calculated from the distribution date, that is, the date the securities were distributed in reliance on an exemption from the prospectus requirement by the issuer or a control person. For example, if an issuer or control person distributes securities under a private placement exemption to a purchaser in Saskatchewan and the private placee resells the securities during the restricted period to a purchaser in Alberta under a further private placement exemption, upon resale by the Alberta purchaser, that purchaser will determine whether the restricted period has expired by calculating the time period from the date the issuer or control person distributed the securities to the Saskatchewan purchaser.
- 1.9 No Unusual Effort** - Persons interested in the meaning of the concept of “no unusual effort is made to prepare the market or to create a demand for the security that is the subject of the trade” found in subsections 2.5(2), 2.6(3) and 2.8(2) of NI 45-102 should look to the case law, in particular the order of the Ontario Securities Commission dated April 24, 1985 in the matter of Daon Development Corporation and Daon Corporation as well as to the definition of unusual effort in section 4 of the Alberta Securities Commission Rules.

**1.10 Underlying Securities** - The restricted period or seasoning period applicable to trades in underlying securities is calculated from the distribution date of the convertible security, exchangeable security or multiple convertible security. If the applicable restricted period or seasoning period expired prior to the conversion or exchange, subsection 2.5(3) provides that an issuer is not required to place a legend on the certificate representing the underlying securities or a legend restriction notation in the written notice.

**1.11 Becoming a Reporting Issuer By Filing a Prospectus After the Distribution Date** - If an issuer is not a reporting issuer at the distribution date but subsequently becomes a reporting issuer after the distribution date by filing and obtaining a receipt for a prospectus in one of the jurisdictions listed in Appendix B, section 2.7 of NI 45-102 provides that the four month seasoning requirement in sections 2.5, 2.6 and 2.8 of NI 45-102 does not apply. This means that the securities issued prior to the prospectus being filed may then be resold, provided however that the restricted period under section 2.5 or 2.8 of NI 45-102 has expired.

For example, if, on September 28, 2009, an issuer that is not a reporting issuer in any jurisdiction issues securities which are subject to section 2.5 to purchasers under a private placement and the issuer subsequently receives a receipt for its initial public offering prospectus on October 28, 2009, then those purchasers can resell the securities acquired under the private placement on January 29, 2010, being the date that is four months and a day from the original distribution date, provided that the conditions in subsection 2.5(2) are satisfied.

**1.12 Realization of Pledged Securities** - The prospectus exemption in section 2.8 of NI 45-102 is available for realizations of pledged securities under either a power of sale or by way of foreclosure. This means that a pledgee, mortgagee or other encumbrancer can rely on the exemption in section 2.8 of NI 45-102 to immediately effect a resale of pledged securities under a power of sale or to foreclose and take the securities on its own books for subsequent resale.

**1.13 Securities Exchange Take-over Bid or Issuer Bid** - Section 2.11 of NI 45-102 provides relief from the seasoning requirement for a trade of securities issued in connection with a securities exchange take-over bid or securities exchange issuer bid if a securities exchange take-over bid circular or securities exchange issuer bid circular is filed by the offeror under securities legislation of the local jurisdiction. A bid circular may be filed for either a formal bid or an exempt bid. The basis for this exemption is that a securities exchange take-over bid circular or securities exchange issuer bid circular for a formal bid is required to contain prospectus-level disclosure for the offeror or other issuer whose securities are being offered in exchange for the securities of the offeree issuer. If a take-over bid circular or issuer bid circular is prepared in connection with an exempt bid, the circular must meet the disclosure standards in securities legislation relating to the form and content of a take-over bid circular or issuer bid circular, as the case may be, for a formal bid for the exemption in section 2.11 to be available.

**1.14 Exemptions for Certain Trades in the Local Jurisdiction** - The exemption in section 2.10 of NI 45-102 is subject to a condition that the issuer of the underlying security was

a reporting issuer in the local jurisdiction at the time of the trade. The exemptions in sections 2.11 and 2.12 of NI 45-102 are subject to a condition that the offeror was a reporting issuer in the local jurisdiction on the date securities of the offeree issuer are first taken up under the take-over bid or issuer bid and, in the case of the exemption in section 2.12, an additional condition that issuer of the underlying security was a reporting issuer in the local jurisdiction at the time of the trade. Issuers cannot rely on a prospectus filed in another jurisdiction nor can an offeror rely on a take-over bid circular or issuer bid circular filed in another jurisdiction to satisfy these conditions.

### **1.15 Resales of Securities of a Non-Reporting Issuer**

- (1) For the purposes of section 2.14 of NI 45-102, in determining the percentage of the outstanding securities of the class or series that are directly or indirectly owned by residents of Canada and the number of owners directly or indirectly that are residents of Canada, an issuer should use reasonable efforts to
  - (a) determine securities held of record by a broker, dealer, bank, trust company or nominee for any of them for the accounts of customers resident in Canada;
  - (b) count securities beneficially owned by residents of Canada as reported on reports of beneficial ownership; and
  - (c) assume that a customer is a resident of the jurisdiction or foreign jurisdiction in which the nominee has its principal place of business if, after reasonable inquiry, information regarding the jurisdiction or foreign jurisdiction of residence of the customer is unavailable.
- (2) Lists of beneficial owners of securities maintained by intermediaries under SEC Rule 14a-13 under the *1934 Act* or other securities law analogous to National Instrument 54-101 *Communication with Beneficial Owners of Securities of a Reporting Issuer* may be useful in determining the percentages referred to in subsection (1).
- (3) There is no requirement to place a legend on the securities in order to rely on the exemption in section 2.14 of NI 45-102.

**1.16 Filing of Form 45-102F1** - Section 2.8 of NI 45-102 provides that the prospectus requirement does not apply to a control distribution if the conditions in section 2.8 are met. Selling security holders are required to give advance notice of intention to resell their securities under subsection 2.8(3) of NI 45-102 by filing a completed and signed Form 45-102F1. Under subsection 2.8(4), the advance notice expires on the earlier of the date the selling security holder files the last of the insider reports reflecting the sale of all securities referred to in the Form and 30 days after the Form 45-102F1 is filed. A new Form 45-102F1 must be filed in accordance with subsection 2.8(3) if the selling security holder wishes to continue to resell securities from a control block. Form 45-102F1 should be filed through SEDAR under the issuer's profile under "*Continuous Disclosure – Resale of Securities* (NI 45-102) - Form 45-102F1" in the jurisdiction of the issuer's principal regulator under National Policy 11-202 *Process for Prospectus*

*Reviews in Multiple Jurisdictions.* Consult National Instrument 13-101 *System for Electronic Document Analysis and Retrieval* (SEDAR) and the current CSA SEDAR Filer Manual (including code updates) for further information about filing documents electronically.

- 1.17**     **Application of section 2.10** – Section 2.10 of NI 45-102 applies when securities qualified by a prospectus are convertible into or exchangeable for securities of a reporting issuer other than the issuer of the convertible or exchangeable securities. Those securities would be converted or exchanged in reliance on the prospectus exemption in paragraph 2.42(1)(b) of NI 45-106. As a result, those securities would be subject to a seasoning period requirement because distributions under subsection 2.42(1) of NI 45-106 for a security being distributed in the circumstances referred to in clause (b) of subsection 2.42(1) are listed in Appendix E of NI 45-102. Section 2.10 removes the seasoning period requirement for the underlying securities provided the requirements of that section are met.

Amended and Restated September 28, 2009 except in Ontario.

In Ontario, Amended and Restated on the later of the following:

- (a)     September 28, 2009;
- (b)     the day on which sections 5 and 11, subsection 12(1) and section 13 of Schedule 26 of the *Budget Measures Act, 2009* are proclaimed in force.

[Appendix F-1](#)

**National Instrument 45-102**  
*Resale of Securities*

**Table of Contents**

<u><b>PART</b></u>	<u><b>TITLE</b></u>	
<b>PART 1</b>	<b>DEFINITIONS</b>	
	1.1	Definitions
<b>PART 2</b>	<b>FIRST TRADE</b>	
	2.1	Application
	2.2	Removal of Resale Provisions
	2.3	Section 2.5 Applies
	2.4	Section 2.6 Applies
	2.5	Restricted Period
	2.6	Seasoning Period
	2.7	Exemption for a Trade if the Issuer Becomes a Reporting Issuer <del>After</del> <a href="#">after</a> the Distribution Date
	2.8	Exemption for a Trade by a Control Person
	2.9	Determining Time Periods
	2.10	Exemption for a Trade in an Underlying Security if the Convertible Security, Exchangeable Security or Multiple Convertible Security is Qualified by a Prospectus
Issuer Bid	2.11	Exemption for a Trade in a Security Acquired in a Take-over Bid <span style="float: right;">D</span>
	2.12	Exemption for a Trade in an Underlying Security if the Convertible Security, Exchangeable Security or Multiple Convertible Security is Qualified by a Securities Exchange Take-over Bid Circular or Issuer Bid Circular
	2.13	Trades by Underwriters
	2.14	First Trades in Securities of a Non-Reporting Issuer Distributed under a Prospectus Exemption
<b>PART 3</b>	<b>EXEMPTION</b>	
	3.1	Exemption
<b>PART 4</b>	<b>EFFECTIVE DATE</b>	
	4.1	Effective Date
 <b>APPENDIX A</b>		
<b>APPENDIX B</b>		
<b>APPENDIX C</b>		
<b>APPENDIX D</b>		
<b>APPENDIX E</b>		
<b>APPENDIX F</b>		
<b>FORM 45-102F1</b>		

**National Instrument 45-102**  
***Resale of Securities***

**PART 1        DEFINITIONS**

**1.1        Definitions - In this Instrument**

“control distribution” means a trade described in the provisions of securities legislation listed in Appendix A; (*placement d’un bloc de contrôle*)

“convertible security” means a security of an issuer that is convertible into, or carries the right of the holder to purchase or otherwise acquire, or of the issuer to cause the purchase or acquisition of, a security of the same issuer; (*titre convertible*)

“distribution date” means

- (a) in respect of a trade that is not a control distribution, the date the security that is the subject of the trade was distributed in reliance on an exemption from the prospectus requirement by the issuer or, in the case of a control distribution, by the selling security holder,
- (b) in respect of a trade that is a control distribution, the date the security that is the subject of the trade was acquired by the selling security holder,
- (c) in respect of a trade of an underlying security that is not a control distribution, the date the convertible security, exchangeable security or multiple convertible security that, directly or indirectly, entitled or required the holder to acquire the underlying security was distributed in reliance on an exemption from the prospectus requirement by the issuer or, in the case of a control distribution, by the selling security holder, or
- (d) in respect of a trade of an underlying security that is a control distribution, the date the convertible security, exchangeable security or multiple convertible security that, directly or indirectly, entitled or required the holder to acquire the underlying security was acquired by the selling security holder; (*date du placement*)

“exchangeable security” means a security of an issuer that is exchangeable for, or carries the right of the holder to purchase or otherwise acquire, or of the issuer to cause the purchase or acquisition of, a security of another issuer; (*titre convertible*)

“MI 45-102” means this Instrument prior to its amendment on September 14, 2005; (*NM 45-102*)

“MI 45-103” means Multilateral Instrument 45-103 *Capital Raising Exemptions* prior to its repeal on September 14, 2005; (*NM 45-103*)

“MI 45-105” means Multilateral Instrument 45-105 *Trades to Employees, Senior Officers, Directors, and Consultants* prior to its repeal on September 14, 2005; (*NM 45-105*)

“multiple convertible security” means a security of an issuer that is convertible into, or exchangeable for, or carries the right of the holder to purchase or otherwise acquire, or of the

issuer to cause the purchase or acquisition of, a convertible security, an exchangeable security or another multiple convertible security; (*titre convertible à répétition*)

“NI 45-106” means National Instrument 45-106 *Prospectus and Registration Exemptions*; (*NC 45-106*)

“private company” has the same meaning as in securities legislation; (*société fermée*)

“private issuer” means, as the context requires,

- (a) a private issuer as defined in securities legislation,
- (b) a private issuer as defined in NI 45-106, or
- (c) in Ontario, for purposes of the definition of a private issuer as it existed in 1998 OSC Rule 45-501 (as defined in the Ontario transitional provisions in Appendix D) prior to its repeal on November 30, 2001, a person that
  - (i) is not a reporting issuer or a mutual fund,
  - (ii) is an issuer all of whose issued and outstanding shares
    - (A) are subject to restrictions on transfer contained in the constating documents of the issuer or one or more agreements among the issuer and the holders of its securities; and
    - (B) are beneficially owned, directly or indirectly, by not more than 50 persons or companies, counting any two or more joint registered holders as one beneficial owner, exclusive of persons
      - (I) that are employed by the issuer or an affiliated entity of the issuer, or
      - (II) that beneficially owned, directly or indirectly, shares of the issuer while employed by it or an affiliated entity of it and at all times since ceasing to be so employed have continued to beneficially own, directly or indirectly, at least one share of the issuer, and
  - (iii) has not distributed any securities to the public; (*émetteur fermé*)

“SEDAR” has the same meaning as in National Instrument 13-101 *System for Electronic Document Analysis and Retrieval (SEDAR)*; (SEDAR) and

“trade” in Québec, has the same meaning as in NI 45-106; (*opération visée*)

“underlying security” means a security issued or transferred, or to be issued or transferred, in accordance with the terms of a convertible security, an exchangeable security or a multiple convertible security; (*titre sous-jacent*)

## PART 2 FIRST TRADES

- 2.1 Application** - In Manitoba ~~and Yukon~~, sections 2.2 to 2.7 and 2.10 to 2.14 do not apply.
- 2.2 Removal of Resale Provisions** - In Newfoundland and Labrador, ~~Nova Scotia~~ and Ontario, the provisions in securities legislation listed in Appendix C, respectively, do not apply.
- 2.3 Section 2.5 Applies** - If a security was distributed under any of the provisions listed in Appendix D, the first trade of that security is subject to section 2.5.
- 2.4 Section 2.6 Applies** - If a security was distributed under any of the provisions listed in Appendix E, the first trade of that security is subject to section 2.6.

### 2.5 Restricted Period

- (1) Unless the conditions in subsection (2) are satisfied, a trade that is specified by section 2.3 or other securities legislation to be subject to this section is a distribution.
- (2) Subject to subsection (3), for the purposes of subsection (1) the conditions are:
1. The issuer is and has been a reporting issuer in a jurisdiction of Canada for the four months immediately preceding the trade.
  2. At least four months have elapsed from the distribution date.
  3. If the distribution date is on or after March 30, 2004, or, in Québec, on or after September 14, 2005, and either of the following apply:
    - (i) if the issuer ~~is~~was a reporting issuer on the distribution date, the certificate representing the security, if any, carries a legend stating:

Unless permitted under securities legislation, the holder of this security must not trade the security before *[insert the date that is 4 months and a day after the distribution date]*<sup>5</sup>.

or

(ii) if the issuer was not a reporting issuer on the distribution date, the certificate representing the security, if any, carries a legend stating:

~~(ii) if the issuer is not a reporting issuer on the distribution date, the certificate representing the security, if any, carries a legend stating:~~

~~—Unless permitted under securities legislation, the holder of this security must not trade the security before the date that is 4 months and a day after the later of (i) *[insert the distribution date]*, and (ii) the date the issuer became a reporting issuer in any province or territory.~~

- 3.1. If the security is entered into a direct registration or other electronic book-entry system, or if the ~~beneficial security holder~~purchaser did not ~~otherwise~~ directly receive a certificate representing the security, the purchaser received written notice containing the legend restriction notation set out in ~~paragraphs~~subparagraphs (i) or (ii) of item ~~3, as applicable, was delivered to the beneficial security holder.~~3.
  4. The trade is not a control distribution.
  5. No unusual effort is made to prepare the market or to create a demand for the security that is the subject of the trade.
  6. No extraordinary commission or consideration is paid to a person or company in respect of the trade.
  7. If the selling security holder is an insider or officer of the issuer, the selling security holder has no reasonable grounds to believe that the issuer is in default of securities legislation.
- (3) Items 3 and 3.1 of subsection (2) do not apply to a trade of an underlying security if the ~~certificate representing the~~ underlying security is issued ~~or the written notice is delivered~~ at least four months after the later of

(a) the distribution date, and

(b) the date the issuer became a reporting issuer in any jurisdiction of Canada.

## **2.6 Seasoning Period**

- (1) Unless the conditions in subsection (3) are satisfied, a trade that is specified by section 2.4 or other securities legislation to be subject to this section is a distribution.
- (2) The first trade of securities issued by a private company or private issuer made after the issuer has ceased to be a private company or private issuer is a distribution unless the conditions in subsection (3) are satisfied.
- (3) For the purposes of subsections (1) and (2), the conditions are:
  1. The issuer is and has been a reporting issuer in a jurisdiction of Canada for the four months immediately preceding the trade.
  2. The trade is not a control distribution.
  3. No unusual effort is made to prepare the market or to create a demand for the security that is the subject of the trade.
  4. No extraordinary commission or consideration is paid to a person or company in respect of the trade.

5. If the selling security holder is an insider or officer of the issuer, the selling security holder has no reasonable grounds to believe that the issuer is in default of securities legislation.

## **2.7 Exemption for a Trade if the Issuer Becomes a Reporting Issuer After the Distribution Date**

– Item 1 of subsection 2.5 (2), 2.6 (3) or 2.8 (2) does not apply if the issuer became a reporting issuer after the distribution date by filing a prospectus in a jurisdiction listed in Appendix B and is a reporting issuer in a jurisdiction of Canada at the time of the trade.

## **2.8 Exemption for a Trade by a Control Person**

- (1) The prospectus requirement does not apply to a control distribution, or a distribution by a lender, pledgee, mortgagee or other encumbrancer for the purpose of liquidating a debt made in good faith by selling or offering for sale a security pledged, mortgaged or otherwise encumbered in good faith as collateral for the debt if the security was acquired by the lender, pledgee, mortgagee or other encumbrancer in a control distribution, if the conditions in subsection (2) are satisfied.
- (2) For the purposes of subsection (1), the conditions are:
  1. The issuer is and has been a reporting issuer in a jurisdiction of Canada for the four months immediately preceding the trade.
  2. The selling security holder, or the lender, pledgee, mortgagee or other encumbrancer if the distribution is for the purpose of liquidating a debt, has held the securities for at least four months.
  3. No unusual effort is made to prepare the market or to create a demand for the security that is the subject of the trade.
  4. No extraordinary commission or consideration is paid to a person or company in respect of the trade.
  5. The selling security holder has no reasonable grounds to believe that the issuer is in default of securities legislation.
- (3) The selling security holder, or the lender, pledgee, mortgagee or other encumbrancer if the distribution is for the purpose of liquidating a debt, under subsection (2) must
  - (a) complete and sign a Form 45-102F1 no earlier than one business day before the Form 45-102F1 is filed;
  - (b) file the completed and signed Form 45-102F1 on SEDAR at least seven days before the first trade of the securities that is part of the distribution; and
  - (c) file, within three days after the completion of any trade, an insider report prepared in accordance with either Form 55-102F2 or Form 55-102F6 under National Instrument 55-102 *System for Electronic Disclosure by Insiders (SEDI)*.

- (4) A Form 45-102F1 filed under subsection (3) expires on the earlier of
  - (a) thirty days after the date the Form 45-102F1 was filed, and
  - (b) the date the selling security holder, or the lender, pledgee, mortgagee or other encumbrancer, files the last of the insider reports reflecting the sale of all securities referred to in the Form 45-102F1.
- (5) A selling security holder, or the lender, pledgee, mortgagee or other encumbrancer must not file a new Form 45-102F1 in respect of a class of securities of a reporting issuer until the Form 45-102F1 in respect of that class of securities previously filed by that person or company has expired.

## **2.9 Determining Time Periods**

- (1) In determining the period of time that an issuer was a reporting issuer in a jurisdiction of Canada for the purposes of section 2.5, 2.6 or 2.8, if the issuer was a party to an amalgamation, merger, reorganization or arrangement, the selling security holder may include the period of time that one of the parties to the amalgamation, merger, reorganization or arrangement was a reporting issuer in a jurisdiction of Canada immediately before the amalgamation, merger, reorganization or arrangement.
- (2) In determining the period of time that a selling security holder has held a security for the purposes of section 2.5 or 2.8, if the selling security holder acquired the security from an affiliate of the selling security holder, the selling security holder may include the period of time that the affiliate held the security.
- (3) In determining the period of time that a selling security holder has held an underlying security for the purposes of section 2.8, the selling security holder may include the period of time the selling security holder held the convertible security, exchangeable security or multiple convertible security.
- (4) In determining the period of time that a lender, pledgee, mortgagee or other encumbrancer has held a security under item 2 of subsection 2.8(2), the selling security holder may include the period of time the debtor held the security.
- (5) In determining the period of time that a lender, pledgee, mortgagee or other encumbrancer has held an underlying security under item 2 of subsection 2.8(2), the selling security holder may include the period of time the debtor held the convertible security, exchangeable security or multiple convertible security.

## **2.10 Exemption for a Trade in an Underlying Security if the Convertible Security, Exchangeable Security or Multiple Convertible Security is Qualified by a Prospectus - Section 2.6 does not apply to a trade in an underlying security issued or transferred under the terms of a convertible security, exchangeable security or multiple convertible security if**

- (a) a receipt was obtained for a prospectus qualifying the distribution of the convertible security, exchangeable security or multiple convertible security;
- (b) the trade is not a control distribution; and

- (c) the issuer of the underlying security is a reporting issuer at the time of the trade.

**2.11 Exemption for a Trade in a Security Acquired in a Take-over Bid or Issuer Bid - Section 2.6 does not apply to a trade of a security of an offeror if**

- (a) a securities exchange take-over bid circular or securities exchange issuer bid circular relating to the distribution of the security was filed by the offeror on SEDAR;
- (b) the trade is not a control distribution; and
- (c) the offeror was a reporting issuer on the date the securities of the offeree issuer were first taken up under the take-over bid or issuer bid.

**2.12 Exemption for a Trade in an Underlying Security if the Convertible Security, Exchangeable Security or Multiple Convertible Security is Qualified by a Securities Exchange Take-over Bid Circular or Issuer Bid Circular - Section 2.6 does not apply to a trade in an underlying security issued or transferred under the terms of a convertible security, exchangeable security or multiple convertible security if**

- (a) a securities exchange take-over bid circular or a securities exchange issuer bid circular relating to the distribution of the convertible security, exchangeable security or multiple convertible security was filed by the offeror on SEDAR;
- (b) the trade is not a control distribution;
- (c) the offeror was a reporting issuer on the date the securities of the offeree issuer were first taken up under the take-over bid or issuer bid; and
- (d) the issuer of the underlying security is a reporting issuer at the time of the trade.

**2.13 Trades by Underwriters - A trade by an underwriter of securities distributed under any of the provisions listed in Appendix F is a distribution.**

**2.14 First Trades in Securities of a Non-Reporting Issuer Distributed under a Prospectus Exemption**

- (1) The prospectus requirement does not apply to the first trade of a security distributed under an exemption from the prospectus requirement if
  - (a) the issuer of the security
    - (i) was not a reporting issuer in any jurisdiction of Canada at the distribution date, or
    - (ii) is not a reporting issuer in any jurisdiction of Canada at the date of the trade;

- (b) at the distribution date, after giving effect to the issue of the security and any other securities of the same class or series that were issued at the same time as or as part of the same distribution as the security, residents of Canada
  - (i) did not own directly or indirectly more than 10 percent of the outstanding securities of the class or series, and
  - (ii) did not represent in number more than 10 percent of the total number of owners directly or indirectly of securities of the class or series; and
- (c) the trade is made
  - (i) through an exchange, or a market, outside of Canada, or
  - (iii) to a person or company outside of Canada.
- (2) The prospectus requirement does not apply to the first trade of an underlying security if
  - (a) the convertible security, exchangeable security or multiple convertible security that, directly or indirectly, entitled or required the holder to acquire the underlying security was distributed under an exemption from the prospectus requirement;
  - (b) the issuer of the underlying security
    - (i) was not a reporting issuer in any jurisdiction of Canada at the distribution date of the convertible security, exchangeable security or multiple convertible security, or
    - (ii) is not a reporting issuer in any jurisdiction of Canada at the date of the trade;
  - (c) the conditions in paragraph (1)(b) would have been satisfied for the underlying security at the time of the initial distribution of the convertible security, exchangeable security or multiple convertible security; and
  - (d) the condition in paragraph (1)(c) is satisfied.

## **PART 3 EXEMPTION**

### **3.1 Exemption**

- (1) The regulator or the securities regulatory authority may grant an exemption from this Instrument, in whole or in part, subject to such conditions or restrictions as may be imposed in the exemption.
- (2) Despite subsection (1), in Ontario, only the regulator may grant such an exemption.

**PART 4      EFFECTIVE DATE**

4.1    ~~4.1~~ — **Effective Date** - This Instrument comes into force on March 30, 2004.

**Appendix A**  
**to**  
**National Instrument 45-102**  
***Resale of Securities***

**Control Distributions**

<b>JURISDICTION</b>	<b>SECURITIES LEGISLATION REFERENCE</b>
Alberta	Definition of “control person” in section 1(l) and subclause (iii) of the definition of “distribution” contained in section 1(p) of the <i>Securities Act</i> (Alberta)
British Columbia	Paragraph (c) of the definition of “distribution” contained in section 1(1) of the <i>Securities Act</i> (British Columbia)
Manitoba	Paragraph (b) of the definition of “primary distribution to the public” contained in subsection 1(1) of the <i>Securities Act</i> (Manitoba)
Newfoundland and Labrador	Clause 2(1)(l)(iii) of the <i>Securities Act</i> (Newfoundland and Labrador)
New Brunswick	Definition of “control person” and clause (c) of the definition of “distribution” contained in subsection 1 (1) of the <i>Securities Act</i> (New Brunswick)
Northwest <a href="#">Territories</a>	Definition of “control person” <a href="#">in subsection 1(1)</a> and paragraph <del>(iii)</del> of the <del>Territories</del> definition of “distribution” contained in subsection 1(1) of <del>Blanket Order No. 1 of the Registrar of the</del> <a href="#">Securities Act</a> <a href="#">(Northwest Territories)</a>
Nova Scotia	Clause 2(1)(l)(iii) of the <i>Securities Act</i> (Nova Scotia)
Nunavut	Definition of “control person” and paragraph (iii) of the definition of “distribution” contained in subsection 1(1) of Blanket Order No. 1 of the Registrar of Securities.
Ontario	Paragraph (c) of the definition of “distribution” contained in subsection 1(1) of the <i>Securities Act</i> (Ontario)
Prince Edward Island	Clause (iii) of the definition of “distribution” in section 1 of the <i>Securities Act</i> (Prince Edward Island)
Québec	Paragraph 9 of the definition of “distribution” contained in section 5 of the <i>Securities Act</i> (Québec)
Saskatchewan	Subclauses 2(1)(r)(iii), (iv) and (v) of <i>The Securities Act, 1988</i> (Saskatchewan)

Yukon

Definition of “control person” in subsection 1(1) and paragraph (c) of the definition of “distribution” contained in subsection 1(1) of the *Securities Act* (Yukon)

**Appendix B**  
**to**  
**National Instrument 45-102**  
*Resale of Securities*

**Reporting Issuer Jurisdictions**

Alberta

British Columbia

Manitoba

New Brunswick

Nova Scotia

Ontario

Québec

Saskatchewan

**Appendix C**  
**to**  
**National Instrument 45-102**  
***Resale of Securities***

**Non-Applicable Resale Provisions**  
**(Section 2.2)**

**JURISDICTION**

**SECURITIES LEGISLATION REFERENCE**

Newfoundland and Labrador

Clause 54(5)(a), subsections 54(7), 54(9), 54(10), 73(4), 73(5), 73(6) as it relates to clause 72(1)(r), 73(7) but not as it relates to subsection 54(6) and 54(7), 73(12), 73(18), 73(19) and 73(24) of the Securities Act (Newfoundland and Labrador)

~~Nova Scotia~~

~~Subsections 77(5), 77(6), 77(7), 77(7A), 77(7B), 77(8), 77(9), 77(10)(a) and 77(11) of the *Securities Act* (Nova Scotia)~~

Ontario

Subsections 72(4), 72(5), 72(6) as it relates to clause 72(1)(r), and 72(7) of the *Securities Act* (Ontario), [in each case prior to section 11 of Schedule 26 of the \*Budget Measures Act, 2009\* being proclaimed in force.](#)

**Appendix D**  
**to**  
**National Instrument 45-102**  
***Resale of Securities***

**Restricted Period Trades**  
**(Section 2.3)**

Except in Manitoba ~~and the Yukon~~, the following exemptions from the prospectus requirement in NI 45-106:

- section 2.3 [Accredited investor] ;
- section 2.5 [Family, friends and business associates] (except in Ontario);
- section 2.7 [Founder, control person and family] (Ontario);
- section 2.8 [Affiliates];
- section 2.9 [Offering memorandum] (in Alberta, British Columbia, Manitoba, New Brunswick, Newfoundland and Labrador, Northwest Territories, Nova Scotia, Nunavut, Prince Edward Island, Québec ~~and~~, Saskatchewan ~~and Yukon~~);
- section 2.10 [Minimum amount investment];
- section 2.12 [Asset acquisition];
- section 2.13 [Petroleum, natural gas and mining properties];
- section 2.14 [Securities for debt];
- section 2.19 [Additional investment in investment funds];
- section 2.30 [Isolated distribution by issuer] ;
- section 2.31 [Dividends and distributions], if the security was acquired in the circumstances referred to in subsection 2.31(2) and that security was initially acquired by the issuer under
  - (a) one of the exemptions listed in this Appendix,
  - (b) an exemption from the prospectus requirement that specifies that the first trade is subject to section 2.5 of this Instrument, or
  - (c) an exemption from the prospectus requirement that specified prior to September 14, 2005 that the first trade was subject to section 2.5 of MI 45-102;
- section 2.40 [RRSP/RRIF/TFSA], if the security acquired under section 2.40 was initially acquired by an individual or an associate of the individual or ~~an~~ RRSP ~~or~~, RRIF, ~~or~~ TFSA established for or by that individual or under which that individual is a beneficiary under
  - (a) one of the exemptions listed in this Appendix,
  - (b) an exemption from the prospectus requirement that specifies that the first trade is subject to section 2.5 of this Instrument, or
  - (c) an exemption from the prospectus requirement that specified prior to September 14, 2005 that the first trade was subject to section 2.5 of MI 45-102;
- section 2.42 [Conversion, exchange or exercise], if the security acquired in the circumstances referred to in ~~clause (a) of subsection~~ paragraph 2.42(1)(a) was acquired in accordance with the terms and conditions of a previously issued security and that previously issued security was distributed under
  - (a) one of the exemptions listed in this Appendix,
  - (b) an exemption from the prospectus requirement that specifies that the first trade is subject to section 2.5 of this Instrument, or
  - (c) an exemption from the prospectus requirement that specified prior to September 14, 2005 that the first trade was subject to section 2.5 of MI 45-102;

- section 5.2 [*TSX Venture exchange offering*], if the security acquired under section 5.2 was acquired by
  - (a) a purchaser that, at the time the security was acquired, was an insider or promoter of the issuer of the security, the issuer's underwriter, or a member of the underwriter's "professional group" (as defined in National Instrument 33-105 *Underwriting Conflicts*), or
  - (b) any other purchaser in excess of \$40,000 for the portion of the securities in excess of 40,000;

as well as the following local exemptions from the prospectus requirement:

- section 3.1 of Alberta Securities Commission Rule 72-501 *Distributions to Purchasers Outside Alberta*;
- clauses 77(1)(u) and (w) and subclauses 77(1)(ab)(ii) and (iii) of the *Securities Act* (Nova Scotia);
- an exemption from the prospectus requirement in a jurisdiction of Canada that specifies that the first trade is subject to section 2.5 of NI 45-102.

#### **Transitional and Other Provisions**

**1. General** - An exemption from the prospectus requirement listed in Appendix D of MI 45-102 in effect on March 30, 2004 or an exemption from the prospectus requirement that specified prior to September 14, 2005 that the first trade was subject to section 2.5 of MI 45-102. The exemptions listed in Appendix D on March 30, 2004 were:

- ◆ Sections 131(1)(b), (c), (l), and (m) of the *Securities Act* (Alberta);
- ◆ Section 122(d) and 122.2 of the Alberta Securities Commission Rules, section 3.1 of Alberta Securities Commission Rule 72-501 *Distributions to Purchasers Outside Alberta*, subsections 3.1(2), 4.1(2), 4.1(4), and 5.1(2) of MI 45-103 or an exemption from the prospectus requirement that specifies that the first trade is subject to section 2.5 of MI 45-102;
- ◆ Section 131(1)(f)(iii) of the *Securities Act* (Alberta), if the right to purchase, convert or exchange was previously acquired under one of the above-listed exemptions under the *Securities Act* (Alberta), the Alberta Securities Commission Rules or MI 45-103, or under an exemption from the prospectus requirement that specifies that the first trade is subject to section 2.5 of MI 45-102;
- ◆ Sections 74(2)(1) to (6), (16), (18), (19), (23) and (25) of the *Securities Act* (British Columbia);
- ◆ Sections 128(a), (b), (c), (e), (f) and (h) of the *Securities Rules* (British Columbia) and subsections 3.1(2), 4.1(2), 4.1(4), and 5.1(2) of MI 45-103 or an exemption from the prospectus requirement that specifies that the first trade is subject to section 2.5 of MI 45-102;
- ◆ Sections 74(2)(11)(ii), 74(2)(11)(iii) and 74(2)(13) of the *Securities Act* (British Columbia) if the security acquired by the selling security holder or the right to purchase, convert or exchange or otherwise acquire, was initially acquired by a person or company under any of the

sections of the *Securities Act* (British Columbia), the *Securities Rules* (British Columbia) or MI 45-103 referred to in this Appendix, or under an exemption from the prospectus requirement that specifies that the first trade is subject to section 2.5 of MI 45-102;

- ◆ Section 74(2)(12) of the *Securities Act* (British Columbia) if the security acquired by the selling security holder under the realization on collateral was initially acquired by a person or company under any of the sections of the *Securities Act* (British Columbia), the *Securities Rules* (British Columbia) or MI 45-103 referred to in this Appendix, or under an exemption from the prospectus requirement that specifies that the first trade is subject to section 2.5 of MI 45-102;
- ◆ Clauses 54(3)(f) and (g) and 73(1)(a), (b), (c), (d), (h), (l), (m), (p) and (q) of the *Securities Act* (Newfoundland and Labrador), subsections 3.1(2), 4.1(2), 4.1(4), and 5.1(2) of MI 45-103, or an exemption from the prospectus requirement that specifies that the first trade is subject to section 2.5 of MI 45-102;
- ◆ Subclause 73(1)(f)(iii) of the *Securities Act* (Newfoundland and Labrador) if the right to purchase, convert or exchange was previously acquired under one of the above listed exemptions under the *Securities Act* (Newfoundland and Labrador) or MI 45-103, or under an exemption from the prospectus requirement that specifies that the first trade is subject to section 2.5 of MI 45-102;
- ◆ Paragraphs 3(a), (b), (c), (k), (l), (m), (r), (s), (t), (u), (w) and (z) of Blanket Order No. 1 of the Registrar of Securities (Northwest Territories), subsections 3.1(2), 4.1(2), 4.1(4), 5.1(2) of MI 45-103 or an exemption from the prospectus requirement that specifies that the first trade is subject to section 2.5 of MI 45-102;
- ◆ Subparagraph 3(e)(iii) of Blanket Order No. 1 of the Registrar of Securities (Northwest Territories) if the right to purchase, convert or exchange was previously acquired under one of the above-listed exemptions under Blanket Order No. 1 of the Registrar of Securities (Northwest Territories) or MI 45-103, or under an exemption from the prospectus requirement that specifies that the first trade is subject to section 2.5 of MI 45-102;
- ◆ Clauses 77(1)(a), (b), (c), (d), (l), (m), (p), (q), (u), (w), (y), (ab) and (ad) of the *Securities Act* (Nova Scotia), subsections 3.1(2), 4.1(2), 4.1(4), and 5.1(2) of MI 45-103 or an exemption from the prospectus requirement that specifies that the first trade is subject to section 2.5 of MI 45-102;
- ◆ Subclause 77(1)(f)(iii) of the *Securities Act* (Nova Scotia) if the right to purchase, convert or exchange was previously acquired under one of the above listed exemptions under the *Securities Act* (Nova Scotia) or MI 45-103, or under an exemption from the prospectus requirement that specifies that the first trade is subject to section 2.5 of MI 45-102;
- ◆ Paragraphs 3(a), (b), (c), (k), (l), (m), (r), (s), (t), (u), (w) and (z) of Blanket Order No.1 of the Registrar of Securities (Nunavut), subsections 3.1(2), 4.1(2), 4.1(4), and 5.1(2) of MI 45-103 or an exemption from the prospectus requirement that specifies that the first trade is subject to section 2.5 of MI 45-102;
- ◆ Subparagraph 3(e)(iii) of Blanket Order No.1 of the Registrar of Securities (Nunavut) if the right to purchase, convert or exchange was previously acquired under one of

the above-listed exemptions under Blanket Order No. 1 of the Registrar of Securities (Nunavut) or MI 45-103, or under an exemption from the prospectus requirement that specifies that the first trade is subject to section 2.5 of MI 45-102;

- ◆ Clauses 13(1)(a), (b), (c), (g) and (i) of the *Securities Act* (Prince Edward Island), subsections 3.1(2), 4.1(2), 4.1(4), and 5.1(2) of MI 45-103 or under an exemption from the prospectus requirement that specifies that the first trade is subject to section 2.5 of MI 45-102;
- ◆ Subclause 13(1)(e)(iii) of the *Securities Act* (Prince Edward Island) if the right to purchase, convert or exchange was previously acquired under one of the above-listed exemptions under the *Securities Act* (Prince Edward Island) or under an exemption from the prospectus requirement that specifies that the first trade is subject to section 2.5 of MI 45-102;
- ◆ Subclauses 81(1)(f)(iii) and (iv) of *The Securities Act, 1988* (Saskatchewan) if the convertible security, exchangeable security or multiple convertible security was acquired under one of the exemptions of *The Securities Act, 1988* (Saskatchewan) or MI 45-103 referred to in this Appendix or under an exemption from the prospectus requirement that specifies that the first trade is subject to section 2.5 of MI 45-102;
- ◆ Clause 81(1)(e) of *The Securities Act, 1988* (Saskatchewan) if the person or company from whom the securities were acquired obtained the securities under one of the exemptions of *The Securities Act, 1988* (Saskatchewan) referred to in this Appendix;

## 2. Québec Provisions

- ◆ Sections 43, 47, 48 and 51 of the *Securities Act* (Québec) as they read prior to their amendment or repeal by sections 7 and 8 of *An Act to amend the Securities Act and other legislative provisions*;
- ◆ Prospectus and registration exemptions granted pursuant to section 263 of the *Securities Act* (Québec) before March 30, 2004 if the exemption included as a condition a restricted period of 12 months.

## 3. Ontario Provisions

### Definitions

In this Appendix

“**1998 OSC Rule 45-501**” means the Ontario Securities Commission Rule 45-501 *Exempt Distributions* that came into force on December 22, 1998;

“**2001 OSC Rule 45-501**” means the Ontario Securities Commission Rule 45-501 *Exempt Distributions* that came into force on November 30, 2001;

“**2004 OSC Rule 45-501**” means the Ontario Securities Commission Rule 45-501 *Exempt Distributions* that came into force on January 12, 2004;

“**2005 OSC Rule 45-501**” means the Ontario Securities Commission Rule 45-501 *Ontario Prospectus and Registration Exemptions* that came into force on September 14, 2005;

**[2008]2009 OSC Rule 45-501**” means the Ontario Securities Commission Rule 45-501 *Ontario Prospectus and Registration Exemptions* that came into force on ~~the later of (a) September 28, 2009 and (b) the day on which sections 5 and 11, subsection 12(1) and section 13 of Schedule 26 of the *Budget Measures Act, 2009* were proclaimed in force;~~

“**convertible security**” means, in Ontario, a security of an issuer that is convertible into, or carries the right of the holder to purchase, or of the issuer to cause the purchase of, a security of the same issuer;

“**exchangeable security**” means, in Ontario, a security of an issuer that is exchangeable for, or carries the right of the holder to purchase, or the right of the issuer to cause the purchase of, a security of another issuer;

“**exchange issuer**” means, in Ontario, an issuer that distributes securities of a reporting issuer held by it in accordance with the terms of an exchangeable security of its own issue;

“**multiple convertible security**” means, in Ontario, a security of an issuer that is convertible into or exchangeable for, or carries the right of the holder to purchase, or of the issuer or exchange issuer to cause the purchase of, a convertible security, an exchangeable security or another multiple convertible security;

“**OSC Rule 45-502**” means Ontario Securities Commission Rule 45-502 *Dividend or Interest Reinvestment and Stock Dividend Plans*;

“**Type 1 trade**” means, in Ontario, a distribution in a security under an exemption from the prospectus requirement in:

(a) clause 72(1)(a), (b), (c), (d), (l), (m), (p) or (q) of the *Securities Act* (Ontario), in each case prior to section 11 of Schedule 26 of the *Budget Measures Act, 2009* being proclaimed in force;

(b) section 2.4, 2.5 or 2.11 of the 1998 OSC Rule 45-501;

(c) section 2.3, 2.12, 2.13 or 2.14 of the 2001 OSC Rule 45-501; or

(d) section 2.3, 2.12, 2.13, 2.14 or 2.16 of the 2004 OSC Rule 45-501; and

“**underlying security**” means, in Ontario, a security issued or transferred, or to be issued or transferred, in accordance with the terms of a convertible security, an exchangeable security or a multiple convertible security.

**(a) *Securities Act* (Ontario)**

Clauses 72(1)(a), (b), (c), (d), (l), (m), (p) and (q) of the *Securities Act* (Ontario) and subclause 72(1)(f)(iii) of the *Securities Act* (Ontario) if the right to purchase, convert or exchange was previously acquired under one of the above-listed exemptions under the *Securities Act* (Ontario), in each case prior to section 11 of Schedule 26 of the *Budget Measures Act, 2009* being proclaimed in force, or an exemption from the prospectus requirement that specifies that the first trade is subject to section 2.5 of MI 45-102

**(b) 2005 OSC Rule 45-501 and [2008]2009 OSC Rule 45-501**

Section 2.1 of the 2005 OSC Rule 45-501 and ~~[2008]2009~~ OSC Rule 45-501;

Section 2.2 of the 2005 OSC Rule 45-501 and ~~[2008]2009~~ OSC Rule 45-501.

**(c) 2001 OSC Rule 45-501 and 2004 OSC Rule 45-501**

Section 2.3 of the 2001 OSC Rule 45-501 and the 2004 OSC Rule 45-501;

Section 2.11 of the 2001 OSC Rule 45-501 and the 2004 OSC Rule 45-501 if section 2.5 of MI 45-102 would have been applicable to a first trade in that security by the person making the exempt distribution under section 2.11 of the 2001 OSC Rule 45-501 or the 2004 OSC Rule 45-501;

Section 2.12 of the 2001 OSC Rule 45-501 and the 2004 OSC Rule 45-501;

Section 2.13 of the 2001 OSC Rule 45-501 and the 2004 OSC Rule 45-501;

Section 2.14 of the 2001 OSC Rule 45-501 and the 2004 OSC Rule 45-501;

Section 2.16 of the 2004 OSC Rule 45-501.

**(d) 1998 OSC Rule 45-501**

Section 2.4 of the 1998 OSC Rule 45-501

Section 2.5 of the 1998 OSC Rule 45-501

Section 2.11 of the 1998 OSC Rule 45-501

**(e) Other**

Any provision under which an underlying security was distributed on conversion or exchange of a multiple convertible security, convertible security or exchangeable security acquired in a Type 1 trade or in a trade under section 2.4, 2.5 or 2.11 of the 1998 OSC Rule 45-501.

**4. New Brunswick Provisions**

In this Appendix

“2004 NB LR 45-501” means the New Brunswick Securities Commission Local Rule 45-501 that came into force on September 29, 2004;

- A. Subsections 2.3(3), 2.5(2), 2.6(7), 2.7(2), 2.8(2), 2.10(2), 2.11(2), 2.12(2) and 2.17(2) of 2004 NB LR 45-501
- B. Subsection 2.41(2) of 2004 NB LR 45-501 (if the security acquired under section 2.4 was initially acquired by an individual or an associate of the individual or an RRSP or RRIF established for or by that individual or under which that individual is a beneficiary under
  - (a) one of the exemptions in NB LR 45-501 listed in paragraph A, or
  - (b) an exemption from the prospectus requirement that specifies that the first trade is subject to section 2.5 of Multilateral Instrument 45-102 *Resale of Securities*)
- C. Subsection 2.43(3) (if the security acquired under paragraph 2.43(1)(a) was acquired in accordance with the terms and conditions of a previously issued security under
  - (a) one of the exemptions in 2005 NB LR 45-501 listed in paragraph A, or
  - (b) an exemption from the prospectus requirement that specifies that the first trade is subject to section 2.5 of Multilateral Instrument, 45-102 *Resale of Securities*)
- D. Section 5.2 of 2004 NB LR 45-501



**Appendix E**  
**to**  
**National Instrument 45-102**  
***Resale of Securities***

**Seasoning Period Trades**  
**(Section 2.4)**

Except in Manitoba ~~and the Yukon~~, the following exemptions from the prospectus requirement in NI 45-106:

- section 2.1 [Rights offering];
- section 2.2 [Reinvestment plan];
- section 2.4 [Private issuer];
- section 2.11 [Business combination and reorganization];
- section 2.16 [Take-over bid and issuer bid];
- section 2.17 [Offer to acquire to security holder outside local jurisdiction];
- section 2.18 [Investment fund reinvestment];
- section 2.20 [Private investment club];
- section 2.21 [Private investment fund - loan and trust pools];
- section 2.24 [Employee, executive officer, director and consultant];
- section 2.26 [Distributions among current or former employees, executive officers, directors or consultants of non-reporting issuer];
- section 2.27 [Permitted transferees];
- section 2.31 [Dividends and distributions], if the security was acquired in the circumstances referred to in subsection 2.31(2), that security was initially acquired by the issuer under
  - (a) one of the exemptions listed in this Appendix,
  - (b) an exemption from the prospectus requirement that specifies that the first trade is subject to section 2.6 of this Instrument, or
  - (c) an exemption from the prospectus requirement that specified prior to September 14, 2005 that the first trade was subject to section 2.6 of MI 45-102;
- section 2.40 [RRSP/RRIF/TFSA], if the security acquired under section 2.40 was initially acquired by an individual or an associate of the individual or ~~an~~ RRSP ~~or~~ RRIF or TFSA established for or by that individual or under which that individual is a beneficiary under
  - (a) one of the exemptions listed in this Appendix,
  - (b) an exemption from the prospectus requirement that specifies that the first trade is subject to section 2.6 of this Instrument, or
  - (c) an exemption from the prospectus requirement that specified prior to September 14, 2005 that the first trade was subject to section 2.6 of MI 45-102;
- section 2.42 [Conversion, exchange or exercise - security of own issue], if the security acquired in the circumstances referred to in ~~clause (a) of subsection~~ paragraph 2.42 (1)(a) was acquired in accordance with the terms and conditions of a previously issued security and that previously issued security was distributed under
  - (a) one of the exemptions listed in this Appendix,
  - (b) an exemption from the prospectus requirement that specifies that the first trade is subject to section 2.6 of this Instrument, or

- (c) an exemption from the prospectus requirement that specified prior to September 14, 2005 that the first trade was subject to section 2.6 of MI 45-102;
- section 2.42 [*Conversion, exchange or exercise - security of a reporting issuer*] for a security being traded in the circumstances referred to in clause (b) of subsection 2.42 (1);

as well as the following local exemptions from the prospectus requirement:

- Alberta Securities Commission Rule 45-502 *Trade with RESP*, if not included in Appendix D;
- Nova Scotia Securities Commission Blanket Order No. 46;
- Prince Edward Island Local Rule 45-510 - *Exempt Distributions - Exemptions for Trades Pursuant to Take-over Bids and Issuer Bids*;
- an exemption from the prospectus requirement in a jurisdiction of Canada that specifies that the first trade is subject to section 2.6 of NI 45-102.

## **Transitional and Other Provisions**

### **1. General:**

An exemption from the prospectus requirement listed in Appendix E of MI 45-102 in effect on March 30, 2004 or an exemption from the prospectus requirement that specified prior to September 14, 2005 that the first trade was subject to section 2.6 of MI 45-102. The exemptions listed in Appendix E of MI 45-102 on March 30, 2004 were:

- ◆ Section 131(1)(f) if not included in Appendix D of this Instrument, sections 131(h), (i), (j), (k), and (y) of the *Securities Act* (Alberta) and sections 107(1) (j.1) and (k.1) prior to their repeal by section 5 of the *Securities Amendment Act, 1989* (Alberta), subsection 2.1(2) of MI 45-103 and sections 2.1, 2.2, 2.3 and 2.4 of MI 45-105 or under an exemption from the prospectus requirement that specifies that the first trade is subject to section 2.6 of MI 45-102;
- ◆ Section 74(2)(11)(iii) if not included in Appendix D or F and sections 74(2)(7), (8) if not included in Appendix F, (9) to (11), (13), (22) and (24) of the *Securities Act* (British Columbia);
- ◆ Section 128(g) of the *Securities Rules* (British Columbia), section 2.1(2) of MI 45-103 and sections 2.1, 2.2, 2.3 and 2.4 of MI 45-105 or under an exemption from the prospectus requirement that specifies that the first trade is subject to section 2.6 of MI 45-102;
- ◆ Section 74(2)(12) of the *Securities Act* (British Columbia), if the security acquired by the selling security holder under the realization on collateral was initially acquired by a person or company under any of the sections of the *Securities Act* (British Columbia), the *Securities Rules* (British Columbia) or a multilateral instrument referred to in this Appendix or under an exemption from the prospectus requirement that specifies that the first trade is subject to section 2.6 of MI 45-102;
- ◆ Clauses 54(3) and 73(1)(f) if not included in Appendix D or F of this Instrument, (i) if not included in Appendix F, (j), (k) and (n) of the *Securities Act* (Newfoundland and Labrador), subsection 2.1(2) of MI 45-103 and sections 2.1, 2.2, 2.3 and 2.4 of MI 45-105 or under an

exemption from the prospectus requirement that specifies that the first trade is subject to section 2.6 of MI 45-102;

- ◆ Paragraphs 3(e), (f), (g), (h), (i), (n), (x), (y) and (mm) of Blanket Order No. 1 of the Registrar of Securities (Northwest Territories), except for a trade made under subparagraph 3(e)(iii) of Blanket Order No. 1 of the Registrar of Securities (Northwest Territories) that is included in Appendix D or F of this Instrument or a trade made under paragraph 3(g) that is included in Appendix F of this Instrument, subsection 2.1(2) of MI 45-103 and sections 2.1, 2.2, 2.3 and 2.4 of MI 45-105 or under an exemption from the prospectus requirement that specifies that the first trade is subject to section 2.6 of MI 45-102;
- ◆ Clause 77(1)(f) of the *Securities Act* (Nova Scotia) if not included in Appendix D or F of this Instrument, and clauses 77(1)(h), (i) if not included in Appendix F, (j), (k), (n), (v), (va), (ac), (ae) and (af) of the *Securities Act* (Nova Scotia), and clause 78(1)(a) of the *Securities Act* (Nova Scotia) as it relates to clause 41(2)(j) of the *Securities Act* (Nova Scotia) and Blanket Order No. 37, 38 if not included in Appendix F, 46 and 45-503 if not included in Appendix F, subsection 2.1(2) of MI 45-103 and sections 2.1, 2.2, 2.3 and 2.4 of MI 45-105 or under an exemption from the prospectus requirement that specifies that the first trade is subject to section 2.6 of MI 45-102;
- ◆ Paragraphs 3(e), (f), (g), (h), (i), (n), (x), (y) and (mm) of Blanket Order No. 1 of the Registrar of Securities (Nunavut), except for a trade made under subparagraph 3(e)(iii) of Blanket Order No. 1 of the Registrar of Securities (Nunavut) that is included in Appendix D or F of this Instrument or a trade made under paragraph 3(g) that is included in Appendix F of this Instrument, subsection 2.1(2) of MI 45-103 and sections 2.1, 2.2, 2.3 and 2.4 of MI 45-105 or under an exemption from the prospectus requirement that specifies that the first trade is subject to section 2.6 of MI 45-102;
- ◆ Clauses 13(1)(e) if not included in Appendix D or F of this Instrument, (f) if not included in Appendix F, (h) and (k) of the *Securities Act* (Prince Edward Island) or section 3.1 or 3.2 of Rule 45-501, section 1.1 of Prince Edward Island Rule 45-502, section 2.1 or 2.2 of Prince Edward Island Rule 45-506 or section 2.1 or 2.2 of Prince Edward Island Rule 45-510, subsection 2.1(2) of MI 45-103 and sections 2.1, 2.2, 2.3 and 2.4 of MI 45-105 or under an exemption from the prospectus requirement that specifies that the first trade is subject to section 2.6 of MI 45-102;
- ◆ Clauses 81(1)(a.1), (e) if not included in Appendix D of this Instrument, (f) if not included in Appendix D or F of this Instrument, (f.1), (g), (h), (i) if not included in Appendix F, (i.1), (j), (k), (o), (cc) and (dd) of *The Securities Act, 1988* (Saskatchewan), subsection 2.1(2) of MI 45-103 and sections 2.1, 2.2, 2.3 and 2.4 of MI 45-105 or under an exemption from the prospectus requirement that specifies that the first trade is subject to section 2.6 of MI 45-102.

## 2. Québec Provisions

- ◆ Sections 50 and 52 of the *Securities Act* (Québec) as they read prior to their repeal by section 8 of *An Act to amend the Securities Act and other legislative provisions*;
- ◆ Prospectus and registration exemptions granted pursuant to section 263 of the *Securities Act* (Québec) before March 30, 2004 if the exemption included as a condition a seasoning period of 12 months.

## 3. Ontario provisions

## Definitions

In this Appendix

“**1998 OSC Rule 45-501**” means the Ontario Securities Commission Rule 45-501 *Exempt Distributions* that came into force on December 22, 1998;

“**2001 OSC Rule 45-501**” means the Ontario Securities Commission Rule 45-501 *Exempt Distributions* that came into force on November 30, 2001;

“**2004 OSC Rule 45-501**” means the Ontario Securities Commission Rule 45-501 *Exempt Distributions* that came into force on January 12, 2004;

“**convertible security**” means, in Ontario, a security of an issuer that is convertible into, or carries the right of the holder to purchase, or of the issuer to cause the purchase of, a security of the same issuer;

“**exchangeable security**” means, in Ontario, a security of an issuer that is exchangeable for, or carries the right of the holder to purchase, or the right of the issuer to cause the purchase of, a security of another issuer;

“**exchange issuer**” means, in Ontario, an issuer that distributes securities of a reporting issuer held by it in accordance with the terms of an exchangeable security of its own issue;

“**multiple convertible security**” means, in Ontario, a security of an issuer that is convertible into or exchangeable for, or carries the right of the holder to purchase, or of the issuer or exchange issuer to cause the purchase of, a convertible security, an exchangeable security or another multiple convertible security;

“**OSC Rule 45-502**” means Ontario Securities Commission Rule 45-502 *Dividend or Interest Reinvestment and Stock Dividend Plans*;

“**OSC Rule 45-503**” means Ontario Securities Commission Rule 45-503 *Trades to Employees, Executives and Consultants*;

“**Type 1 trade**” means, in Ontario, a distribution in a security under an exemption from the prospectus requirement in:

- (a) clause 72(1)(a), (b), (c), (d), (l), (m), (p) or (q) of the *Securities Act* (Ontario), in each case prior to section 11 of Schedule 26 of the *Budget Measures Act, 2009* being proclaimed in force;
- (b) section 2.4, 2.5 or 2.11 of the 1998 OSC Rule 45-501;
- (c) section 2.3, 2.12, 2.13 or 2.14 of the 2001 OSC Rule 45-501; or
- (d) section 2.3, 2.12, 2.13, 2.14 or 2.16 of the 2004 OSC Rule 45-501; and

“**Type 2 trade**” means, in Ontario, a distribution in a security under an exemption from the prospectus requirement in:

- (a) clause 72(1)(f) of the *Securities Act* (Ontario), prior to section 11 of Schedule 26 of the *Budget Measures Act, 2009* being proclaimed in force, other than a distribution to an associated consultant or investor consultant as defined in OSC Rule 45-503 or a distribution to an associated consultant or investor relations person as defined in MI 45-105;

- (b) clause 72(1)(h), (i), (j), (k) or (n) of the *Securities Act* (Ontario), in each case prior to section 11 of Schedule 26 of the *Budget Measures Act, 2009* being proclaimed in force; or
- (c) section 2.5, 2.8 or 2.15 of the 2001 OSC Rule 45-501; or
- (d) section 2.5, 2.8 or 2.15 of the 2004 OSC Rule 45-501; and

“**underlying security**” means, in Ontario, a security issued or transferred, or to be issued or transferred, in accordance with the terms of a convertible security, an exchangeable security or a multiple convertible security.

**(a) *Securities Act* (Ontario)**

Clauses 72(1)(f), (i) if not included in Appendix F, (j), (k) and (n) of the *Securities Act* (Ontario), in each case prior to section 11 of Schedule 26 of the *Budget Measures Act, 2009* being proclaimed in force, except for a trade made under 72(1)(f)(iii) of the *Securities Act* (Ontario), prior to section 11 of Schedule 26 of the *Budget Measures Act, 2009* being proclaimed in force, that is:

- (i) included in Appendix D or F of this Instrument, or
- (ii) contemplated by section 6.5 of 2004 OSC Rule 45-501; and

an exemption from the prospectus requirement that specifies that the first trade is subject to section 2.6 of MI 45-102

Clause 72(1)(h) of the *Securities Act* (Ontario) except for a distribution under clause 72(1)(h) of the *Securities Act* (Ontario) of an underlying security that was distributed on conversion or exchange of a multiple convertible security, convertible security or exchangeable security acquired in a Type 1 trade, in each case prior to section 11 of Schedule 26 of the *Budget Measures Act, 2009* being proclaimed in force.

**(b) 2001 OSC Rule 45-501 and 2004 OSC Rule 45-501**

Section 2.1 of the 2001 OSC Rule 45-501 and the 2004 OSC Rule 45-501;

Section 2.5 of the 2001 OSC Rule 45-501 and the 2004 OSC Rule 45-501;

Section 2.6 of the 2001 OSC Rule 45-501 and the 2004 OSC Rule 45-501 if an underlying security was distributed under section 2.6 of the 2001 OSC Rule 45-501 or the 2004 OSC Rule 45-501 on a forced conversion or exchange of a multiple convertible security, convertible security or exchangeable security acquired:

- (a) in a Type 2 trade;
- (b) under section 2.2, 3.1, 3.2, 3.3, 5.1 or 8.1 of OSC Rule 45-503, other than a trade by an associated consultant or investor consultant as defined in OSC Rule 45-503; or
- (c) under a provision in Part 2 of MI 45-105;

Section 2.7 of the 2001 OSC Rule 45-501 and the 2004 OSC Rule 45-501 if an underlying security was distributed under section 2.7 of the 2001 OSC Rule 45-501 or the 2004 OSC Rule 45-501 on a forced conversion or exchange of a multiple convertible security, convertible security or exchangeable security acquired:

- (a) in a Type 2 trade;

- (b) under section 2.2, 3.1, 3.2, 3.3, 5.1 or 8.1 of OSC Rule 45-503, other than a trade by an associated consultant or investor consultant as defined in OSC Rule 45-503; or
- (c) under a provision in Part 2 of MI 45-105;

Section 2.8 of the 2001 OSC Rule 45-501 and the 2004 OSC Rule 45-501;

Section 2.11 of the 2001 OSC Rule 45-501 and the 2004 OSC Rule 45-501 if section 2.6 of MI 45-102 would have been applicable to a first trade in that security by the person making the exempt distribution under section 2.11 of the 2001 OSC Rule 45-501 or the 2004 OSC Rule 45-501;

Section 2.15 of the 2004 OSC Rule 45-501.

**(c) 1998 OSC Rule 45-501**

Section 2.7 of the 1998 OSC Rule 45-501;

Section 2.8 of the 1998 OSC Rule 45-501;

Section 2.9 of the 1998 OSC Rule 45-501 if an underlying security was distributed under section 2.9 of the 1998 OSC Rule 45-501 on a forced conversion or exchange of a multiple convertible security, convertible security or exchangeable security acquired by the holder in a Type 2 trade;

Section 2.10 of the 1998 OSC Rule 45-501 if an underlying security was distributed under section 2.10 of the 1998 OSC Rule 45-501 on a forced conversion or exchange of a multiple convertible security, convertible security or exchangeable security acquired by the holder in a Type 2 trade;

Section 2.17 of the 1998 OSC Rule 45-501;

Subsection 2.18(1) of the 1998 OSC Rule 45-501 after the issuer had ceased to be a private issuer for the purposes of the *Securities Act* (British Columbia).

**(d) Other**

Sections 2.1 and 3.1 of Ontario Securities Commission Rule 45-502.

**4. New Brunswick Provisions**

In this Appendix

“2004 NB LR 45-501” means the New Brunswick Securities Commission Local Rule 45-501 that came into force on September 29, 2004;

A. Subsections 2.1(2), 2.2(3), 2.4(2), 2.9(2), 2.14(2), 2.16(3), 2.18(2), 2.19(2), 2.22(4), 2.25(3), 2.26(4), 2.29(3), 2.30(2) and 2.31(3) of 2004 NB LR 45-501

B. Subsection 2.41(2) of 2004 NB LR 45-501 (if the security acquired under section 2.4 was initially acquired by an individual or an associate of the individual or an RRSP or RRIF established for or by that individual or under which that individual is a beneficiary under  
(a) one of the exemptions in NB LR 45-501 listed in paragraph A, or  
(b) an exemption from the prospectus requirement that specifies that the first trade is subject to section 2.5 of Multilateral Instrument 45-102 *Resale of Securities*)

C. Subsection 2.43(3) (if the security acquired under paragraph 2.43(1)(a) was acquired in accordance with the terms and conditions of a previously issued security under (a) one of the exemptions in 2005 NB LR 45-501 listed in paragraph A, or (b) an exemption from the prospectus requirement that specifies that the first trade is subject to section 2.5 of Multilateral Instrument, 45-102 *Resale of Securities*)

**Appendix F**  
**to**  
**National Instrument 45-102**  
***Resale of Securities***

**Underwriters**  
**(Section 2.13)**

Section 2.33 [*Acting as underwriter*] of NI 45-106 and section 2.11 [*Business combination and reorganization*] or subsection 2.42 (1) [*Conversion, exchange or exercise*] of NI 45-106, if the original security was acquired under section 2.33 of NI 45-106 or one of the underwriter exemptions in the transitional provisions listed below

**Transitional Provisions:**

~~An~~[Except in New Brunswick, an](#) exemption from the prospectus requirement listed in Appendix F of MI 45-102 in effect on March 30, 2004. ~~Exemptions~~[Except in New Brunswick, exemptions](#) listed in Appendix F of MI 45-102 on March 30, 2004 were:

- ◆ Section 74(2)(15) of the *Securities Act* (British Columbia) and section 74(2)(8) or 74(2)(11)(iii) of the *Securities Act* (British Columbia) if the original security was acquired under section 74(2)(15) of the *Securities Act* (British Columbia);
- ◆ Clause 73(1)(r) of the *Securities Act* (Newfoundland and Labrador) and section 73(1)(i) or 73(1)(f)(iii) of the *Securities Act* (Newfoundland and Labrador) if the original security was acquired under section 73(1)(r) of the *Securities Act* (Newfoundland and Labrador);
- ◆ Paragraph 3(v) of Blanket Order No. 1 of the Registrar of Securities (Northwest Territories) and paragraph 3(g) or subparagraph 3(e)(iii) of Blanket Order No. 1 of the Registrar of Securities (Northwest Territories) if the original security was acquired under paragraph 3(v) of Blanket Order No. 1 of the Registrar of Securities (Northwest Territories);
- ◆ Clause 77(1)(r) of the *Securities Act* (Nova Scotia) and clause 77(1)(i) or 77(1)(f)(iii) of the *Securities Act* (Nova Scotia) or Blanket Order No. 38 or 45-503 if the original security was acquired under clause 77(1)(r) of the *Securities Act* (Nova Scotia);
- ◆ Paragraph 3(v) of Blanket Order No. 1 of the Registrar of Securities (Nunavut) and paragraph 3(g) or subparagraph 3(e)(iii) of Blanket Order No. 1 of the Registrar of Securities (Nunavut) if the original security was acquired under paragraph 3(v) of Blanket Order No. 1 of the Registrar of Securities (Nunavut);
- ◆ Clause 72(1)(f)(iii) of the *Securities Act* (Ontario) if the original security was acquired under clause 72(1)(r) of the *Securities Act* (Ontario), [in each case prior to section 11 of Schedule 26 the \*Budget Measures Act, 2009\* being proclaimed in force](#);
- ◆ Clause 72(1)(i) of the *Securities Act* (Ontario) if the original security was acquired under clause 72(1)(r) of the *Securities Act* (Ontario), [in each case prior to section 11 of Schedule 26 of the \*Budget Measures Act, 2009\* being proclaimed in force](#);

- ◆ Clause 72(1)(r) of the *Securities Act* (Ontario), in each case prior to section 11 of Schedule 26 of the *Budget Measures Act, 2009* being proclaimed in force;
- ◆ Section 2.1 of Prince Edward Island Rule 45-509 and subclause 13(1)(e) (iii) or clause 13(1)(f) of the *Securities Act* (Prince Edward Island) or section 1.1 of Prince Edward Island Rule 45-502 if the original security was acquired under section 2.1 of Prince Edward Island Rule 45-509;
- ◆ Section 55 of the *Securities Act* (Québec) as it read prior to its repeal by section 8 of *An Act to amend the Securities Act and other legislative provisions*; and
- ◆ Clause 81(1)(u) of *The Securities Act, 1988* (Saskatchewan) and clause 81(1)(i) or subclause 81(1)(f)(iii) of *The Securities Act, 1988* (Saskatchewan) if the original security was acquired under clause 81(1)(u) of *The Securities Act, 1988* (Saskatchewan).

**New Brunswick Provisions:**

In New Brunswick, an exemption from the prospectus requirement listed in New Brunswick Securities Commission Local Rule 45-501 in effect on September 29, 2004 (2004 NB LR 45-501).

In New Brunswick, the exemptions listed in 2004 NB LR 45-501 were:

- ◆ Subsection 2.33(2); and
- ◆ Subsection 2.43(3) if the original security was acquired under section 2.09.

[Amended •]

Appendix F-2

Form 45-102F1

**Notice of Intention to Distribute Securities under Section 2.8 of  
NI 45-102 *Resale of Securities***

**Reporting issuer**

1. Name of reporting issuer:

**Selling security holder**

2. Your name:

3. The offices or positions you hold in the reporting issuer:

4. Are you selling securities as a lender, pledgee, mortgagee or other encumbrancer?

5. Number and class of securities of the reporting issuer you beneficially own:

**Distribution**

6. Number and class of securities you propose to sell:

7. Will you sell the securities privately or on an exchange or market? If on an exchange or market, provide the name.

**Warning**

**It is an offence to submit information that, in a material respect and in light of the circumstances in which it is submitted, is misleading or untrue.**

**Certificate**

I certify that

- (1) I have no knowledge of a material fact or material change with respect to the issuer of the securities that has not been generally disclosed; and
- (2) the information given in this form is true and complete.

Date .....

.....  
Your name (Selling security holder)

.....  
Your signature (or if a company, the signature of your authorized signatory)

.....  
Name of your authorized signatory

**INSTRUCTION:**

File this form electronically through SEDAR with the securities regulatory authority [or regulator](#) in each jurisdiction where you sell securities and with the Canadian exchange on which the securities are listed. ~~Where~~[If](#) the securities are being sold on an exchange, the form should be filed in every jurisdiction across Canada.

**Notice to selling security holders - collection and use of personal information**

The personal information required in this form is collected for and used by the listed securities regulatory authorities [or regulators](#) to administer and enforce securities legislation in their jurisdictions. This form is publicly available by authority of National Instrument 45-102 and the securities legislation in each of the jurisdictions. The personal information collected will not be used or disclosed other than for the stated purposes without first obtaining your consent. Corporate filers should seek the consent of any individuals whose personal information appears in this form before filing this form

If you have questions about the collection and use of your personal information, or the personal information of your authorized signatory, contact any of the securities regulatory authorities [or regulators](#) listed below.

~~Alberta Securities Commission~~

~~4th Floor, 300 5th Avenue SW~~

~~Calgary, AB T2P 3C4~~

~~Attention: Information Officer~~

~~Telephone: (403) 297-6454~~

~~Facsimile: (403) 297-6156~~

***British Columbia Securities Commission***

P.O. Box 10142, Pacific Centre

701 West Georgia Street

Vancouver, BC V7Y 1L2

Attention: Assistant Manager, Financial Reporting

Telephone: (604) 899-~~6730~~[6805](#) or (800) 373-6393 (in B.C.)

Facsimile: (604) 899-6506

~~Alberta Securities Commission of Newfoundland and Labrador~~

~~P.O. Box 8700~~

~~2nd Floor, West Block~~

~~Confederation Building~~

~~75 O'Leary Avenue~~

~~St. John's, NFLD A1B 4J6~~

~~Attention: Director of Securities~~

~~Telephone: (709) 729-4189~~

~~Facsimile: (709) 729-6187~~

**Department of Justice, Northwest Territories  
Legal Registries**

~~P.O. Box 1320  
1st Floor, 5009 49th Street  
Yellowknife, NWT X1A 2L9  
Attention: Director, Legal Registries  
Telephone: (867) 873-7490  
Facsimile: (867) 873-0243~~

**Nova Scotia Securities Commission**

~~2nd Floor, Joseph Howe Building  
1690 Hollis Street  
Halifax, NS B3J 3J9  
Attention: Corporate Finance  
Telephone: (902) 424-7768  
Facsimile: (902) 424-4625~~

**Department of Justice, Nunavut  
Legal Registries Division**

~~P.O. Box 1000—Station 570  
1st Floor, Brown Building  
Iqaluit, NT X0A 0H0  
Attention: Director, Legal Registries Division  
Telephone: (867) 975-6190  
Facsimile: (867) 975-6194~~

**Ontario Securities Commission**

~~Suite 1903, Box 55  
20 Queen Street West  
Toronto, ON M5H 3S8  
Attention: Administrative Assistant to the Director of Corporate Finance  
Telephone: (416) 593-8314  
Toll-free in Canada: 1-877-785-1555  
Facsimile: (416) 593-8122~~

**Prince Edward Island Securities Office**

~~Consumer, Corporate and Insurance Services Division  
Office of the Attorney General  
P.O. Box 2000  
Charlottetown, PE C1A 7N8  
Attention: Superintendent of Securities  
Telephone: (902) 368-4550  
Facsimile: (902) 368-5283  
4th Floor, 300 - 5th Avenue SW  
Calgary, AB T2P 3C4  
Attention: Information Officer~~

Telephone: (403) 297-6454

Facsimile: (403) 297-6156

**Saskatchewan Financial Services Commission  
Securities Division**

601 - 1919 Saskatchewan Drive

Regina, SK S4P 4H2

Attention: Deputy Director, Legal/Registration

Telephone: (306) 787-5879

Facsimile: (306) 787-5899

**Ontario Securities Commission**

Suite 1903, Box 55

20 Queen Street West

Toronto, ON M5H 3S8

Attention: Administrative Support Clerk

Telephone: (416) 593-3684

Toll free in Canada: 1-877-785-1555

Facsimile: (416) 593-8122

**Autorité des marchés financiers**

Tour de la Bourse

800 square Victoria

C.P. 246, 22e étage

Montréal, Québec H4Z 1G3

Attention: Responsable de l'accès à l'information

Telephone: (514) 395-0337

Toll free: 1-877-525-0337

Facsimile: (514) 873-6155 (For filing purposes only)

Facsimile: (514) 864-6381 (For privacy requests only)

[www.lautorite.qc.ca](http://www.lautorite.qc.ca)

**New Brunswick Securities Commission**

85 Charlotte Street, Suite 300

Saint John, New Brunswick E2L 2J2

Telephone: (506) 658-3060

Toll Free in New Brunswick 1-866-933-2222

Facsimile: (506) 658-3059

**Nova Scotia Securities Commission**

2nd Floor, Joseph Howe Building

1690 Hollis Street

Halifax, NS B3J 3J9

Attention: Corporate Finance

Telephone: (902) 424-7768

Facsimile: (902) 424-4625

**Prince Edward Island Securities Office**

95 Rochford Street, 4<sup>th</sup> Floor Shaw Building

P.O. Box 2000

Charlottetown, Prince Edward Island C1A 7N8  
Telephone: (902) 368-4569  
Facsimile: (902) 368-5283

**Government of Newfoundland and Labrador**

Financial Services Regulation Division

P.O. Box 8700

Confederation Building

2nd Floor, West Block

Prince Philip Drive

St. John's, NFLD A1B 4J6

Attention: Director of Securities

Telephone: (709) 729-4189

Facsimile: (709) 729-6187

**Government of Yukon**

Department of Community Services

Law Centre, 3rd Floor

2130 Second Avenue

Whitehorse, YT Y1A 5H6

Telephone: (867) 667-5314

Facsimile: (867) 393-6251

**Government of Northwest Territories**

Office of the Superintendent of Securities

Deputy Superintendent, Legal & Enforcement

PO Box 1320

Yellowknife, NT X1A 2L9

Tel: (867) 920-8984

Fax: (867) 873-0243

**Department of Justice, Nunavut**

**Legal Registries Division**

P.O. Box 1000, Station 570

1st Floor, Brown Building

Iqaluit, NT X0A 0H0

Attention: Director, Legal Registries Division

Telephone: (867) 975-6590

Facsimile: (867) 975-6594

[Amended •]

**Proposed Amended and Restated**  
**Companion Policy 45-102CP**  
**to National Instrument 45-102**  
*Resale of Securities*

**1.1 Application**

- (1) National Instrument 45-102 (NI 45-102) has been implemented in all jurisdictions.
- (2) Except for sections 2.1, 2.8 and 2.9, Part 2 of NI 45-102 does not apply in Manitoba ~~and Yukon~~.

**1.2 Purpose**

- (1) NI 45-102 provides that first trades of securities distributed under certain exemptions from the prospectus requirement are distributions unless certain conditions are met. The conditions impose restrictions on the resale of the securities. If the securities were distributed under any of the provisions listed in Appendix D to NI 45-102 or under other securities legislation which specifies that the first trade is subject to section 2.5 of NI 45-102, the conditions include that the issuer is and has been a reporting issuer for a four month seasoning period and that a four month restricted period has elapsed from the date of the initial distribution. If the securities were distributed under any of the provisions listed in Appendix E to NI 45-102 or under other securities legislation which specifies that the first trade is subject to section 2.6 of NI 45-102, the conditions include that the issuer is and has been a reporting issuer for a four month seasoning period. NI 45-102 also provides an exemption for a control distribution and a sale by a pledgee of pledged securities if the sale would be a distribution for the purposes of securities legislation.
- (2) Appendices D and E to NI 45-102 list the ~~new~~ harmonized exemptions in National Instrument 45-106 *Registration and Prospectus Exemptions* (NI 45-106) and local exemptions that are subject to the resale restrictions under section 2.5 or 2.6 of NI 45-102, while Appendix F lists the ~~new~~ harmonized exemptions in NI 45-106 applicable to underwriters. Each of these appendices also contains transitional provisions applicable to securities acquired under exemptions listed in the Appendices to MI 45-102 as Appendices D, E and F read on March 30, 2004. For all local exemptions that ~~come into effect after September 14, 2005~~, remain in force, you should look to the local instrument itself to see if it specifies that the securities acquired are subject to section 2.5 or 2.6 of NI 45-102 as well as to Appendix D and E to NI 45-102. You may also wish to consult the CSA [Staff Notice 45-304](#) listing local registration and prospectus

exemptions in place in each jurisdiction of Canada, which the CSA will update periodically.

- (3) Nothing in NI 45-102 is intended to restrict the ability of a purchaser to resell securities during the restricted period or seasoning period under a prospectus or an exemption from the prospectus requirement. This includes the further exemption found in section 2.14. For example, if a person or company obtains a discretionary exemption order or ruling that imposes any of the resale restrictions contained in section 2.5, 2.6 or 2.8 on a security that is the subject of the order or ruling, the person or company may rely on section 2.14 to resell the security.

### 1.3 **Transition**

- ~~(1) When Multilateral Instrument 45-102 *Resale of Securities* (“former MI 45-102”) came into force on November 30, 2001, that instrument imposed harmonized resale restrictions on the first trade of securities made on or after that date, even if the securities were distributed, or acquired by the selling security holder in the case of a trade that is a control distribution, prior to November 30, 2001. These securities were subject to prescribed restricted periods and seasoning periods of either four or twelve months. When MI 45-102 was implemented on March 30, 2004, the securities of all reporting issuers became subject to four month restricted and seasoning periods under section 2.5 and 2.8 or four month seasoning periods under section 2.6 of MI 45-102. This meant that any existing restricted period or seasoning period imposed under Part 2 of former MI 45-102 that exceeded four months was reduced to four months under MI 45-102. Under NI 45-102, securities of all reporting issuers continue to be subject to a four month restricted period under subsection 2.5(2) or 2.8(2) of the Instrument.~~
- ~~(2) Item 3. of subsection 2.5(2) of MI 45-102 required that the certificate or the ownership statement evidencing a security that is the subject of the first trade carry either a legend or a legend restriction notation disclosing the resale restrictions. This legend requirement applied only to securities distributed on or after MI 45-102 comes into effect on March 30, 2004 in all jurisdictions except Quebec. We have added language to Item 3. of subsection 2.5(2) of NI 45-102 to clarify that the legend requirement in NI 45-102 will only apply to securities distributed in Quebec on or after NI 45-102 comes into effect on September 14, 2005.~~
- ~~(3) Issuers may continue to replace those certificates that are legended in accordance with former MI 45-102 with a certificate (or an acceptable electronic alternative) carrying the legend (or legend restriction notation) specified in item 3. of subsection 2.5(2) of NI 45-102. As was the case~~

~~under former MI 45-102, certificates representing securities distributed prior to November 30, 2001 do not have to be legended.~~**1.4 Open System Jurisdictions, Jurisdiction** - Sections 2.5 and 2.6 of NI 45-102 do not apply in Manitoba, ~~and Yukon as those jurisdictions do~~ because Manitoba does not impose restrictions on first trades in securities distributed under an exemption from the prospectus requirement in those jurisdictions unless the trade is a control distribution.

**1.51.4 Example of Application of Section 2.5** - If an issuer distributes securities to a purchaser in British Columbia, the issuer must file a prospectus or rely upon a prospectus exemption under the securities legislation of British Columbia. If the issuer relies upon a British Columbia prospectus exemption listed in Appendix D to NI 45-102, section 2.3 of NI 45-102 applies and the first trade of the securities is subject to section 2.5 of NI 45-102. Section 2.5 provides that the first trade is a distribution unless, among other conditions, a four month restricted period has elapsed. If the British Columbia purchaser seeks to resell the securities into Ontario, a prospectus must be filed in Ontario or a prospectus exemption relied upon unless the conditions in subsection 2.5(2) of NI 45-102 are satisfied.

**1.61.5 Reporting Issuer Status** - Reporting issuer status in any jurisdiction will satisfy the reporting issuer requirements in subsections 2.5(2), 2.6(3) and 2.8(2) of NI 45-102. See section 1.11 for guidance if an issuer becomes a reporting issuer by filing a prospectus after the distribution date.

**1.71.6 Legending of Securities** – (1) Items 3 and 3.1 of subsection 2.5(2) of NI 45-102 impose legend or legend notation requirements for securities distributed under any of the provisions listed in Appendix D to NI 45-102 or another prospectus exemption of any jurisdiction subject to the resale restrictions in subsection 2.5(2) of NI 45-102. This requirement applies to securities transferred during the restricted period, whether to initial or subsequent transferees. However, because of the definition of “distribution date”, in the case of most resales, the subsequent purchaser’s restricted period will expire four months and a day after the original distribution date.

(2) If the security is entered into a direct registration or other electronic book-entry system, or where a certificate representing the security is not issued directly to a ~~beneficial security holder~~purchaser, the issuer must provide written notice of the legend restriction notation to the ~~beneficial security holder~~purchaser. We would consider providing written notice of the legend restriction notation to the ~~beneficial security holder~~purchaser in a subscription agreement or including the legend restriction notation in an ownership statement issued under a direct registration system or other electronic book-entry system delivered directly to the ~~beneficial security holder~~purchaser to be ways of meeting the written notice requirement.

(3) In addition to the written notice condition contemplated in item 3.1 of subsection 2.5(2), issuers may want to assist purchasers of restricted securities with compliance with the resale restrictions in item 2 of subsection 2.5(2) through other means. For example, issuers can request that the direct registration or electronic book-entry system in which the security is entered apply any available procedures to ~~restrict trading in~~ identify the restricted nature of the security, such as the assignment of a separate CUSIPISIN number to the security for the duration of the restricted period. There may be alternative procedures available depending on the capabilities of the particular direct registration system or other electronic book-entry system.

(4) Issuers may add additional wording to that found in item 3 of subsection 2.5(2) of NI 45-102. If you supplement the specified text of the legend on the certificate or the legend notation on the written notice, that additional wording cannot alter the meaning of the specified wording. You should also look to section 1.10 for further guidance on the legending of convertible and underlying securities.

---

(5) A reference to a purchaser of a security in items 3 and 3.1 of subsection 2.5(2) of NI 45-102 means a person who makes the investment decision about the acquisition of a security. In most cases, the person making the investment decision will be the beneficial owner of the security. In some cases, however, the person making the investment decision will not be the beneficial owner. In the case of a fully managed account, the manager may be making the investment decision. In the case of a trust, the trustee may be making the investment decision. There may be other examples where the person making the investment decision is not the beneficial owner of the security.

**1.7** **Removal of Legend - NI 45-102 does not preclude an issuer or its transfer agent from removing a legend once the requirements in subsection 2.5(2)3 have been satisfied. The parties involved in a transfer of securities would not be prevented from transferring those securities even if the legend on the certificate was stale-dated. The transferor should, however, verify exchange rules to determine if removal of the legend is necessary to effect “good delivery”.**

**1.8** **Calculation of Restricted and Seasoning Periods** - The restricted period in item 2 of subsection 2.5(2) of NI 45-102 is calculated from the distribution date, that is, the date the securities were distributed in reliance on an exemption from the prospectus requirement by the issuer or a control person. For example, if an issuer or control person distributes securities under a private placement exemption to a purchaser in Saskatchewan and the private placee resells the securities during the restricted period to a purchaser in Alberta under a further private placement exemption, upon resale by the Alberta purchaser, that purchaser will determine whether the restricted period has expired by

calculating the time period from the date the issuer or control person distributed the securities to the Saskatchewan purchaser.

- 1.9 No Unusual Effort** - Persons interested in the meaning of the concept of “no unusual effort is made to prepare the market or to create a demand for the security that is the subject of the trade” found in subsections 2.5(2), 2.6(3) and 2.8(2) of NI 45-102 should look to the case law, in particular the order of the Ontario Securities Commission dated April 24, 1985 in the matter of Daon Development Corporation and Daon Corporation as well as to the definition of unusual effort in section 4 of the Alberta Securities Commission Rules.
- 1.10 Underlying Securities** - The restricted period or seasoning period applicable to trades in underlying securities is calculated from the distribution date of the convertible security, exchangeable security or multiple convertible security. If the applicable restricted period or seasoning period expired prior to the conversion or exchange, subsection 2.5(3) provides that an issuer is not required to place a legend on the certificate representing the underlying securities or a legend restriction notation in the written notice.
- 1.11 Becoming a Reporting Issuer By Filing a Prospectus After the Distribution Date** - If an issuer is not a reporting issuer at the distribution date but subsequently becomes a reporting issuer after the distribution date by filing and obtaining a receipt for a prospectus in one of the jurisdictions listed in Appendix B, section 2.7 of NI 45-102 provides that the [four month](#) seasoning requirement in sections 2.5, 2.6 and 2.8 of NI 45-102 does not apply. This means that the securities issued prior to the prospectus being filed may then be resold, provided [however](#) that the restricted period under section 2.5 or 2.8 of NI 45-102 has expired.
- [For example, if, on September 28, 2009, an issuer that is not a reporting issuer in any jurisdiction issues securities which are subject to section 2.5 to purchasers under a private placement and the issuer subsequently receives a receipt for its initial public offering prospectus on October 28, 2009, then those purchasers can resell the securities acquired under the private placement on January 29, 2010, being the date that is four months and a day from the original distribution date, provided that the conditions in subsection 2.5\(2\) are satisfied.](#)
- 1.12 Realization of Pledged Securities** - The prospectus exemption in section 2.8 of NI 45-102 is available for realizations of pledged securities under either a power of sale or by way of foreclosure. This means that a pledgee, mortgagee or other encumbrancer can rely on the exemption in section 2.8 of NI 45-102 to immediately effect a resale of pledged securities under a power of sale or to foreclose and take the securities on its own books for subsequent resale.

**1.13 Securities Exchange Take-over Bid or Issuer Bid** - Section 2.11 of NI 45-102 provides relief from the seasoning requirement for a trade of securities issued in connection with a securities exchange take-over bid or securities exchange issuer bid if a securities exchange take-over bid circular or securities exchange issuer bid circular is filed by the offeror under securities legislation of the local jurisdiction. A bid circular may be filed for either a formal bid or an exempt bid. The basis for this exemption is that a securities exchange take-over bid circular or securities exchange issuer bid circular for a formal bid is required to contain prospectus-level disclosure for the offeror or other issuer whose securities are being offered in exchange for the securities of the offeree issuer. If a take-over bid circular or issuer bid circular is prepared in connection with an exempt bid, the circular must meet the disclosure standards in securities legislation relating to the form and content of a take-over bid circular or issuer bid circular, as the case may be, for a formal bid for the exemption in section 2.11 to be available.

**1.14 Exemptions for Certain Trades in the Local Jurisdiction** - The exemption in section 2.10 of NI 45-102 is subject to a condition that the issuer of the underlying security was a reporting issuer in the local jurisdiction at the time of the trade. The exemptions in sections 2.11 and 2.12 of NI 45-102 are subject to a condition that the offeror was a reporting issuer in the local jurisdiction on the date securities of the offeree issuer are first taken up under the take-over bid or issuer bid and, in the case of the exemption in section 2.12, an additional condition that issuer of the underlying security was a reporting issuer in the local jurisdiction at the time of the trade. Issuers cannot rely on a prospectus filed in another jurisdiction nor can an offeror rely on a take-over bid circular or issuer bid circular filed in another jurisdiction to satisfy these conditions.

**1.15 Resales of Securities of a Non-Reporting Issuer**

- (1) For the purposes of section 2.14 of NI 45-102, in determining the percentage of the outstanding securities of the class or series that are directly or indirectly owned by residents of Canada and the number of owners directly or indirectly that are residents of Canada, an issuer should use reasonable efforts to
  - (a) determine securities held of record by a broker, dealer, bank, trust company or nominee for any of them for the accounts of customers resident in Canada;
  - (b) count securities beneficially owned by residents of Canada as reported on reports of beneficial ownership; and

- (c) assume that a customer is a resident of the jurisdiction or foreign jurisdiction in which the nominee has its principal place of business if, after reasonable inquiry, information regarding the jurisdiction or foreign jurisdiction of residence of the customer is unavailable.
- (2) Lists of beneficial owners of securities maintained by intermediaries under SEC Rule 14a-13 under the *1934 Act* or other securities law analogous to National Instrument 54-101 *Communication with Beneficial Owners of Securities of a Reporting Issuer* may be useful in determining the percentages referred to in subsection (1).
- (3) [There is no requirement to place a legend on the securities in order to rely on the exemption in section 2.14 of NI 45-102.](#)

**1.16 Filing of Form 45-102F1** - Section 2.8 of NI 45-102 provides that the prospectus requirement does not apply to a control distribution if the conditions in section 2.8 are met. Selling security holders are required to give advance notice of intention to resell their securities under subsection 2.8(3) of NI 45-102 by filing a completed and signed Form 45-102F1. Under subsection 2.8(4), the advance notice expires on the earlier of the date the selling security holder files the last of the insider reports reflecting the sale of all securities referred to in the Form and 30 days after the Form 45-102F1 is filed. A new Form 45-102F1 must be filed in accordance with subsection 2.8(3) if the selling security holder wishes to continue to resell securities from a control block. Form 45-102F1 should be filed ~~on~~through SEDAR under the issuer's profile under "*Continuous Disclosure – Resale of Securities* (NI 45-102) - Form 45-102F1" in the jurisdiction of the issuer's principal regulator under National Policy 11-202 *Process for Prospectus Reviews in Multiple Jurisdictions*. Consult National Instrument 13-101 *System for Electronic Document Analysis and Retrieval* (SEDAR) and the current CSA SEDAR Filer Manual (including code updates) for further information about filing documents electronically.

**1.17 Application of section 2.10** – Section 2.10 of NI 45-102 applies when securities qualified by a prospectus are convertible into or exchangeable for securities of a reporting issuer other than the issuer of the convertible or exchangeable securities. Those securities would be converted or exchanged in reliance on the ~~dealer registration prospectus~~ exemption in paragraph ~~3.422.42(1)(b) of NI 45-106 and the prospectus exemption in subsection 2.42(1)-106~~. As a result, those securities would be subject to a seasoning period requirement because distributions under subsection 2.42(1) of NI 45-106 for a security being distributed in the circumstances referred to in clause (b) of subsection 2.42(1) are listed in Appendix E of NI 45-102. Section 2.10 removes the seasoning period requirement for the underlying securities provided the requirements of that section are met.

Amended and Restated September 28, 2009 except in Ontario.

In Ontario, Amended and Restated on the later of the following:

- (a) September 28, 2009;
- (b) the day on which sections 5 and 11, subsection 12(1) and section 13 of Schedule 26 of the *Budget Measures Act, 2009* are proclaimed in force.

~~[Amended •]~~

## Appendix G

### Amendments to National Instrument 45-102 *Resale of Securities*

1. *National Instrument 45-102 Resale of Securities is amended by this Instrument.*
2. *Section 2.1 is amended by striking out “and Yukon”.*
3. *Section 2.2 is amended by striking out “, Nova Scotia and Ontario” and substituting “and Ontario”.*
4. *Section 2.5 is amended by*
  - a. *repealing item 3 of subsection (2) and substituting the following:*
    3. If the distribution date is on or after March 30, 2004, or, in Québec, on or after September 14, 2005, and either of the following apply:
      - (i) if the issuer was a reporting issuer on the distribution date, the certificate representing the security, if any, carries a legend stating:

Unless permitted under securities legislation, the holder of this security must not trade the security before [*insert the date that is 4 months and a day after the distribution date*];
      - (ii) if the issuer was not a reporting issuer on the distribution date, the certificate representing the security, if any, carries a legend stating:

Unless permitted under securities legislation, the holder of this security must not trade the security before the date that is 4 months and a day after the later of (i) [*insert the distribution date*], and (ii) the date the issuer became a reporting issuer in any province or territory.
  - b. *adding the following item:*
    - 3.1 If the security is entered into a direct registration or other electronic book-entry system, or if the purchaser did not directly receive a certificate representing the security, the purchaser received written notice containing the legend restriction notation set out in subparagraphs (i) or (ii) of item 3.
  - c. *repealing subsection (3) and substituting the following:*

- (3) Items 3 and 3.1 of subsection (2) do not apply to a trade of an underlying security if the underlying security is issued at least four months after the later of
  - (a) the distribution date, and
  - (b) the date the issuer became a reporting issuer in any jurisdiction of Canada.

**5. Section 2.8 is amended by**

**a. *repealing subsection (3) and substituting the following:***

- (3) The selling security holder, or the lender, pledgee, mortgagee or other encumbrancer if the distribution is for the purpose of liquidating a debt, under subsection (2) must
  - (a) complete and sign a Form 45-102F1 no earlier than one business day before the Form 45-102F1 is filed;
  - (b) file the completed and signed Form 45-102F1 on SEDAR at least seven days before the first trade of the securities that is part of the distribution; and
  - (c) file, within three days after the completion of any trade, an insider report prepared in accordance with either Form 55-102F2 or Form 55-102F6 under National Instrument 55-102 *System for Electronic Disclosure by Insiders (SEDI)*.

**b. *repealing subsection (4) and substituting the following:***

- (4) A Form 45-102F1 filed under subsection (3) expires on the earlier of
  - (a) thirty days after the date the Form 45-102F1 was filed, and
  - (b) the date the selling security holder, or the lender, pledgee, mortgagee or other encumbrancer, files the last of the insider reports reflecting the sale of all securities referred to in the Form 45-102F1.

**c. *adding the following subsection:***

- (5) A selling security holder, or the lender, pledgee, mortgagee or other encumbrancer must not file a new Form 45-102F1 in respect of a class of securities of a reporting issuer until the Form 45-102F1 in respect of that class of securities previously filed by that person or company has expired.

**6. Section 2.9(1) is amended by striking out “continuation” wherever it occurs and substituting “reorganization”.**

7. **Appendix A is amended by striking out** “Definition of “control person” and paragraph (iii) of the definition of “distribution” contained in subsection 1(1) of Blanket Order No. 1 of the Registrar of Securities.” **and substituting** “Definition of “control person” in subsection 1(1) and paragraph (c) of the definition of “distribution” contained in subsection 1(1) of the Securities Act (Northwest Territories)”.
8. **Appendix A is amended by adding the following below Saskatchewan:**
- |       |   |
|-------|---|
| Yukon | Definition of “control person” in subsection 1(1) and paragraph (c) of the definition of “distribution” contained in subsection 1(1) of the <i>Securities Act</i> (Yukon) |
|-------|---|
9. **Appendix B is amended by adding “New Brunswick” below Manitoba.**
10. **Appendix C is amended by**
- a. **striking out** “Subsections 72(4), 72(5), 72(6) as it relates to clause 72(1)(r), and 72(7) of the *Securities Act* (Ontario)” **and substituting** “Subsections 72(4), 72(5), 72(6) as it relates to clause 72(1)(r), and 72(7) of the *Securities Act* (Ontario), in each case prior to section 11 of Schedule 26 of the *Budget Measures Act, 2009* being proclaimed in force” **and**
- b. **striking out** “Nova Scotia” **and** “Subsections 77(5), 77(6), 77(7), 77(7A), 77(7B), 77(8), 77(9), 77(10)(a) and 77(11) of the *Securities Act* (Nova Scotia)”.
11. **Appendix D is amended by striking out the text before the heading “Transitional Provisions” and substituting the following:**

Except in Manitoba, the following exemptions from the prospectus requirement in NI 45-106:

- section 2.3 [Accredited investor];
- section 2.5 [Family, friends and business associates] (except in Ontario);
- section 2.7 [Founder, control person and family] (Ontario);
- section 2.8 [Affiliates];
- section 2.9 [Offering memorandum] (in Alberta, British Columbia, Manitoba, New Brunswick, Newfoundland and Labrador, Northwest Territories, Nova Scotia, Nunavut, Prince Edward Island, Québec, Saskatchewan and Yukon);
- section 2.10 [Minimum amount investment];
- section 2.12 [Asset acquisition];
- section 2.13 [Petroleum, natural gas and mining properties];
- section 2.14 [Securities for debt];
- section 2.19 [Additional investment in investment funds];
- section 2.30 [Isolated distribution by issuer];
- section 2.31 [Dividends and distributions], if the security was acquired in the circumstances referred to in subsection 2.31(2) and that security was initially acquired by the issuer under
  - (a) one of the exemptions listed in this Appendix,
  - (b) an exemption from the prospectus requirement that specifies that the first trade is subject to section 2.5 of this Instrument, or

- (c) an exemption from the prospectus requirement that specified prior to September 14, 2005 that the first trade was subject to section 2.5 of MI 45-102;
- section 2.40 [*RRSP/RRIF/TFSA*], if the security acquired under section 2.40 was initially acquired by an individual or an associate of the individual or a RRSP, RRIF, or TFSA established for or by that individual or under which that individual is a beneficiary under
  - (a) one of the exemptions listed in this Appendix,
  - (b) an exemption from the prospectus requirement that specifies that the first trade is subject to section 2.5 of this Instrument, or
  - (c) an exemption from the prospectus requirement that specified prior to September 14, 2005 that the first trade was subject to section 2.5 of MI 45-102;
- section 2.42 [*Conversion, exchange or exercise*], if the security acquired in the circumstances referred to in paragraph 2.42(1)(a) was acquired in accordance with the terms and conditions of a previously issued security and that previously issued security was distributed under
  - (a) one of the exemptions listed in this Appendix,
  - (b) an exemption from the prospectus requirement that specifies that the first trade is subject to section 2.5 of this Instrument, or
  - (c) an exemption from the prospectus requirement that specified prior to September 14, 2005 that the first trade was subject to section 2.5 of MI 45-102;
- section 5.2 [*TSX Venture exchange offering*], if the security acquired under section 5.2 was acquired by
  - (a) a purchaser that, at the time the security was acquired, was an insider or promoter of the issuer of the security, the issuer's underwriter, or a member of the underwriter's "professional group" (as defined in National Instrument 33-105 *Underwriting Conflicts*), or
  - (b) any other purchaser in excess of \$40,000 for the portion of the securities in excess of 40,000;

as well as the following local exemptions from the prospectus requirement:

- section 3.1 of Alberta Securities Commission Rule 72-501 *Distributions to Purchasers Outside Alberta*;
- clauses 77(1)(u) and (w) and subclauses 77(1)(ab)(ii) and (iii) of the *Securities Act* (Nova Scotia);
- an exemption from the prospectus requirement in a jurisdiction of Canada that specifies that the first trade is subject to section 2.5 of NI 45-102.

**12. Appendix D is amended by striking out the heading "Transitional Provisions" and substituting "Transitional and Other Provisions".**

**13. Appendix D is amended by striking out the text after the heading "Ontario Provisions" and substituting the following:**

## **Definitions**

In this Appendix

“**1998 OSC Rule 45-501**” means the Ontario Securities Commission Rule 45-501 *Exempt Distributions* that came into force on December 22, 1998;

“**2001 OSC Rule 45-501**” means the Ontario Securities Commission Rule 45-501 *Exempt Distributions* that came into force on November 30, 2001;

“**2004 OSC Rule 45-501**” means the Ontario Securities Commission Rule 45-501 *Exempt Distributions* that came into force on January 12, 2004;

“**2005 OSC Rule 45-501**” means the Ontario Securities Commission Rule 45-501 *Ontario Prospectus and Registration Exemptions* that came into force on September 14, 2005;

“**2009 OSC Rule 45-501**” means the Ontario Securities Commission Rule 45-501 *Ontario Prospectus and Registration Exemptions* that came into force on the later of (a) September 28, 2009 and (b) the day on which sections 5 and 11, subsection 12(1) and section 13 of Schedule 26 of the *Budget Measures Act, 2009* were proclaimed in force;

“**convertible security**” means, in Ontario, a security of an issuer that is convertible into, or carries the right of the holder to purchase, or of the issuer to cause the purchase of, a security of the same issuer;

“**exchangeable security**” means, in Ontario, a security of an issuer that is exchangeable for, or carries the right of the holder to purchase, or the right of the issuer to cause the purchase of, a security of another issuer;

“**exchange issuer**” means, in Ontario, an issuer that distributes securities of a reporting issuer held by it in accordance with the terms of an exchangeable security of its own issue;

“**multiple convertible security**” means, in Ontario, a security of an issuer that is convertible into or exchangeable for, or carries the right of the holder to purchase, or of the issuer or exchange issuer to cause the purchase of, a convertible security, an exchangeable security or another multiple convertible security;

“**OSC Rule 45-502**” means Ontario Securities Commission Rule 45-502 *Dividend or Interest Reinvestment and Stock Dividend Plans*;

“**Type 1 trade**” means, in Ontario, a distribution in a security under an exemption from the prospectus requirement in:

- (a) clause 72(1)(a), (b), (c), (d), (l), (m), (p) or (q) of the *Securities Act* (Ontario), in each case prior to section 11 of Schedule 26 of the *Budget Measures Act, 2009* being proclaimed in force;
- (b) section 2.4, 2.5 or 2.11 of the 1998 OSC Rule 45-501;
- (c) section 2.3, 2.12, 2.13 or 2.14 of the 2001 OSC Rule 45-501; or
- (d) section 2.3, 2.12, 2.13, 2.14 or 2.16 of the 2004 OSC Rule 45-501; and

“**underlying security**” means, in Ontario, a security issued or transferred, or to be issued or transferred, in accordance with the terms of a convertible security, an exchangeable security or a multiple convertible security.

**(a) Securities Act (Ontario)**

Clauses 72(1)(a), (b), (c), (d), (l), (m), (p) and (q) of the *Securities Act* (Ontario) and subclause 72(1)(f)(iii) of the *Securities Act* (Ontario) if the right to purchase, convert or exchange was previously acquired under one of the above-listed exemptions under the *Securities Act* (Ontario), in each case prior to section 11 of Schedule 26 of the *Budget Measures Act, 2009* being proclaimed in force, or an exemption from the prospectus requirement that specifies that the first trade is subject to section 2.5 of MI 45-102

**(b) 2005 OSC Rule 45-501 and 2009 OSC Rule 45-501**

Section 2.1 of the 2005 OSC Rule 45-501 and 2009 OSC Rule 45-501;

Section 2.2 of the 2005 OSC Rule 45-501 and 2009 OSC Rule 45-501.

**(c) 2001 OSC Rule 45-501 and 2004 OSC Rule 45-501**

Section 2.3 of the 2001 OSC Rule 45-501 and the 2004 OSC Rule 45-501;

Section 2.11 of the 2001 OSC Rule 45-501 and the 2004 OSC Rule 45-501 if section 2.5 of MI 45-102 would have been applicable to a first trade in that security by the person making the exempt distribution under section 2.11 of the 2001 OSC Rule 45-501 or the 2004 OSC Rule 45-501;

Section 2.12 of the 2001 OSC Rule 45-501 and the 2004 OSC Rule 45-501;

Section 2.13 of the 2001 OSC Rule 45-501 and the 2004 OSC Rule 45-501;

Section 2.14 of the 2001 OSC Rule 45-501 and the 2004 OSC Rule 45-501;

Section 2.16 of the 2004 OSC Rule 45-501.

**(d) 1998 OSC Rule 45-501**

Section 2.4 of the 1998 OSC Rule 45-501

Section 2.5 of the 1998 OSC Rule 45-501

Section 2.11 of the 1998 OSC Rule 45-501

**(e) Other**

Any provision under which an underlying security was distributed on conversion or exchange of a multiple convertible security, convertible security or exchangeable security acquired in a Type 1 trade or in a trade under section 2.4, 2.5 or 2.11 of the 1998 OSC Rule 45-501.

**14.** *Appendix D is amended by adding the following at the end of the Appendix:*

**4. New Brunswick Provisions**

In this Appendix

“2004 NB LR 45-501” means the New Brunswick Securities Commission Local Rule 45-501 that came into force on September 29, 2004;

- A. Subsections 2.3(3), 2.5(2), 2.6(7), 2.7(2), 2.8(2), 2.10(2), 2.11(2), 2.12(2) and 2.17(2) of 2004 NB LR 45-501
- B. Subsection 2.41(2) of 2004 NB LR 45-501 (if the security acquired under section 2.4 was initially acquired by an individual or an associate of the individual or an RRSP or RRIF established for or by that individual or under which that individual is a beneficiary under
  - (a) one of the exemptions in NB LR 45-501 listed in paragraph A, or
  - (b) an exemption from the prospectus requirement that specifies that the first trade is subject to section 2.5 of Multilateral Instrument 45-102 *Resale of Securities*)
- C. Subsection 2.43(3) (if the security acquired under paragraph 2.43(1)(a) was acquired in accordance with the terms and conditions of a previously issued security under
  - (a) one of the exemptions in 2005 NB LR 45-501 listed in paragraph A, or
  - (b) an exemption from the prospectus requirement that specifies that the first trade is subject to section 2.5 of Multilateral Instrument, 45-102 *Resale of Securities*)
- D. Section 5.2 of 2004 NB LR 45-501

**15. Appendix E is amended by striking out the text before the heading “Transitional Provisions” and substituting the following:**

Except in Manitoba, the following exemptions from the prospectus requirement in NI 45-106:

- section 2.1 [*Rights offering*];
- section 2.2 [*Reinvestment plan*];
- section 2.4 [*Private issuer*];
- section 2.11 [*Business combination and reorganization*];
- section 2.16 [*Take-over bid and issuer bid*];
- section 2.17 [*Offer to acquire to security holder outside local jurisdiction*];
- section 2.18 [*Investment fund reinvestment*];
- section 2.20 [*Private investment club*];
- section 2.21 [*Private investment fund - loan and trust pools*];
- section 2.24 [*Employee, executive officer, director and consultant*];
- section 2.26 [*Distributions among current or former employees, executive officers, directors or consultants of non-reporting issuer*];
- section 2.27 [*Permitted transferees*];
- section 2.31 [*Dividends and distributions*], if the security was acquired in the circumstances referred to in subsection 2.31(2), that security was initially acquired by the issuer under
  - (a) one of the exemptions listed in this Appendix,
  - (b) an exemption from the prospectus requirement that specifies that the first trade is subject to section 2.6 of this Instrument, or
  - (c) an exemption from the prospectus requirement that specified prior to September 14, 2005 that the first trade was subject to section 2.6 of MI 45-102;
- section 2.40 [*RRSP/RRIF/TFSA*], if the security acquired under section 2.40 was initially acquired by an individual or an associate of the individual or a RRSP, RRIF, or TFSA

- established for or by that individual or under which that individual is a beneficiary under
- (a) one of the exemptions listed in this Appendix,
  - (b) an exemption from the prospectus requirement that specifies that the first trade is subject to section 2.6 of this Instrument, or
  - (c) an exemption from the prospectus requirement that specified prior to September 14, 2005 that the first trade was subject to section 2.6 of MI 45-102;
- section 2.42 [*Conversion, exchange or exercise - security of own issue*], if the security acquired in the circumstances referred to in paragraph 2.42 (1)(a) was acquired in accordance with the terms and conditions of a previously issued security and that previously issued security was distributed under
    - (a) one of the exemptions listed in this Appendix,
    - (b) an exemption from the prospectus requirement that specifies that the first trade is subject to section 2.6 of this Instrument, or
    - (c) an exemption from the prospectus requirement that specified prior to September 14, 2005 that the first trade was subject to section 2.6 of MI 45-102;
  - section 2.42 [*Conversion, exchange or exercise - security of a reporting issuer*] for a security being traded in the circumstances referred to in clause (b) of subsection 2.42 (1);

as well as the following local exemptions from the prospectus requirement:

- Alberta Securities Commission Rule 45-502 *Trade with RESP*, if not included in Appendix D;
- Nova Scotia Securities Commission Blanket Order No. 46;
- Prince Edward Island Local Rule 45-510 - *Exempt Distributions - Exemptions for Trades Pursuant to Take-over Bids and Issuer Bids*;
- an exemption from the prospectus requirement in a jurisdiction of Canada that specifies that the first trade is subject to section 2.6 of NI 45-102.

**16. Appendix E is amended by striking out the heading “Transitional Provisions” and substituting “Transitional and Other Provisions”.**

**17. Appendix E is amended by striking out the text after the heading “Ontario Provisions” and substituting the following:**

#### **Definitions**

In this Appendix

“**1998 OSC Rule 45-501**” means the Ontario Securities Commission Rule 45-501 *Exempt Distributions* that came into force on December 22, 1998;

“**2001 OSC Rule 45-501**” means the Ontario Securities Commission Rule 45-501 *Exempt Distributions* that came into force on November 30, 2001;

“**2004 OSC Rule 45-501**” means the Ontario Securities Commission Rule 45-501 *Exempt Distributions* that came into force on January 12, 2004;

“**convertible security**” means, in Ontario, a security of an issuer that is convertible into, or carries the right of the holder to purchase, or of the issuer to cause the purchase of, a security of the same issuer;

“**exchangeable security**” means, in Ontario, a security of an issuer that is exchangeable for, or carries the right of the holder to purchase, or the right of the issuer to cause the purchase of, a security of another issuer;

“**exchange issuer**” means, in Ontario, an issuer that distributes securities of a reporting issuer held by it in accordance with the terms of an exchangeable security of its own issue;

“**multiple convertible security**” means, in Ontario, a security of an issuer that is convertible into or exchangeable for, or carries the right of the holder to purchase, or of the issuer or exchange issuer to cause the purchase of, a convertible security, an exchangeable security or another multiple convertible security;

“**OSC Rule 45-502**” means Ontario Securities Commission Rule 45-502 *Dividend or Interest Reinvestment and Stock Dividend Plans*;

“**OSC Rule 45-503**” means Ontario Securities Commission Rule 45-503 *Trades to Employees, Executives and Consultants*;

“**Type 1 trade**” means, in Ontario, a distribution in a security under an exemption from the prospectus requirement in:

- (a) clause 72(1)(a), (b), (c), (d), (l), (m), (p) or (q) of the *Securities Act* (Ontario), in each case prior to section 11 of Schedule 26 of the *Budget Measures Act, 2009* being proclaimed in force;
- (b) section 2.4, 2.5 or 2.11 of the 1998 OSC Rule 45-501;
- (c) section 2.3, 2.12, 2.13 or 2.14 of the 2001 OSC Rule 45-501; or
- (d) section 2.3, 2.12, 2.13, 2.14 or 2.16 of the 2004 OSC Rule 45-501; and

“**Type 2 trade**” means, in Ontario, a distribution in a security under an exemption from the prospectus requirement in:

- (a) clause 72(1)(f) of the *Securities Act* (Ontario), prior to section 11 of Schedule 26 of the *Budget Measures Act, 2009* being proclaimed in force, other than a distribution to an associated consultant or investor consultant as defined in OSC Rule 45-503 or a distribution to an associated consultant or investor relations person as defined in MI 45-105;
- (b) clause 72(1)(h), (i), (j), (k) or (n) of the *Securities Act* (Ontario), in each case prior to section 11 of Schedule 26 of the *Budget Measures Act, 2009* being proclaimed in force; or
- (c) section 2.5, 2.8 or 2.15 of the 2001 OSC Rule 45-501; or

- (d) section 2.5, 2.8 or 2.15 of the 2004 OSC Rule 45-501; and

“**underlying security**” means, in Ontario, a security issued or transferred, or to be issued or transferred, in accordance with the terms of a convertible security, an exchangeable security or a multiple convertible security.

**(a) Securities Act (Ontario)**

Clauses 72(1)(f), (i) if not included in Appendix F, (j), (k) and (n) of the *Securities Act (Ontario)*, in each case prior to section 11 of Schedule 26 of the *Budget Measures Act, 2009* being proclaimed in force, except for a trade made under 72(1)(f)(iii) of the *Securities Act (Ontario)*, prior to section 11 of Schedule 26 of the *Budget Measures Act, 2009* being proclaimed in force, that is:

- (i) included in Appendix D or F of this Instrument, or
- (ii) contemplated by section 6.5 of 2004 OSC Rule 45-501; and
- (iii) an exemption from the prospectus requirement that specifies that the first trade is subject to section 2.6 of MI 45-102

Clause 72(1)(h) of the *Securities Act (Ontario)* except for a distribution under clause 72(1)(h) of the *Securities Act (Ontario)* of an underlying security that was distributed on conversion or exchange of a multiple convertible security, convertible security or exchangeable security acquired in a Type 1 trade, in each case prior to section 11 of Schedule 26 of the *Budget Measures Act, 2009* being proclaimed in force,.

**(b) 2001 OSC Rule 45-501 and 2004 OSC Rule 45-501**

Section 2.1 of the 2001 OSC Rule 45-501 and the 2004 OSC Rule 45-501;

Section 2.5 of the 2001 OSC Rule 45-501 and the 2004 OSC Rule 45-501;

Section 2.6 of the 2001 OSC Rule 45-501 and the 2004 OSC Rule 45-501 if an underlying security was distributed under section 2.6 of the 2001 OSC Rule 45-501 or the 2004 OSC Rule 45-501 on a forced conversion or exchange of a multiple convertible security, convertible security or exchangeable security acquired:

- (a) in a Type 2 trade;
- (b) under section 2.2, 3.1, 3.2, 3.3, 5.1 or 8.1 of OSC Rule 45-503, other than a trade by an associated consultant or investor consultant as defined in OSC Rule 45-503; or
- (c) under a provision in Part 2 of MI 45-105;

Section 2.7 of the 2001 OSC Rule 45-501 and the 2004 OSC Rule 45-501 if an underlying security was distributed under section 2.7 of the 2001 OSC Rule 45-501 or the 2004 OSC Rule 45-501 on a forced conversion or exchange of a multiple convertible security, convertible security or exchangeable security acquired:

- (a) in a Type 2 trade;
- (b) under section 2.2, 3.1, 3.2, 3.3, 5.1 or 8.1 of OSC Rule 45-503, other than a trade by an associated consultant or investor consultant as defined in OSC Rule 45-503; or
- (c) under a provision in Part 2 of MI 45-105;

Section 2.8 of the 2001 OSC Rule 45-501 and the 2004 OSC Rule 45-501;

Section 2.11 of the 2001 OSC Rule 45-501 and the 2004 OSC Rule 45-501 if section 2.6 of MI 45-102 would have been applicable to a first trade in that security by the person making the exempt distribution under section 2.11 of the 2001 OSC Rule 45-501 or the 2004 OSC Rule 45-501;

Section 2.15 of the 2004 OSC Rule 45-501.

**(c) 1998 OSC Rule 45-501**

Section 2.7 of the 1998 OSC Rule 45-501;

Section 2.8 of the 1998 OSC Rule 45-501;

Section 2.9 of the 1998 OSC Rule 45-501 if an underlying security was distributed under section 2.9 of the 1998 OSC Rule 45-501 on a forced conversion or exchange of a multiple convertible security, convertible security or exchangeable security acquired by the holder in a Type 2 trade;

Section 2.10 of the 1998 OSC Rule 45-501 if an underlying security was distributed under section 2.10 of the 1998 OSC Rule 45-501 on a forced conversion or exchange of a multiple convertible security, convertible security or exchangeable security acquired by the holder in a Type 2 trade;

Section 2.17 of the 1998 OSC Rule 45-501;

Subsection 2.18(1) of the 1998 OSC Rule 45-501 after the issuer had ceased to be a private issuer for the purposes of the *Securities Act* (British Columbia).

**(d) Other**

Sections 2.1 and 3.1 of Ontario Securities Commission Rule 45-502.

**18. Appendix E is amended by adding the following at the end of the Appendix:**

**4. New Brunswick Provisions**

In this Appendix

“**2004 NB LR 45-501**” means the New Brunswick Securities Commission Local Rule 45-501 that came into force on September 29, 2004;

- A. Subsections 2.1(2), 2.2(3), 2.4(2), 2.9(2), 2.14(2), 2.16(3), 2.18(2), 2.19(2), 2.22(4), 2.25(3), 2.26(4), 2.29(3), 2.30(2) and 2.31(3) of 2004 NB LR 45-501
- B. Subsection 2.41(2) of 2004 NB LR 45-501 (if the security acquired under section 2.4 was initially acquired by an individual or an associate of the individual or an RRSP or RRIF established for or by that individual or under which that individual is a beneficiary under
  - (a) one of the exemptions in NB LR 45-501 listed in paragraph A, or
  - (b) an exemption from the prospectus requirement that specifies that the first trade is subject to section 2.5 of Multilateral Instrument 45-102 *Resale of Securities*)
- C. Subsection 2.43(3) (if the security acquired under paragraph 2.43(1)(a) was acquired in accordance with the terms and conditions of a previously issued security under

- (a) one of the exemptions in 2005 NB LR 45-501 listed in paragraph A, or
- (b) an exemption from the prospectus requirement that specifies that the first trade is subject to section 2.5 of Multilateral Instrument, 45-102 *Resale of Securities*)

**19. Appendix F is repealed and the following is substituted:**

**Appendix F  
to  
National Instrument 45-102  
*Resale of Securities***

Underwriters

**(Section 2.13)**

Section 2.33 [*Acting as underwriter*] of NI 45-106 and section 2.11 [*Business combination and reorganization*] or subsection 2.42 (1) [*Conversion, exchange or exercise*] of NI 45-106, if the original security was acquired under section 2.33 of NI 45-106 or one of the underwriter exemptions in the transitional provisions listed below

**Transitional Provisions:**

Except in New Brunswick, an exemption from the prospectus requirement listed in Appendix F of MI 45-102 in effect on March 30, 2004. Except in New Brunswick, exemptions listed in Appendix F of MI 45-102 on March 30, 2004 were:

- ◆ Section 74(2)(15) of the *Securities Act* (British Columbia) and section 74(2)(8) or 74(2)(11)(iii) of the *Securities Act* (British Columbia) if the original security was acquired under section 74(2)(15) of the *Securities Act* (British Columbia);
- ◆ Clause 73(1)(r) of the *Securities Act* (Newfoundland and Labrador) and section 73(1)(i) or 73(1)(f)(iii) of the *Securities Act* (Newfoundland and Labrador) if the original security was acquired under section 73(1)(r) of the *Securities Act* (Newfoundland and Labrador);
- ◆ Paragraph 3(v) of Blanket Order No. 1 of the Registrar of Securities (Northwest Territories) and paragraph 3(g) or subparagraph 3(e)(iii) of Blanket Order No. 1 of the Registrar of Securities (Northwest Territories) if the original security was acquired under paragraph 3(v) of Blanket Order No. 1 of the Registrar of Securities (Northwest Territories);
- ◆ Clause 77(1)(r) of the *Securities Act* (Nova Scotia) and clause 77(1)(i) or 77(1)(f)(iii) of the *Securities Act* (Nova Scotia) or Blanket Order No. 38 or 45-503 if the original security was acquired under clause 77(1)(r) of the *Securities Act* (Nova Scotia);
- ◆ Paragraph 3(v) of Blanket Order No. 1 of the Registrar of Securities (Nunavut) and paragraph 3(g) or subparagraph 3(e)(iii) of Blanket Order No. 1 of the Registrar of Securities (Nunavut) if the original security was acquired under paragraph 3(v) of Blanket Order No. 1 of the Registrar of Securities (Nunavut);
- ◆ Clause 72(1)(f)(iii) of the *Securities Act* (Ontario) if the original security was acquired under

clause 72(1)(r) of the *Securities Act* (Ontario), in each case prior to section 11 of Schedule 26 of the *Budget Measures Act, 2009* being proclaimed in force;

- ◆ Clause 72(1)(i) of the *Securities Act* (Ontario) if the original security was acquired under clause 72(1)(r) of the *Securities Act* (Ontario), in each case prior to section 11 of Schedule 26 of the *Budget Measures Act, 2009* being proclaimed in force,;
- ◆ Clause 72(1)(r) of the *Securities Act* (Ontario), prior to section 11 of Schedule 26 of the *Budget Measures Act, 2009* being proclaimed in force;
- ◆ Section 2.1 of Prince Edward Island Rule 45-509 and subclause 13(1)(e) (iii) or clause 13(1)(f) of the *Securities Act* (Prince Edward Island) or section 1.1 of Prince Edward Island Rule 45-502 if the original security was acquired under section 2.1 of Prince Edward Island Rule 45-509;
- ◆ Section 55 of the *Securities Act* (Québec) as it read prior to its repeal by section 8 of *An Act to amend the Securities Act and other legislative provisions*; and
- ◆ Clause 81(1)(u) of *The Securities Act, 1988* (Saskatchewan) and clause 81(1)(i) or subclause 81(1)(f)(iii) of *The Securities Act, 1988* (Saskatchewan) if the original security was acquired under clause 81(1)(u) of *The Securities Act, 1988* (Saskatchewan).

**New Brunswick Provisions:**

In New Brunswick, an exemption from the prospectus requirement listed in New Brunswick Securities Commission Local Rule 45-501 in effect on September 29, 2004 (2004 NB LR 45-501).

In New Brunswick, the exemptions listed in 2004 NB LR 45-501 were:

- ◆ Subsection 2.33(2); and
- ◆ Subsection 2.43(3) if the original security was acquired under section 2.09.

**20. Form 45-102F1 Notice of Intention to Distribute Securities under Section 2.8 of NI 45-102 Resale of Securities is amended by repealing the text under the heading "INSTRUCTION" and substituting:**

File this form electronically through SEDAR with the securities regulatory authority or regulator in each jurisdiction where you sell securities and with the Canadian exchange on which the securities are listed. If the securities are being sold on an exchange, the form should be filed in every jurisdiction across Canada.

***Notice to selling security holders - collection and use of personal information***

The personal information required in this form is collected for and used by the listed securities regulatory authorities or regulators to administer and enforce securities legislation in their jurisdictions. This form is publicly available by authority of National Instrument 45-102 and the securities legislation in each of the jurisdictions. The personal information collected will not be used or disclosed other than for the stated purposes without first obtaining your consent.

Corporate filers should seek the consent of any individuals whose personal information appears in this form before filing this form

If you have questions about the collection and use of your personal information, or the personal information of your authorized signatory, contact any of the securities regulatory authorities or regulators listed below.

**British Columbia Securities Commission**

P.O. Box 10142, Pacific Centre  
701 West Georgia Street  
Vancouver, BC V7Y 1L2  
Attention: Assistant Manager, Financial Reporting  
Telephone: (604) 899-6805 or (800) 373-6393 (in B.C.)  
Facsimile: (604) 899-6506

**Alberta Securities Commission**

4th Floor, 300 - 5th Avenue SW  
Calgary, AB T2P 3C4  
Attention: Information Officer  
Telephone: (403) 297-6454  
Facsimile: (403) 297-6156

**Saskatchewan Financial Services Commission  
Securities Division**

601 - 1919 Saskatchewan Drive  
Regina, SK S4P 4H2  
Attention: Deputy Director, Legal/Registration  
Telephone: (306) 787-5879  
Facsimile: (306) 787-5899

**Ontario Securities Commission**

Suite 1903, Box 55  
20 Queen Street West  
Toronto, ON M5H 3S8  
Attention: Administrative Support Clerk  
Telephone: (416) 593-3684  
Toll free in Canada: 1-877-785-1555  
Facsimile: (416) 593-8122

**Autorité des marchés financiers**

Tour de la Bourse  
800 square Victoria  
C.P. 246, 22e étage  
Montréal, Québec H4Z 1G3  
Attention: Responsable de l'accès à l'information  
Telephone: (514) 395-0337  
Toll free: 1-877-525-0337  
Facsimile: (514) 873-6155 (For filing purposes only)

Facsimile: (514) 864-6381 (For privacy requests only)  
[www.lautorite.qc.ca](http://www.lautorite.qc.ca)

**New Brunswick Securities Commission**

85 Charlotte Street, Suite 300 Saint John, New Brunswick E2L 2J2  
Telephone: (506) 658-3060  
Toll Free in New Brunswick 1-866-933-2222  
Facsimile: (506) 658-3059

**Nova Scotia Securities Commission**

2nd Floor, Joseph Howe Building  
1690 Hollis Street  
Halifax, NS B3J 3J9  
Attention: Corporate Finance  
Telephone: (902) 424-7768  
Facsimile: (902) 424-4625

**Prince Edward Island Securities Office**

95 Rochford Street, P.O. Box 2000  
Charlottetown, Prince Edward Island C1A 7N8  
Telephone: (902) 368-4569  
Facsimile: (902) 368-5283

**Securities Commission Of Newfoundland And Labrador**

P.O. Box 8700  
2nd Floor, West Block  
Confederation Building  
75 O'Leary Avenue  
St. John's, NFLD A1B 4J6  
Attention: Director of Securities  
Telephone: (709) 729-4189  
Facsimile: (709) 729-6187

**Government of Yukon**

Department of Community Services  
Law Centre, 3rd Floor  
2130 Second Avenue  
Whitehorse, YT Y1A 5H6  
Telephone: (867) 667-5314  
Facsimile: (867) 393-6251

**Government of the Northwest Territories**

Office of the Superintendent of Securities  
Deputy Superintendent, Legal & Enforcement  
PO Box 1320  
Yellowknife, NT X1A 2L9  
Tel: (867) 920-8984  
Fax: (867) 873-0243

**Department Of Justice, Nunavut**

**Legal Registries Division**

P.O. Box 1000 - Station 570

1st Floor, Brown Building

Iqaluit, NT X0A 0H0

Attention: Director, Legal Registries Division

Telephone: (867) 975-6190

Facsimile: (867) 975-6194

21. *Except in Ontario, this Instrument comes into force September 28, 2009.*
22. *In Ontario, this Instrument comes into force on the later of the following:*
  - (a) *September 28, 2009;*
  - (b) *the day on which sections 5 and 11, subsection 12(1) and section 13 of Schedule 26 of the Budget Measures Act, 2009 are proclaimed in force.*

## Appendix H

### Amendments to National Instrument 33-105 *Underwriting Conflicts*

1. *National Instrument 33-105 Underwriting Conflicts is amended by this Instrument.*
2. *Appendix A is repealed and the following is substituted:*

#### NATIONAL INSTRUMENT 33-105

##### APPENDIX A

##### EXEMPT SECURITIES

<b>Jurisdiction</b>	<b>Section Legislation Reference</b>
All	Sections 2.20, 2.21, 2.35, 2.38 and 2.39 of National Instrument 45-106 <i>Prospectus and Registration Exemptions</i>
All except Ontario	Sections 2.34, 2.36 and 2.37 of National Instrument 45-106 <i>Prospectus and Registration Exemptions</i>
Alberta	Section 87(h), (h.1) and (h.2) of the <i>Securities Act</i> (Alberta)
Manitoba	Subsection 19(2)(g) and (h) of the <i>Securities Act</i> (Manitoba)
Newfoundland and Labrador	Subsections 36(2)(h) and (i) of the <i>Securities Act</i> (Newfoundland and Labrador)
Nova Scotia	Clause 41(2)(i) of the <i>Securities Act</i> (Nova Scotia)
Ontario	Paragraphs 73(1)(a) and (b) of the <i>Securities Act</i> (Ontario)
	Sections 2.4 to 2.6 of OSC Rule 45-501
	Paragraphs 2.34(2)(b),(d.1),(e) and (f) of National Instrument 45-106 <i>Prospectus and Registration Exemptions</i>

Prince Edward Island	Subsection 2(4)(f) and (g) of the <i>Securities Act</i> (Prince Edward Island)
Quebec	Section 41 of the <i>Securities Act</i> (Québec)
Saskatchewan	Subsection 39(2)(i) and (j) of <i>The Securities Act, 1988</i> (Saskatchewan)

3. ***Except in Ontario, this Instrument comes into force on September 28, 2009.***
4. ***In Ontario, this Instrument comes into force on the later of the following:***
  - (a) ***September 28, 2009;***
  - (b) ***the day on which sections 5 and 11, subsection 12(1) and section 13 of Schedule 26 of the Budget Measures Act, 2009 are proclaimed in force.***

## Appendix H

### Amendments to National Instrument 51-102 *Continuous Disclosure Obligations*

1. *National Instrument 51-102 Continuous Disclosure Obligations is amended by this instrument.*
2. *Subsections 13.3(2)(c)(iv), 13.3(3)(e)(iv), and 13.4(2)(c)(iv) are amended by striking out “registration requirement and prospectus requirement in section 2.35” and substituting “prospectus requirement in section 2.35 and registration requirement in section 3.35”.*
3. *This instrument comes into force September 28, 2009.*
4. *In Ontario, this Instrument comes into force on the later of the following:*
  - (a) *September 28, 2009;*
  - (b) *the day on which sections 5 and 11, subsection 12(1) and section 13 of Schedule 26 of the Budget Measures Act, 2009 are proclaimed in force.*